This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

T 9,8.49.145

Harvard College Library

FROM

Granville H. Norcross

3 2044 097 061 816

Suc T 9,8.49.145

Harvard College Library

FROM

Grenville H. Norcross

3 2044 097 061 3-3

NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

CROCKER & BREWSTER,

No. 47 WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON,

Publish the following Books, which constitute a regular series of elementary Latin works designed for the use of Schools:—

Latin Grammar. A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. By Professor E. A. ANDREWS and Professor S. STODDARD.

This Grammar has been adopted in most of the schools and colleges of this country. It is distinguished for its copiousness, its philosophical arrangement, and the scientific precision of its rules and definitions.

The following works have been prepared by Professor ANDREWS, for the purpose of completing the series, of which the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard is the basis:—

Questions on the Grammar. Questions on Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

This little volume is intended to aid the student in examining himself in regard to the preparation of his lessons, and the teacher in conducting his recitations.

Latin Lessons. First Lessons in Latin, or an Introduction to Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

This volume is designed for the younger classes of Latin students, to whom the larger Grammar might, at first, appear too formidable, and for all who, at any period of life, may wish to acquire an accurate knowledge of the first principles of the language. The work is complete in itself, containing the prominent rules and principles of the Grammar, with easy reading and writing lessons, serving to illustrate those principles. It is also furnished with numerous grammatical references, and a dictionary of the Latin words and phrases occurring in the lessons.

Latin Reader. The First Part of Jacobs and Döring's Latin Reader, with a Dictionary and Notes; adapted to Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

The plan of this edition of the Latin Reader, which was in a great degree new, has been so highly approved, as to lead to its introduction, with suitable modifications, into all the subsequent volumes of the series. Instead of the grammatical notes usually found in works of this kind, numerous references are every where made to those principles of the Grammar which serve to explain the peculiarities of form or construction which occur in the lessons. The application of these principles is generally left to the sagacity of the student, and by this means a wholesome exercise of his faculties is fully secured.

Latin Exercises; adapted to Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

The exercises contained in this volume are designed to illustrate the principles of the Latin Grammar in its various departments, and to render their application easy and familiar to the student. The plan and arrange-

ment of the work are such, that, under the direction of a judicious teacher, the student may commence the use of it almost as soon as he takes up his grammar, and continue it, at least as an occasional exercise, until he has finished his preparatory course. It is intended to smooth his way to original composition in the Latin language, both in prose and in verse.

A Key to Latin Exercises; adapted to Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

This Key, containing all the lessons in the Exercises fully corrected, is intended for the use of teachers only.

Viri Romæ. The Viri Romæ of Lhomond, adapted to Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar; with Notes and a copious Dictionary.

A careful perusal of this book, after the student has made himself master of the Reader, will constitute a good preparation for reading the easier Latin classics, which, without some such intermediate work, are commonly read under great disadvantages. It will at the same time render him familiar with the principal characters and most prominent events of Roman history.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War; with a Dictionary and Notes.

The text of this edition of Cæsar's Gallic War has been formed by reference to the best modern German editions. The Notes are principally grammatical, and are intended to afford that kind and degree of assistance which the student may be supposed to need at his first introduction to a genuine classic author. The Dictionary, which, like all the others in the series, has been prepared with great labor, contains not only the usual significations of each word, and its derivation, but an explanation of all those phrases which might otherwise perplex the student.

Sallust. Sallust's History of the War against Jugurtha, and of the Conspiracy of Catiline; with a Dictionary and Notes.

The plan of this edition of Sallust is the same as that of the preceding work. The text of Cortius has, in many instances, been exchanged for that of Kritz or Gerlach, and its orthography is, in general, conformed to that of Pottier and of Planche, and is, consequently, in most cases, the same as is found in school editions of the other Latin classics.

Ovid. Selections from the Metamorphoses and Heroides of Ovid; with Notes, Grammatical References, and Exercises in Scanning.

These Selections are designed as an introduction to Latin poetry. They consist of the most interesting fables from Ovid, with numerous brief notes explanatory of difficult phrases, of obscure historical or mythological allusions, and especially of grammatical difficulties. To these are added such Exercises in Scanning as will serve fully to introduce the student to a knowledge of the structure and laws of hexameter and pentameter verse.

New Series of Latin School Books.

ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S LATIN GRAMMAR has long since been introduced into the LATIN SCHOOL OF THE CITY OF BOSTON, and into most of the other principal Classical Schools in this country. It is adopted by all the Colleges in New England, viz., HARVARD, YALE, DARTMOUTH, AMHERST, WILLIAMS, BOWDOIN, WATERVILLE, MIDDLEBURY, BURLINGTON, BROWN UNIVERSITY at Providence, WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY at Middletown, and WASHINGTON COLLEGE at Hartford; also at HAMILTON COLLEGE, New York, NEW YORK UNIVERSITY, city of New York, CINCINNATI COLLEGE and MARIETTA COLLEGE, Ohio, RANDOLPH MACON COLLEGE, Virginia, MOUNT HOPE COLLEGE, near Baltimore, MARYLAND INSTITUTE OF INSTRUCTION and ST. MARY'S COLLEGE, Baltimore, and the UNIVERSITIES OF MICHIGAN and ALABAMA; and has been highly recommended by Professors Kingsley, Woolsey, Olmstead, and Gibbs, of Yale College; Professor Beck, of Harvard College; President Penney and Professor North, of Hamilton College; Professor Packard, of Bowdoin College; Professor Holland, of Washington College; Professor Fisk, of Amherst College, and by Professor Hackett, of Brown University; — also by Messrs. Dillaway and Gardner, of the Boston Latin School; Rev. Lyman Colman, of the English High School, Andover; Hon. John Hall, Principal of the Ellington School, Conn.; Mr. Shaler, Principal of the Connecticut Literary Institution, at Suffield; Simeon Hart, Esq., Farmington, Conn.; Professor Cogswell, of Round Hill School, Northampton; President Shannon, of Louisiana College, and by various periodicals.

As a specimen of the communications received from the above sources, the following extracts are given: —

It gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of the Latin Grammar lately edited by Professor Andrews and Mr. Stoddard. I express most cheerfully, unhesitatingly, and decidedly, my preference of this Grammar to that of Adam, which has, for so long a time, kept almost undisputed sway in our schools. — *Dr. C. Beck, Professor of Latin in Harvard University.*

I know of no grammar published in this country, which promises to answer so well the purposes of elementary classical instruction, and shall be glad to see it introduced into our best schools. — *Mr. Charles K. Dillaway, Master of the Public Latin School, Boston.*

Your new Latin Grammar appears to me much better suited to the use of students than any other grammar I am acquainted with. — *Professor William M. Holland, Washington College, Hartford, Conn.*

I can with much pleasure say that your Grammar seems to me much better adapted to the present condition and wants of our schools than any one with which I am acquainted, and to supply that which has long been wanted — a good Latin grammar for common use. — *Mr. F. Gardner, one of the Masters Boston Lat. Sch.*

The Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard is deserving, in my opinion, of the approbation which so many of our ablest teachers have bestowed upon it. It is believed that, of all the grammars at present before the public, this has greatly the advantage, in regard both to the excellence of its arrangement, and the accuracy and copiousness of its information; and it is earnestly hoped that its merits will procure for it that general favor and use to which it is entitled. — *H. B. Hackett, Professor of Biblical Literature in Newton Theol. Sem.*

The universal favor with which this Grammar is received was not unexpected. It will bear a thorough and discriminating examination. In the use of well-defined and expressive terms, especially in the syntax, we know of no Latin or Greek grammar which is to be compared to this. — *Amer. Quarterly Register.*

The Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard I consider a work of great merit. I have found in it several principles of the Latin language correctly explained which I had myself learned from a twenty years' study of that language, but had never seen illustrated in any grammar. Andrews's First Lessons I con

sider a valuable work for beginners, and in the sphere which it is designed to occupy, I know not that I have met its equal. — *Rev. James Shannon, President of College of Louisiana.*

These works will furnish a series of elementary publications for the study of Latin altogether in advance of any thing which has hitherto appeared, either in this country or in England. — *American Biblical Repository.*

We have made Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar the subject both of reference and recitation daily for several months, and I cheerfully and decidedly bear testimony to its superior excellence to any manual of the kind with which I am acquainted. Every part bears the impress of a careful compiler. The *principles* of syntax are happily developed in the rules, whilst those relating to the moods and tenses supply an important deficiency in our former grammars. The rules of prosody are also clearly and fully exhibited. — *Rev. Lyman Coleman, Principal of Burr Seminary, Manchester, Vt.*

I have examined Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and regard it as superior to any thing of the kind now in use. It is what has long been needed, and will undoubtedly be welcomed by every one interested in the philology of the Latin language. We shall hereafter use it as a text-book in this institution — *Mr. Wm. H. Shaler, Principal of the Connecticut Lit. Institution at Suffield.*

This work bears evident marks of great care and skill, and ripe and accurate scholarship in the authors. It excels most grammars in this particular, that, while by its plainness it is suited to the necessities of most beginners, by its fulness and detail it will satisfy the inquiries of the advanced scholar, and will be a suitable companion at all stages of his progress. We cordially commend it to the student and teacher. — *Biblical Repository.*

Your Grammar is what I expected it would be — an excellent book, and just the thing which was needed. We cannot hesitate a moment in laying aside the books now in use, and introducing this. — *Rev. J. Penney, D. D., President of Hamilton College, New York.*

Your Grammar bears throughout evidence of original and thorough investigation and sound criticism. I hope, and doubt not, it will be adopted in our schools and colleges, it being, in my apprehension, so far as simplicity is concerned, on the one hand, and philosophical views and sound scholarship on the other, far preferable to other grammars; a work at the same time highly creditable to yourselves and to our country. — *Professor A. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine.*

This Grammar appears to me to be accommodated alike to the wants of the new beginner and the experienced scholar, and, as such, well fitted to supply what has long been felt to be a great desideratum in the department of classical learning. — *Professor S. North, Hamilton College, New York.*

From such an examination of this Grammar as I have been able to give it, I do not hesitate to pronounce it superior to any other with which I am acquainted. I have never seen, any where, a greater amount of valuable matter compressed within limits equally narrow. — *Hon. John Hall, Prin. of Ellington School, Conn.*

We have no hesitation in pronouncing this Grammar decidedly superior to any now in use. — *Boston Recorder.*

I am ready to express my great satisfaction with your Grammar, and do not hesitate to say, that I am better pleased with such portions of the syntax as I have perused, than with the corresponding portions in any other grammar with which I am acquainted. — *Professor N. W. Fiske, Amherst College, Mass.*

I know of no grammar in the Latin language so well adapted to answer the purpose for which it was designed as this. The book of Questions is a valuable attendant of the Grammar. — *Simeon Hart, Esq., Farmington, Conn.*

This Grammar has received the labor of years, and is the result of much reflection and experience, and mature scholarship. As such, it claims the attention of all who are interested in the promotion of sound learning. — *N. Y. Obs.*

This Grammar is an original work. Its arrangement is philosophical, and its rules clear and precise, beyond those of any other grammar we have seen. — *Portland Christian Mirror.*

A

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

OR

PROGRESSIVE LESSONS

IN

READING AND WRITING LATIN

BY E. A. ANDREWS, L.L.D.

Ordinis hæc virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,
Pleraque differat, et præsens in tempus omittat.—Hor.

SECOND EDITION.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,
47 Washington Street.

1849.

Educ T 918.49.145

HARVARD COLLEGE
April 17, 1933
LIBRARY

Grenville H. Norcross,
Boston

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1848,
BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

Stereotyped by C. Davison & Co.,
33 Gold street, N. Y.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

In preparing this work for a new edition, no essential alteration has been made in its original plan, but every part has been carefully revised, and such additions have every where been made, as the perfecting of its plan seemed to require. The syntax, in particular, has been enlarged by the addition of such subordinate principles and special remarks, as appeared to be most necessary for the student in the commencement of his Latin course.

For the purpose of rendering the work more extensively useful, the derivation of the words in the Vocabulary has in most cases been given, and an Appendix has been added, containing a full account of Latin pronunciation, according to the usage in the English universities, and in most of the Colleges of this country. The student will also find in the Appendix a condensed view of the irregularities in the gender and genitive of nouns of the third declension, and also of the principal anomalies in the formation of particular cases in that declension.

The following extracts from the preface to the first edition will show the general plan of the work.

"The object of this book is, to connect the leading principles of the Latin language with exercises in reading and writing designed for their illustration. It is divided into lessons of convenient length, containing principles to be observed or forms to be imitated. To these are subjoined questions and exercises; the former to assist the student in preparing his lessons, the latter to show the practical application of such principles and forms, and to fix them more firmly in the memory.

"The lessons are arranged with careful reference to their natural order, and in such a manner as not to anticipate, in the earlier lessons, those subjects which belong to later parts of the work. Hence the forms of words are first exhibited, and their construction is subsequently explained.

"In the declension of nouns and adjectives, the principles of classification and comparison have been brought to aid the pupil's memory, and at the same time, to save no inconsiderable portion of the time usually

spent in the daily and hourly repetition of the paradigms. For this purpose, those cases in each number which are alike, have been classed together.

"The lessons on the formation of the nominative singular from the root, supply a defect in most Latin Grammars in common use, and present a concise view of a subject of considerable practical importance.

"The united declension of nouns and adjectives, as exemplified in the exercises under the latter, is another feature of the present work, of great importance in rendering the pupil practically familiar with the agreement of those parts of speech under all their variations of form and declension.

"In the conjugation of verbs also, the principles of classification and comparison have been regarded, in so arranging the tenses of each mood, that those parts which are derived from the same root should stand together: while by presenting under each tense a comparative view of the four conjugations, their resemblances and differences will be fixed indelibly in the memory. By means of this arrangement the pupil may in a few weeks acquire a more familiar acquaintance with the peculiar form of each of the conjugations and of the distinctions between them, than is usually obtained by years of study when the ordinary arrangement is observed.

"*Sum* is commonly the first verb to which the student of the Latin language is introduced, but on account of its irregularities, its early introduction tends to perplex his mind in regard to the regular forms of Latin verbs. To avoid this inconvenience, it is not exhibited in the present work, until the pupil has had opportunity to become familiar with the active voice of all the conjugations of regular verbs; after which he will more readily notice its irregularities and will have occasion to apply his knowledge of its forms to immediate use in conjugating the compound tenses of the passive voice.

"In treating of the roots of verbs, the author has deviated in two particulars from the view given of the same subject in the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard. The first relates to the form of the third root, which is here made to end in *i*, but in the Grammar is considered as including the *u* which always follows it. The other deviation relates to the second and third roots of the second conjugation, which, in the Grammar, are said to end in *ēvi* and *ētum*, but in this book terminate in *ui* and *itum*.

"In the definitions and rules contained in this book, the author has had in view the language used in the corresponding parts of Andrews' and Stoddard's Grammar. Of the general approbation with which those definitions and rules have been received, no better evidence is needed, than a knowledge of the extent to which they have been copied and imitated by subsequent writers. As the design of that work, however, was essentially different from the one proposed in the present volume, a corresponding change has often been made in the language of the smaller work. The principles however of both works, so far as they are developed in each, are essentially the same, and the arrangement of their topics is in general similar. Hence the student who begins with this volume, will feel no sensible embarrassment in ultimately searching the larger work for the various exceptions and modifications of rules and principles, which were necessarily omitted in this. In arranging the rules of construction in such a manner as to avoid anticipating topics not previously treated of, it has been found expedient, in a few in-

stances, to separate the rules relating to a particular case, by the intervention of rules relating to other cases; but such exceptions are few in number, and when once noticed will occasion no perplexity.

"The principal points in which this book is supposed to differ from most other elementary Latin works, consist in a more careful attention to accuracy in rules and definitions, and to the principles of comparison and classification; in greater clearness of method, in consequence of presenting each subject singly and in its natural order, and illustrating it independently of other subjects; in a more perfect development of the doctrine of roots in inflected words, and of the uses of that doctrine in simplifying the knowledge of the forms of words; and in a far more complete exhibition of the nature of sentences, of their modifications and connections, than is to be found in any other similar work upon this subject, excepting the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard.

"The reading lessons at the close of this work consist partly of Fables and of Anecdotes of illustrious men, and partly of the same selection from the well-known Historia Sacra of Lhomond, which is contained in the author's First Lessons. The latter is retained in the full belief, that it is better adapted to the taste and capacity of the younger classes in Latin, than any thing which could be found to occupy its place; while the purity of its language renders it a safe, as well as an agreeable introduction to more difficult compositions.

"In regard to the mode of using this book, the author has little to add to the suggestions contained in the body of the work. When the pupil is directed to write out an exercise, the teacher will of course decide whether this shall be done upon the black-board or slate in the presence of the class, or more deliberately at his desk. On reviewing a lesson, however, it is recommended that the exercise should be repeated from memory, and such inquiries made respecting it, as will satisfy the teacher, that the lesson is well understood. It may be added, that a daily review of the lesson of the previous day can hardly be too highly recommended.

"As the author has aimed to exclude from this little work every subject which is not, in his view, of fundamental importance, he may perhaps be allowed to urge upon the student the necessity of a thorough knowledge of each lesson in all its parts. If this suggestion is heeded, he may rest assured that when he shall lay aside this First Book he will find himself fully prepared, by an accurate acquaintance with the common idioms of the language, to engage in the study of the more advanced works, by means of which his knowledge of the Latin tongue is to be perfected."

The author hopes that, in its present form, the work will be found not wholly unworthy of the general approbation so kindly bestowed upon the first edition, and especially that it will prove useful in advancing the cause of general education. In this country, and particularly in New England, the study of the Latin language is now pursued to some extent by great and constantly increasing numbers of youth, both in public and in private schools, for the purpose of improvement in the knowledge of general grammar, and of a better understanding of that portion of their native tongue, which is derived from that language. In the origi-

nal composition of this work, as well as in its recent revision, the author has aimed to supply such a book as should be suited to the wants of this class—a book which, while it should serve as an introduction to the study of the classics, should be specially adapted to the purposes of general education.

For the accommodation of those who may wish to extend their reading beyond the few pages appended to these lessons, an edition of the Latin Reader will soon be prepared with the usual references, at the foot of the pages, to the larger Grammar, and with references, at the end of the book, to the lessons in this volume. Should it appear to be expedient, similar notes may also be added, at some future time, to the author's Viri Romæ.

E. A. A.

New Britain, (Conn.), *October*, 1848.

CONTENTS.

Less.		Page
1.	Letters.—Marks of Quantity.—Accents,	9
2.	Pronunciation of Latin,	10
3.	General Rules of Quantity,	12
4.	Parts of Speech.—Inflection,	13
5.	Nouns.—Gender.—Number,	13
6.	Cases.—Persons,	15
7.	Declensions, how distinguished,	17
8.	1st. Declension.—Greek Nouns,	18
9.	2d Dec.—Nouns in *us*,	20
10.	" Nouns in *er*,	21
11.	" Nouns in *um*.—Greek Nouns,	23
12.	3d Dec.—Masc.—Nouns in *n* and *r*,	25
13.	" " Nouns in *o* and *os*,	26
14.	" " Increasing nouns in *es*, *is* and *ex*,	27
15.	" Fem.—Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing, and in *do* and *go*,	29
16.	" " Nouns in *as* & *us*,	30
17.	" " Nouns in *s* impure, *x*, & *ys*,	31
18.	" Neut.—Nouns in *men* and *us*,	33
19.	" " Nouns in *t*, *a*—*iter*, *c* and *y*,	34
20.	" " Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*,	35
21.	" Irregular Nouns,	36
22.	" Formation of the Nom. Sing. Rule I.	37
23.	" " Rule II.	38
24.	" Exceptions in Declension,	39
25.	4th Declension,	40
26.	" Exceptions—*Domus*,	41
27.	5th Dec.—Compound Nouns,	42
	1st Comparative View of the Declensions,	44
	2d " " "	45
28.	Adjectives,	46
29.	" 1st & 2d Decls.—in *us*, *a*, *um*,	47
30.	" " in *er*, *a*, *um*,	48
31.	" " syncopated, in *er*, *a*, *um*,	49
32.	Adj.—1st & 2d Decls.—in *us* & *er*, gen. *ius*,	50
33.	" " *duo* and *ambo*,	51
34.	Adj.—3d Dec.—3 Terminations,	52
35.	" " 2 Terminations,	53
36.	" " Comparatives,	54
37.	" " 1 Termination,	56
38.	" Numeral,	57
39.	" Comparison of,	58
40.	" Irregular Comparison,	59
41.	Pronouns.—*Ego*, *tu*, and *sui*,	60
42.	" Adjective.—*hic*,	61
43.	" " *ille*, *iste*, and *ipse*,	63
44.	" " *is* and *idem*,	64
45.	" " *qui* and *quis*,	65
46.	Verbs,—their various kinds,	66
47.	" Moods, Tenses, Person, Number, Participles, &c.	68
48.	" Conjugations distinguished.—Roots,	69
49.	Formation of 2d and 3d Roots,	71
50.	Construction and Position of Words,	72
51.	Principal Parts of a Verb,	73
	Paradigms of Verbs.	
52.	Act. Voice.—Indic. Mood, 1st Root,	74
53.	" " Forms of Sentences,	76
54.	" " 2d Root,	77
55.	" " Sentences,	79
56.	" Subj. Mood, 1st Root,	79
57.	" " Sentences,	81
58.	" " 2d Root,	82
59.	" " Sentences,	83
60.	" Imper. and Infin. Moods,	83
61.	" Participles. Gerunds, and Supines,	84
62.	*Sum*,—Indic. Mood, 1st Root,	85
63.	" " 2d Root,	87
64.	" Subj., Imper., Infin., &c.	88
65.	Pass. Voice. Principal Parts,	90
66.	" Indic. Mood, 1st Root,	91
67.	" " Sentences,	92
68.	" " 3d Root,	93
69.	" " Sentences,	94
70.	" Subj. Mood, 1st Root,	95
71.	" " Sentences,	96
72.	" " 3d Root,	97
73.	" " Sentences,	98

Less.		Page
74.	Passive Voice,—Imper. and Infinitive Moods, &c.	99
75.	Deponent and Irregular Verbs,	100
76.	*Possum*, Conjugated,	101
77.	*Volo*, *nolo*, and *malo*, "	102
78.	*Fero*, "	103
79.	*Fio*, "	104
80.	*Eo*, "	105
81.	Defective and Impers. Verbs,	106
82.	Particles, defined,	108
83.	Sentences. — Subject. — Predicate,	109
84.	Grammatical Subj. and Pred.	110
85.	Logical "	111
86.	Simple and Compound "	111
87.	Rules for Analysis and Parsing,	112
88.	Construction of Adverbs and Conjunctions,	113
89.	Apposition,	114
90.	Subject-Nominative,	115
91.	Construction of Adjectives,	117
92.	Predicate-Nominative,	120
93.	Compound Sentences,	122
94.	Relatives,	123
95.	Infinitive Mood,	125
96.	Acc. after Active Verbs,	127
97.	" after Prepositions,	129
98.	" of Time and Space,	131
99.	Abl. after Prepositions,	132
100.	Gen. after Nouns,	133
101.	" or Abl. of Quality,	135
102.	" with *Sum*,	137
103.	" after Partitives,	137
104.	" after Adjectives,	139
105.	" after Verbs,	140
106.	" "	141
107.	" "	142
108.	" Acc. and Abl. of Place,	143
109.	Dative,	144
110.	" without *to* or *for*,	145
111.	" "	146
112.	" "	147
113.	" with *Est*,	148
114.	Two Datives,	149
115.	Vocative,	150
116.	Abl. after Nouns, Adjectives, &c.	151
117.	" of cause, manner, &c.	153
118.	Abl. of Price and Time,	154
119.	Construction of Comparatives,	155
120.	Ablative Absolute,	157
121.	Participles,	158
122.	" Translation of,	160
123.	Gerunds and Supines,	162
124.	Passive Voice, Construction of,	163
125.	Direct Questions,	165
126.	Imper. and Subj. for Imper.	166
127.	Direct and Indirect Quotation,	167
128.	Subj. in Indirect Allusions,	169
129.	" in Indirect Questions,	170
130.	Double Questions,	172
131.	Subj., Condition and Conclusion,	172
132.	" with Adverbs of Time,	174
133.	" Purpose, Object, and Result,	174
134.	" Result or Consequence,	176
135.	" Connection of Tenses,	177

APPENDIX.

A.	Division of Words into Syllables,	179
B.	3d Dec.—Masc.—Exceptions in Gender,	180
C.	" " " in Declension,	181
D.	" Fem.—Exceptions in Gender,	181
E.	" " in Declension,	182
F.	" Neut.—Exceptions in Gender and Declension,	183
G.	" Remarks on the Gen., Acc., and Voc. Sing.	183
H.	" Remarks on the Abl. Sing.	184
I.	Remarks on the Plural Cases,	185
J.	Irregular Nouns,	186
K.	Derivation of Nouns and Adjectives,	187
	Life of Joseph,	188
	Fables,	203
	Anecdotes,	206
	Vocabulary,	209

LESSON 1.

LETTERS.

1. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

2. *A*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*, are vowels.

3. Of the consonants, *l*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, are *liquids*.

4. *X* and *z* are double consonants: *x* stands for *cs* or *gs*, and *z* for *ds* or *ts*.

5. The other consonants, except *h* and *s*, are called *mutes*.

6. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* is seldom used.

7. A *diphthong* consists of two successive vowels in the same syllable; as, *ai* in *hair*, *æ* in *Cæsar*.

8. Three / Two / Two diphthongs begin with *a*, *e*, *o*, viz. *æ*, *ai*, *au*; *ei*, *eu*; *œ*, *oi*.

NOTE 1.—If the first vowel is *u*, the two vowels, though forming but one syllable, are not here considered as a diphthong; as, *qui*, *lingua*, *suadeo*.

9. A *diærĕsis* (¨) consists of two points placed over the latter of two vowels, which might otherwise form a diphthong, to denote that they are to be separated in pronunciation; as, *oe* in *coërce*.

NOTE 2.—In Latin the diæresis is seldom used, except with *ae*, *ai*, and *oe*, when they do not form diphthongs.

MARKS OF QUANTITY.

10. A *short* vowel is marked by a curved line; as *i* in *dom-ĭ-nus*, a lord.

11. A *long* vowel is marked by a horizontal line; as, *o* in *ser-mō-nes*, speeches.

12. A *common* or *doubtful* vowel has both marks united; as, *u* in *vol-ŭ-cres*, birds, which is sometimes long and sometimes short.

ACCENTS.

13. The *acute* accent (′) marks the syllable on which the stress of voice is laid; as, *reg′-num*, a kingdom.

14. The *grave* accent (`) distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because, from *quod*, which.

15. The *circumflex* accent (^), composed of the acute and the grave, denotes a contraction, and the syllable over which it stands is long; as, *num′-mûm* for *num-mō′-rum*.

QUESTIONS.—How are letters divided? Which are vowels? Which of the consonants are called liquids? Which, double consonants? For what does *x* stand? For what does *z* stand? What are the other consonants called? What English letter is not found in Latin? What is a diphthong? Repeat the table of diphthongs. What is said of two vowels in the same syllable, the first of which is *u*? What is a dieresis? What is its use? How is a short vowel marked?—a long vowel?—a common or doubtful vowel? What is the use of the acute accent?—of the grave?—of the circumflex?

EXERCISE

Write five English words containing diphthongs, and five having successive vowels which are not diphthongs. Write ten English words of more than one syllable, and mark the accented syllable of each with the acute accent.

LESSON 2.

PRONUNCIATION.

1. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

NOTE.—Rules for the division of words into syllables may be found in the Appendix, Lesson A.

2. A monosyllable, A dissyllable, A polysyllable } is a word of { one syllable. two syllables. three or more syllables.

3. The *penult* of a word is the last syllable but one; the *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

REMARK 1.—Accent is a particular stress of voice on certain syllables of words.

REMARK 2.—Words of two or three syllables have but one accent. Words of more than three syllables have two or more accents.

4. The penult of dissyllables is accented; as, *pa'-ter*, a father.

5. (*a*) The penult of polysyllables, if long, is accented; if short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *ser-mō'-nes*, speeches; *dom'-ĭ-nus*, a lord.

(*b*) If the penult of a polysyllable is common, the accent in prose is on the antepenult; as, *me-dĭ'-ŏ-cres*.

EXCEPTION.—When the penult of a genitive in *ius* is common, the *i* is accented in prose; as, *u-ni'-us*.

NOTE.—Letters, when similarly situated, have in general the same sound in Latin as in English words.—But:—

6. *A* at the end of unaccented syllables is pronounced *ah*; as, *mu'-sa*, (pronounced *mu'-zah*.)

7. *Ch* is pronounced like *k*; as, *Chĭ'-os*, (pronounced *Kĭ'-os*.)

8. *C* sounds like *s*, and *g* like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*; as, *cen'-tum*, a hundred; *cĭ'-bus*, food; *cœ'-lum*, heaven; *gens*, a nation; *ag'-ĭ-lis*, active.

9. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ru'-pes*, a rock.

10. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, we; *il'-los*, them.

QUESTIONS.—How many syllables has every Latin word? What is a monosyllable?—a dissyllable?—a polysyllable? What is the penult of a word?—the antepenult? What is the rule for accenting dissyllables?—polysyllables, if the penult is long?—if short?—if common? What words are excepted? Where is *a* pronounced *ah*? How is *ch* pronounced? What is the rule for pronouncing *c* and *g*? How is *es* at the end of a word pronounced? How is *os* pronounced at the end of plural cases?

EXERCISE.

How many syllables has *anĭmus?—numĕrus?—opus?—respublĭca?—monebamĭni?—Cæsar?—memoria?—Eurōpa?—conventio?—biduum?—spectacŭlum?—alĭquis?* L. 1. Note.

DIRECTIONS.—The teacher will ask, Why has *anĭmus* three syllables? Answer. Because it has three separate vowels, *a*, *i*, and *u*, and "Every Latin word has as many syllables," &c. (repeating L. 2. 1.) The same question can be asked respecting each word, and whenever, in the following lessons, an answer is given to any question, its correctness should be proved by quoting some definition, rule, or, principle.

Mark the accent on the following words, and in answer to the

question, Why is that syllable accented? repeat L. 2. 4, or 5.—*ca-nis, fe-lix, ten-ĕ-ri, bo-nō-rum, dif-fic-ĭ-lis, mīl-ĭ-tes, mon-e-tā-mur.*

Pronounce the following words according to rules 6–10, viz., *bo'-na, mach'-ĭ-na, ge'-ner, a'-ger, ci'-nis, a-mī'-cus, a-mī'-ci, fa'-ci-o, dom'-ĭ-nos, ser-mō'-nes.*

Write ten English monosyllables, ten dissyllables, and ten polysyllables.

LESSON 3.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

1. A vowel before another vowel or *h*, is short; as, *e*, in *mo'-nĕ-o*, I advise; *a*, in *ex'-trā-ho*, I draw out.

2. A diphthong is long; as, *au*, in *in-cāū'-tus*, incautious.

3. A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or *j*, is long; as, *i*, in *sa-gīt'-ta*, an arrow; *a*, in *māx'-ĭ-mus*, greatest; *e*, in *pē'-jor*, worse.

NOTE 1.—A vowel has its short *sound* when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, although its *quantity* be long.

4. A vowel before a mute followed by a liquid is, for the most part, common, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short; as, *a*, in *pā-tres*, fathers.

NOTE 2.—In this book, the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is marked, unless it can be determined to be long or short by one of the preceding rules.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first general rule of quantity?—the second?—the third?—the fourth? What is the *sound* of a vowel, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable? What is a common vowel? In what words is the quantity of the penult marked in this book?

EXERCISE.

1. Mark the quantity of the penult in the following words, according to the preceding rules, making use of the marks of quantity described in Lesson 1.

Pen-na,	al-te-ri-us,	di-ver-sus,	ax-is,
tu-us,	vic-to-ri-a,	the-sau-rus,	mo-les-tus,
vir-tus,	in-cen-dit,	ma-jor,	ga-za,
di-es,	cau-sa,	phar-e-tra,	vol-u-cres,
a-cris,	an-cil-la,	lin-gua,	me-li-or,
post-quam,	pug-nan-dum,	cœ-no,	con-jux.

2. Give the general rule for the quantity of the penult of *penna*,—of *tuus*,—of *virtus*, &c.

LESSON 4.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. In Latin there are eight parts of speech, viz., *Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

REMARK.—Verbs include *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

NOTE 1.—The Latin Language has no words corresponding to the English articles *a* and *the*.

INFLECTION.

2. Inflection is a change in the termination of a word; as, *book*, *books*; *great*, *greater*; *have*, *has*.

3. Inflection is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

4. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*.

5. Verbs are *conjugated*.

6. Adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

NOTE 2.—Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, are sometimes called *Particles*.

QUESTIONS.—How many parts of speech are there in Latin? Name them. What do verbs include? What English words cannot be translated into Latin? What is inflection in grammar? How many and what kinds of inflection are there? What classes of words are declined? What are conjugated? What are compared? What parts of speech are sometimes called particles?

LESSON 5.

NOUNS.

1. A noun is the name of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*, *Rome*.

3. A *common* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is applicable; as, *man*, *tree*.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, a *nation*, a *multitude*.

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *goodness*, *love*.

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REMARK.—Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects.

GENDER.

7. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

8. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

General Rules of Gender.

I. The names of all *male* beings, and of *rivers*, *winds*, and *months*, are masculine.

II. The names of all *female* beings, and of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *plants*, are feminine.

NOTE 1.—A general rule of gender, when applicable to any noun, is commonly to be regarded rather than a special rule.

NOTE 2.—When the gender of a noun cannot be determined by a general rule, it is ascertained by a special rule depending on its termination and declension.

NOTE 3.—A noun which denotes sometimes a male and sometimes a female being, is said to be of the *common* gender.

9. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are of the *neuter* gender.

NOTE 4.—Infinitives, clauses used substantively, and all indeclinable nouns, are of the neuter gender.

10. Adjectives, pronouns, and participles have likewise three genders.

NUMBERS.

11. Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether one object is meant, or more than one.

12. Latin nouns have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*.

13. The singular number denotes one object; as, *ma'-ter*, a mother.

14. The plural number denotes more than one object; as, *ma'-tres*, mothers.

15. Adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and participles have likewise two numbers.

QUESTIONS.—What is a noun?—a proper noun?—a common noun?—a collective noun?—an abstract noun?—a material noun? When do proper, abstract and material nouns become common? What is the gender of a noun? How many genders have nouns? What are they called? What is the general rule for masculine nouns?—for feminines? When general and special rules of gender are inconsistent with each other, which is commonly to be regarded? How is the gender of a noun ascertained when it is not determined by a general rule? What nouns are said to be of the common gender?—of the neuter gender? What classes of words are always neuter? What other classes of words have the distinction of gender? What is number in nouns? How many numbers have Latin nouns? What are they called? What does the singular number denote?—the plural? What other classes of words have likewise two numbers?

EXERCISE.

Write in English five proper nouns, five common nouns not collective, five collective, five abstract, and five material nouns.

DIRECTIONS.—The teacher will inquire in regard to each word so written; 1st. Why is it a noun? 2d. Why is it a proper, common, &c., noun?

Give the general rule for the gender of each of the following nouns:—

Ho-mē'-rus, *Homer.*	Tĭb'-ĕ-ris, *the Tiber.*
Hel'-ĕ-na, *Helen.*	Æ-gyp'-tus, *Egypt.*
Ma'-ter, *a mother.*	Ro'-ma, *Rome.*
Pi'-rus, *a pear-tree.*	Aus'-ter, *the south-wind.*
A-prī'-lis, *April.*	Nar'-dus, *spikenard.*
His-pa'-ni-a, *Spain.*	Rho'-dus, *Rhodes.*

LESSON 6.

CASES.

1. Cases are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words.

2. Latin nouns have six cases—*nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*.

3. The nominative denotes the *subject* of a finite verb; as, *I* write, *John* is reading.

4. The Latin genitive denotes *origin*, *possession*, and many other relations expressed in English by *of*, or the *possessive* case; as, the life *of Cæsar*, or *Cæsar's* life.

5. The dative denotes the relations expressed in English by *to* and *for*; as, He gave the book *to John*.

NOTE 1.—*To* after a verb of *motion*, is expressed in Latin by a preposition with the accusative.

6. The accusative follows active verbs and certain prepositions, or is the subject of an infinitive.

7. The vocative is the case used in addressing a person; as, *amice*, friend.

8. The ablative denotes *privation*, and the relations expressed in English by *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, and some other prepositions.

NOTE 2.—Adjectives, pronouns, and participles, have likewise six cases, gerunds have four, and supines have two.

NOTE 3.—All the cases, except the nominative, are called *oblique* cases.

PERSONS.

9. The person of a noun is the place in the discourse assigned to the object which the noun represents.

10. Nouns and pronouns have three persons. They are of the *first* person when they denote the person *speaking*; of the *second*, when they denote the person *spoken to*; and of the *third*, when they denote the person or thing *spoken of*.

11. The cases of Latin nouns may be thus expressed in English:—

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Nom.	a king,	*Nom.*	kings,
Gen.	a king's, or of a king,	*Gen.*	kings', or of kings,
Dat.	to, or for a king,	*Dat.*	to, or for kings,
Acc.	a king,	*Acc.*	kings,
Voc.	king, or O king,	*Voc.*	kings, or O kings,
Abl.	with, from, in, or by a king;	*Abl.*	with, from, in, or by kings.

NOTE 4.—When the article *the* is prefixed to the noun, it is retained throughout both numbers, except in the vocative.

QUESTIONS.—What are cases? How many and what cases have Latin nouns? What does the nominative denote?—the genitive?—the dative? How is *to* expressed after a verb of motion? What does the accusative follow? How is the vocative used? What does the ablative denote? What other classes of words are marked by cases? What are oblique cases? What is meant by the person of a noun? How many persons have nouns and pronouns? When are they of the first person?—of the second?—of the third? Decline *a king* in both numbers.

EXERCISE.

Decline *the king* in both numbers; also *a son*, and *the son*.

LESSON 7.

DECLENSIONS.

1. Nouns which form their cases alike are said to be of the same declension.

2. There are five declensions of Latin nouns.

Table of Nominatives.

3. The nominative singular	of the first declension ends in	*a*.
	of the second in	*er*, *ir*, *us*, or *um*.
	of the third in	*o*, *or*, *es*, *is*, &c.
	of the fourth in	*us*, or *u*.
	of the fifth in	*es*.

Table of Genitives.

4. The termination of the genitive singular	of the first declension is	*æ*.
	of the second	*i*.
	of the third	*is*.
	of the fourth	*ûs*.
	of the fifth	*ei*.

5. The *root* of an inflected word is the part not changed by inflection.

6. The *termination* of an inflected word is the part annexed to the root.

7. The root of a declined word may be found by removing the termination of the genitive singular, as given in the table; as,

Aula, a hall, gen. *aulæ*; if the termination *æ* be taken from *aulæ*, the root *aul* remains. So *lapis*, a stone, gen. *lapidis*,—root *lapid*.

REMARK.—From the last example it appears that the root is not always found in the nominative singular.

8. Adjectives and participles belong to the first, second, or third declension; gerunds to the second, and supines to the fourth.

QUESTIONS.—When are nouns said to be of the same declension? How many declensions have Latin nouns? Repeat the table of nominatives — of genitives. What is the root of an inflected word?—the termination? How may the root of a declined word be found? What case of a noun, &c., does not always contain the root? Of what declensions are adjectives and participles?—gerunds?—supines?

EXERCISE.

Tell the declension of each of the following nouns, and write down its root.

Nom.		*Gen.*	*Nom.*		*Gen.*
Cu'-ra,	*care*,	cu'-ræ.	Fruc'-tus,	*fruit*,	fruc'-tûs.
Pu'-er,	*boy*,	pu'-ĕ-ri.	Res,	*thing*,	re'-i.
Tur'-ris,	*tower*,	tur'-ris.	Pa'-ter,	*father*,	pa'-tris.
A'-ra,	*altar*,	a'-ræ.	La'-tus,	*side*,	lat'-ĕ-ris.
Clyp'-e-us,	*shield*,	clyp'-e-i.	Vir,	*man*,	vi'-ri.
Fa'-ci-es,	*face*,	fa-ci-ē'-i.	La'-pis,	*stone*,	lap'-ĭ-dis.
Gla'-ci-es,	*ice*,	gla-ci-ē'-i.	Quer'-cus,	*oak*,	quer'-cûs.
An'-trum,	*cave*,	an'-tri.	Cur'-rus,	*chariot*,	cur'-rûs.
Ar'-bor,	*tree*,	ar'-bŏ-ris.	Hor'-tus,	*garden*,	hor'-ti.

DIRECTIONS.—The teacher will ask, Why is *cura* of the first declension? Answer. Because its genitive singular ends in *æ*, and "The termination of the genitive singular of the first declension ends in *æ*." Table of genitives. A similar question is to be asked respecting each word in the exercise.—So in regard to the *root* of each word; as, Why is *cur* the root of *cura*? Ans. Because it is what remains after removing the termination of the genitive singular, and "The root of a declined word may be found by removing the termination of the genitive singular." L. 7. 7.

LESSON 8.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1. Latin nouns of the first declension end in *a*, and are feminine.

2. They are declined like *mu'-sa* (pronounced *mu'-zah*), a muse.

Singular.	*Terminations.*	*Plural.*	*Terminations.*
N. & V. mu'-sa,	*a,*	*N. & V.* mu'-sæ,	*æ,*
G. & D. mu'-sæ,	*æ,*	*G.* mu-sā'-rum,	*ā-rum,*
Ac. mu'-sam,	*am,*	*D. & Ab.* mu'-sis,	*ts,*
Ab. mu'sâ;	*â;*	*Ac.* mu'-sas.	*as.*

REMARK 1.—*Dea,* a goddess, and *filia,* a daughter, with *equa* and *mula,* have generally *ābus* instead of *is* in the dative and ablative plural.

REMARK 2.—*As* and *aï* are old forms of the genitive singular. *As* is retained by later writers in some compounds of *familia;* as, *pater-familias,* the father of a family. *Aï* is found principally in the older poets; as, *aulaï,* of a hall.

REMARK 3.—The poets sometimes form the genitive plural in *ûm* instead of *ārum.*

GREEK NOUNS.

3. Greek nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as,* or *es.* Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

4. Greek nouns in *a* are declined like *musa,* but have sometimes *an* in the accusative singular.

5. Greek nouns in *as, es,* and *e,* are thus declined in the singular number:—

N.	Æ-nē'-ās,	*N.*	An-chī'-sēs,	*N. V. & Ab.*	Pe-nel'-ŏ-pē,
G. & D.	Æ-nē'-æ,	*G. & D.*	An-chī'-sæ,	*G.*	Pe-nel'-ŏ-pēs,
Ac.	Æ-nē'-ām *or* ān,	*Ac.*	An-chī'-sen,	*D.*	Pe-nel'-ŏ-pæ,
V. & Ab.	Æ-nē'-ā.	*V. & Ab.*	An-chī'-sē *or* sā.	*Ac.*	Pe-nel'-ŏ-pēn.

6. In the plural, Greek nouns of the first declension are declined like the plural of *musa.*

7. Latin writers often change Greek nouns in *ē,* and sometimes those in *ēs,* into *a;* as, *grammatica* for *grammatice; Atrīda* for *Atrīdes.*

8. Some Greek nouns in *ēs* of the third declension, have likewise an accusative and vocative in *en* and *e,* after the first declension.

QUESTIONS.—How do Latin nouns of the first declension end? Of what gender are they? What is the root of *musa?* Decline *musa.* Where is the termination *a* found?—*æ?—am?—as?—is?—arum?* What is the termination of the nominative singular?—nom. pl.?—gen. sing.?—gen. pl.?—dat. sing.?—dat. pl.?—acc. sing.?—acc. pl.?—voc. sing.?—voc. pl.?—abl. sing.?—abl. pl.? What is peculiar in the declension of *dea, filia,* &c.? What were the ancient forms of the genitive of the 1st decl.? In what words is the form in *as* retained by later writers? Where is the form in *aï* principally found? How did the poets sometimes form the genitive plural? How do Greek nouns of the 1st decl. end? What is the rule for their gender? How are Greek nouns in *a* declined in the singular number?—in *as?*—in *es?*—in *e?* How are Greek nouns of the 1st decl. declined in the plural? What change in Greek nouns is sometimes made by Latin writers? What is said of some Greek nouns in *ēs* of the third declension?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following words, declined like *musa,* first writing the root, and then annexing the terminations:—

Au′-la, *a hall.*	Ga′-le-a, *a helmet.*	Pu-el′-la, *a girl.*
Co′-pi-a, *plenty.*	In′-sŭ-la, *an island.*	Stel′-la, *a star.*
Cu′-ra, *care.*	Lin′-gua, *a tongue.*	To′-ga, *a gown.*
Fa′-ma, *fame.*	Mach′-ĭ-na, *a machine.*	Vi′-a, *a way.*

Tell the roots of each of these nouns.—Repeat the terminations of the first declension without a root, but naming the cases: (thus, singular, nom. and voc. *a*, gen. and dat. *æ*, &c.) Write the plural of *dea* and *filia*.

Write the Latin corresponding to the following English phrases.

Of-a-helmet.[a]	O goddesses.[d]	For-the-daughters.
For-the-stars,[b]	From the-islands.[c]	By-a-machine.
In the-way.[c]	In the-ways.[c]	With care.[c]

The-fame (*nom.*) of the-goddesses.
The-tongues (*acc.*) of-the-muses.
From the-hall of-the-daughters.

a See Lesson 6, 4. *b*, See Less. 6, 5. *c* See Less. 6, 8. *d* See Less. 6, 7.

NOTE 1.—In the exercises, two or more English words connected by a hyphen are to be expressed by a single Latin word.

NOTE 2.—In translating into Latin the English phrases in this lesson, and in the succeeding lessons on nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, it is to be observed:—

(*a*) That *of*, *for*, *to*, and *by*, require no corresponding words in Latin, but are expressed by the termination of their cases. Thus *of-a-hall*, is expressed by *aulæ*; *for-a-helmet*, by *galeæ*; *by-care*, by *curâ*, &c.

(*b*) That *a* and *the* cannot be translated, as there are in Latin no corresponding words. See L. 4, Note 1.

(*c*) That *from* is expressed by *a*, if the noun following begins with a consonant, but by *ab*, if it begins with a vowel; as, *a stellis*, *ab insulâ*.

(*d*) That *with* is expressed by *cum*; *in*, by *in*; and *O*, by *O*.

LESSON 9.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1. Latin nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*: those in *er*, *ir*, and *us*, are masculine; those in *um* are neuter.

2. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are declined like *dom′-ĭ-nus*, a lord: thus,

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N.	dom′-ĭ-nus,	*us*,	*N. & V.*	dom′-ĭ-ni,	*i*,
G.	dom′-ĭ-ni,	*i*,	*G.*	dom-i-nō′-rum,	*ōrum*,
D. & Ab.	dom′-ĭ-no,	*o*,	*D. & Ab.*	dom′-ĭ-nis,	*is*,
Ac.	dom′-ĭ-num,	*um*,	*Ac.*	dom′-ĭ-nos.	*os.*
V.	dom′-ĭ-ne;	*e*;			

Exceptions.

1. *Domus*, a house, *humus*, the ground, with *colus*, *alvus*, *vannus*, and some Greek nouns, are feminine.

2. *Pelăgus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter. *Vulgus*, the common people, is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.

3. Names of persons in *ius*, *filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, omit *e* in the vocative.

4. *Deus*, a god, has *deus* in the vocative singular, and in the plural commonly changes *e* of its root into *i*, except in the genitive and accusative plural; as, N. & V. *dī'-i*, G. *de-ō'-rum*, &c.

5. Other nouns in *us* have sometimes *us* in the vocative, especially in the poets.

REMARK.—Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form.

QUESTIONS.—How do Latin nouns of the second declension end? Which of the terminations are masculine? Which are neuter? What is the root of *dŏmĭnus*? Decline *dŏmĭnus*. Where is the termination *us* found?—*i*?—*o*?—*um*?—*e*?—*ōrum*?—*is*?—*os*? What is the termination of the nominative singular?—nom. pl. ?—gen. sing. ?—gen. pl. ?—dat. sing. ?—dat. pl. ?—acc. sing. ?—acc. pl. ?—voc. sing. ?—voc. pl. ?—abl. sing. ?—abl. pl. ? What nouns of the second declension are feminine?—What, neuter? What nouns omit *e* in the vocative? What is said of the declension of *deus*? What is remarkable in the vocative of nouns in *us*?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following words declined like *dŏmĭnus*, first writing the root and then annexing the terminations:

An'-ĭ-mus, *the mind.*	Gla'-di-us, *a sword.*
Clyp'-e-us, *a shield.*	Lu'-cus, *a grove.*
Cor'-vus, *a raven.*	Mo'-dus, *a manner.*
Dig'-ĭ-tus, *a finger.*	Ven'-tus, *a wind.*

Repeat the terminations of nouns in *us* without a root. Write the declension of *Vir-gil'-i-us*, Virgil, in the singular number. Write that of *de-us*, in both numbers.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

For-a-sword.	For-the-fingers.	In the-groves.
O shield!	O son!	By-the-wind.
To-the-ravens.	The-son's.[a]	Of-the-mind.

By-the-minds of-the-gods.
The-ravens (*acc.*) in the-grove.

[a] Less. 6.

LESSON 10.

1. Nouns in *er* of the second declension are regularly declined like *ge'-ner*, a son-in-law: thus,

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. & V.	ge'-ner,	—	*N. & V.*	gen'-ĕ-ri,	*i,*
G.	gen'-ĕ-ri,	*i,*	*G.*	gen-e-rō'-rum,	*ōrum,*
D. & Ab.	gen'-ĕ-ro,	*o,*	*D. & Ab.*	gen'-ĕ-ris,	*is,*
Ac.	gen'-ĕ-rum;	*um;*	*Ac.*	gen'-ĕ-ros.	*os.*

REMARKS.

1. In the nominative and vocative singular of words declined like *gener*, the *root* only of the cases is found, with no grammatical termination annexed.

2. *Vir*, a man, and its compounds, are declined like *gener;* thus, N. and V. *vir*, G. *vi'-ri*, &c.

Syncopated Nouns in er.

2. Most nouns in *er* omit *e* in all the cases except the nominative and vocative singular, like *a'-ger*, a field, gen. *a'-gri*, (instead of *ag'-ĕ-ri*,) thus,

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. V.	a'-ger,	—	*N. V.*	a'-gri,	*i,*
G.	a'-gri,	*i,*	*G.*	a-grō'-rum,	*ōrum,*
D. Ab.	a'-gro,	*o,*	*D. Ab.*	a'-gris,	*is,*
Ac.	a'-grum;	*um;*	*Ac.*	a'-gros.	*os.*

NOTE.—*Syncopation* is the omission of one or more letters in the middle of a word.

QUESTIONS.—Decline *gener*. Decline *ager*. How does *ager* differ in declension from *gener*? What is the root of *gener*?—of *ager*? What cases of nouns in *er* have no grammatical termination? How is the nominative singular *ager* formed from the root? (Answer. By inserting *e* before *r*.) In what cases do nouns in *er* differ from those in *us*? How are *vir* and its compounds declined? What is syncopation?

EXERCISE.

1. Write out the declension of the following nouns, declined like *gener* :—

Ar'-mĭ-ger, *an armor bearer.*	So'-cer, *a father-in-law.*
Pu'-er, *a boy.*	Vir, *a man.*

2. Write out the declension of the following nouns, syncopated in declension like *ager* :—

A'-per, *a wild boar.*	Ca'-per, *a goat.*
Aus'-ter, *the south wind.*	Li'-ber, *a book.*
Can'-cer, *a crab.*	Ma-gis'-ter, *a master.*

Write the roots of *aper*, *auster*, *cancer*, *caper*, *liber*, and *magister*.

English to be translated into Latin :—

For-a-son-in-law.
To-the-fields.
In the-field.
Of-the-armor-bearer.
By-the-south-wind.
O boys!
The-book (*nom.*) of-the-master.
Of-the-fields.
In the-fields.
For-the-man.
To-the-gods.

LESSON 11.

1. Nouns in *um* are declined like *regnum*, a kingdom: thus,

Singular.	*Term.*	*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. Ac. V. reg′-num,	*um*,	*N. Ac. V.* reg′-na,	*a*,
G. reg′-ni,	*i*,	*G.* reg-nō′-rum,	*ōrum*,
D. Ab. reg′-no;	*o*;	*D. Ab.* reg′-nis.	*is.*

REMARKS.

1. Neuter nouns, of whatever declension, have their nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and in the plural these cases always end in *a*.

2. The genitive singular *ii* of nouns in *ius* and *ium* is often contracted by the poets into *î*; as *Appius, Appî*; *ingenium, ingĕnî*.

3. So likewise *dii* and *diis*, from *deus*, are sometimes contracted into *dî* and *dîs*.

4. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight, and measure, is commonly formed in *ûm* instead of *ōrum*. So also in poetry, *deûm, lĭbĕrûm, Argīvûm*, &c., instead of *deōrum*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—How is *regnum* declined? What is the root of *regnum*? What are the terminations of nouns in *um*, without a root? What cases of the second declension are like the same cases of the first? How do the terminations of the genitive plural of the first and second declensions differ? What is the quantity of their penult? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declensions of the following nouns declined like *regnum*:

An′-trum, *a cave.*
Au′-rum, *gold.* (sing.)
Bel′-lum, *war.*
Do′-num, *a gift.*
Ex-em′-plum, *an example.*
Fer′-rum, *iron.* (sing.)
Sax′-um, *a rock.*
Tem′-plum, *a temple.*

Write the abl. sing. of *antrum*—the gen. sing. of *aurum*—the acc. pl. of *bellum*—the abl. pl. of *donum*.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

To-a-lord. Of-a-son-in-law. By-gold. By-the-gold of-the-tem-

ple. A-master's gift. A-rock in the-field. The-example of-the-daughter. The-tongue (*nom.*) of-the-boy. The-island (*acc.*) of-the-goddesses. In the-hall of-the-master. For-the-daughters. A-plenty (*nom.*) of-gold. The-iron of-the-machines. For-the-shield of-the-man. The-boy's tongue (*acc.*)

Translate into English :—

Auri.	Dona.	Aurum in templo.	Exemplo (*dat.*)
Bellorum.	Dono (*dat.*)	Donum auri.	In animo.

GREEK NOUNS.

2. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *os* or *on*. Those in *os* are masculine, those in *on* are neuter.

3. They are thus declined in the singular number :—

N.	De'-los,	*N. Ac. V.*	Bar'-bĭ-ton,
G.	De'-li,	*G.*	Bar'-bĭ-ti,
D. Ab.	De'-lo,	*D. Ab.*	Bar'-bĭ-to.
Ac.	De'-lon *or* -lum,		
V.	De'-le.		

4. In the plural, Greek nouns of the second declension are declined like the plural of *dominus* and *regnum*.

5. *Os* and *on* are often changed in Latin into *us* and *um*; as, *Alphĕos, Alphĕus; Ilion, Ilium.*

6. Nouns in *ros* after a consonant are generally changed into *er*; as, *Alexandros, Alexander.*

7. Some proper nouns in *os* are thus declined: N. *A'-thos*, G. D. Ab. *A'-tho*, Ac. *A'-tho* or *A'-thon*.

8. Greek proper names in *eus* are generally declined like *dominus*, but their vocative ends in *eu*. Sometimes, especially in poetry, they are declined after the third declension. *Panthus* makes *Panthu* in the vocative.

9. The nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *æ*.

10. The genitive plural in the titles of books, and in a few proper names, sometimes ends in *ōn*; as, *Georgĭcōn, Philæmōn.*

QUESTIONS.—How do Greek nouns of the 2d declension end? Decline *Delos* in the singular. Decline *barbiton* in the singular—in the plural. What change is often made by Latin writers in Greek nouns in *os* and *on*?—in nouns in *ros* after a consonant? Decline *Athos*. How are Greek proper nouns in *eus* declined? What is sometimes the plural of nouns in *os*? In what classes of Greek nouns is the genitive plural in *ōn* sometimes used?

LESSON 12.

THIRD DECLENSION.

The number of final letters in nouns of the third declension is twelve.

Five are vowels—*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*; and seven are consonants—*c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

The gender of nouns of the third declension may commonly be known by their termination.

MASCULINES.

1. Nouns in *e r*, *o r*, *o*,
(Excepting *i o*, *do*, and *go*,
With nouns in *os* and *nis*,
And *es*, if it increase,
E x and *n* (excepting *men*),
With *dens* and *fons*,
And *mons* and *pons*,
Are to be counted masculine.

NOTE 1.—A noun is said to *increase*, when its genitive singular has more syllables than its nominative.

NOTE 2.—For the principal exceptions to the rules for the gender and genitive of nouns of this declension, see Appendix, L. B—F.

Nouns in n *and* r.

2. Nouns in *n* and *r* form their genitive by adding *is* to the nominative.

3. They are declined like *ho'-nor*, honor: thus,

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. V.	ho'-nor,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	ho-nō'-res,	*es*,
G.	ho-nō'-ris,	*is*,	*G.*	ho-nō'-rum,	*um*,
D.	ho-nō'-ri,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	ho-nor'-i-bus.	*ibus.*
Ac.	ho-nō'-rem,	*em*,			
Ab.	ho-nō'-re;	*e*;			

REMARK.—Nouns in *ber* and most nouns in *ter* drop *e*, except in the nominative and vocative singular; as, *pa'-ter*, a father, G. *pa'-tris*, D. *pa'-tri*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is the termination of the genitive singular of the first declension?—of the second?—of the third?—of the fourth?—of the fifth? What terminations of nouns of the third declension are masculine? When is a noun said *to* increase? How do nouns in *n* and *r* form their genitive? Decline *honor*. What is remarked of nouns in *ber* and *ter*?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns declined like *honor* :—

A′-mor,	ōris, *love.*	Del′-phin,	īnis, *a dolphin.*
Do′-lor,	ōris, *pain.*	Ag′-ger,	ĕris, *a rampart.*
Pas′-tor,	ōris, *a shepherd.*	Car′-cer,	ĕris, *a prison.*
Ar′-bor, f.	ŏris, *a tree.*	Cra′-ter,	ēris, *a cup.*

Repeat the terminations of the several cases. Write out the declension of *pa′-ter*,—of *ma′-ter*, a mother, declined like *pater*,—of *September*.

Translate :—Delphīni. Arbŏrum. In aggerĭbus. A carcĕre. Craterĭbus (*dat.*) Honōres. Pastorĭbus (*abl.*) Dolōre. Patri. O matres. Pastoris amor (*nom.*)

LESSON 13.

Nouns in o.

Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis ;* as, *ser′-mo, ser-mō′-nis*, speech, which is thus declined :

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	ser′-mo,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	ser-mō′-nes,	*es,*
G.	ser-mō′-nis,	*is,*	*G.*	ser-mō′-num,	*um,*
D.	ser-mō′-ni,	*i,*	*D. Ab.*	ser-mon′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	ser-mō′-nem,	*em,*			
Ab.	ser-mō′-ne ;	*e ;*			

Nouns in os.

Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis ;* as, *flos, flō′-ris*, a flower ; *ne′-pos, ne-pō′-tis*, a grandchild.

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	flos,	*s,*	*N. Ac. V.*	flō′-res,	*es,*
G.	flō′-ris,	*is,*	*G.*	flō′-rum,	*um,*
D.	flō′-ri,	*i,*	*D. Ab.*	flor′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	flō′-rem,	*em,*			
Ab.	flō′-re ;	*e ;*			

QUESTIONS.—How do nouns in *o* form their genitive?—nouns in *os*? Decline *sermo*—*flos*. What is the root of *sermo*?—of *flos*? What two cases in the singular are alike? What two cases in the plural? What three cases in the plural?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following words declined like *sermo* :—

Dra'-co, *a dragon.* Pa'-vo, *a peacock.*
Le'-o, *a lion.* Ra'-ti-o, f. (pron. ra'-she-o,) *reason.*

Write out the declension of the following nouns which have *ŏris* :

Mos, *a custom.* Ros, *dew.*
Os, n. *the mouth.* L. 11. R. 1. Ar'-bos (*or*, ar'-bor,) *ŏris*, a tree.

And the following which have *ōtis* :

Cos, *a whetstone.* Ne'-pos, *a grandson.*
Dos, *a dowry.* Sa-cer'-dos, *a priest.*

Repeat the terminations. Write the roots of the preceding nouns in this exercise.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases :—

Of-speech. By-a-lion. The-reason (*acc.*) of-the-priest.[a]
For-a-dowry. Of-a-peacock. The-mouth of-the-lion.[a]
To-a-dragon. Of-the-trees. By-the-speeches of-the-shepherds.[a]

[a] Write the genitive in Latin before the noun on which it depends; as, "the honor of the father," *patris honor*.

Translate into English :—

Sermōni.	Pavōnis	Cum leonĭbus.
Nepōtes.	Sacerdōti.	In carcĕre.
Dracōni.	Arbŏri.	A pavōne.

LESSON 14.

Increasing Nouns in es *and* is.

1. Increasing nouns in *es* form their genitive in *ĭtis*—a few in *ētis*.

2. They are declined like *mĭ'-les*, a soldier : thus,

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	mĭ'-les,	*s*,	*N. Ac. V.*	mĭl'-ĭ-tes,	*es*,
G.	mĭl'-ĭ-tis,	*ĭs*,	*G.*	mĭl'-ĭ-tum,	*um*,
D.	mĭl'-ĭ-ti,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	mi-lĭt'-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	mĭl'-ĭ-tem,	*em*,			
Ab.	mĭl'-ĭ-te ;	*e ;*			

3. Increasing nouns in *is* form their genitive in *idis*, *itis*, or *ĕris*. *Lapis*, m. a stone, is thus declined:

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	la′-pis,	*s*,	*N. Ac. V.*	lap′-ĭ-des,	*es*,
G.	lap′-ĭ-dis,	*is*,	*G.*	lap′-ĭ-dum,	*um*,
D.	lap′-ĭ-di,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	la-pid′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	lap′-ĭ-dem,	*em*,			
Ab.	lap′-ĭ-de;	*e*;			

Nouns in ex.

4. Nouns in *ex*, of more than one syllable, form their genitive in *icis*; as, *pontifex*, a chief-priest.

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	pon′-tĭ-fex,	*s*,	*N. Ac. V.*	pon-tif′-ĭ-ces,	*ĕs*,
G.	pon-tif′-ĭ-cis,	*ĭs*,	*G.*	pon-tif′-ĭ-cum,	*um*,
D.	pon-tif′-ĭ-ci,	*ĭ*,	*D. Ab.*	pon-ti-fic′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	pon-tif′-ĭ-cem,	*em*,			
Ab.	pon-tif′-ĭ-ce;	*ĕ*;			

QUESTIONS.—How do increasing nouns in *es* form their genitive? When is a noun said to increase? Decline *miles*. What is the root of *miles*? What is the termination of the dat. sing.?—of the dat. pl.? How do increasing nouns in *is* form their genitive? Decline *lapis*. How do nouns in *ex* of more than one syllable form their genitive? Decline *pontifex*. What is its root?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns:—

A′-les, ĭtis, m. & f. *a bird.* Ab′-i-es, ĕtis, f. *a fir-tree.*
Co′-mes, ĭtis, m. & f. *a companion.* A′-ri-es, ĕtis, m. *a ram.*
Pe′-des, ĭtis, m. *a foolman.* Se′-ges, ĕtis, f. *growing corn.*

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *lapis*.

Cas′-sis, ĭdis, f. *a helmet.* Lis, *G.* li′-tis, f. *strife*; *G. pl.* lit′-ĭ-um.
Pul′-vis, ĕris, m. and f. *dust.* San′-guis, ĭnis, m. *blood.* (*sing.*)

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *pontifex*.

Ar′-tĭ-fex, *an artist.* Fru′-tex, *a shrub.* Si′-lex, *flint.*
Cu′-lex, *a gnat.* In′-dex, *an informer.* Vor′-tex, *a whirlpool.*

Write out the roots of the preceding nouns.
Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

For-the-companion of-the-muses.
To-the-father-in-law of-the-girl.

By-the-wild-boars of-the-field. Of-the-birds in the-fir-trees.
In the-groves of-the-gods. The-soldiers' shields. (*acc.*)

Translate into English :—

Milītem.	Comes pedītum.	Alītes in abiēte.
O milītes.	In abietībus.	Segĕti.
Cum militībus.	Ariĕtes.	Sacerdōtem.

LESSON 15.

FEMININES.

1. Nouns, not increasing, in *e s*,
Us (*ūtis*, *ūdis*,*) *x*, *as*, *is*,
In *s* impure, *ys*, *aus*, *i o*,
Are feminine—with *do* and *go*.

* i. e. having *ūtis* or *ūdis* in the genitive.

NOTE.—A letter is said to be *impure* when it follows a consonant.

Nouns in es *and* is, *not increasing*, *and in* do *and* go.

2. Nouns, not increasing, in *es* and *is*, form their genitive in *is*.

3. Feminines in *es* are declined like *ru'-pes*, a rock : thus,

Singular.	*Term.*	*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V. ru'-pes,	*es*,	*N. Ac. V.* ru'-pes,	*es*,
G. ru'-pis,	*is*,	*G.* ru'-pi-um,	*ium*,
D. ru'-pi,	*i*,	*D. Ab.* ru'-pī-bus.	*ibus*.
Ac. ru'-pem,	*em*,		
Ab. ru'-pe ;	*e ;*		

4. Nouns in *is* are declined like *tur'-ris*, a tower : thus,

Singular.	*Term.*	*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V. tur'-ris,	*is*,	*N. Ac. V.* tur'-res,	*es*,
G. tur'-ris,	*is*,	*G.* tur'-ri-um,	*ium*,
D. tur'-ri,	*i*,	*D. Ab.* tur'-rī-bus.	*ibus*.
Ac. tur'-rem *or* tur'-rim,	*em*, *im*,		
Ab. tur'-re *or* tur'-ri ;	*e*, *i ;*		

Nouns in do *and* go.

5. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *inis ;* as, *arundo*, *arundĭnis*, a reed :—

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	a-run′-do,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	a-run′-dĭ-nes,	*es,*
G.	a-run′-dĭ-nis,	*ĭs,*	*G.*	a-run′-dĭ-num,	*um,*
D.	a-run′-dĭ-ni,	*ĭ,*	*D. Ab.*	a-run-din′-ĭ-bus.	*ibus.*
Ac.	a-run′-dĭ-nem,	*em,*			
Ab.	a-run′-dĭ-ne;	*ĕ;*			

QUESTIONS.—What terminations of nouns of the third declension are feminine? What, masculine? When is a letter said to be impure? Decline *rupes—turris.* How does the genitive plural of *rupes* and *turris* end?—the acc. sing. of *turris*?—the abl. sing.? How do nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive? Decline *arundo.*

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *rupes.*

Æ′-des, is, *a temple.* Nu′-bes, is, *a cloud.*
Cla′-des, is, *slaughter.* Vul′-pes, is, *a fox.*

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *turris*

A′-vis, is, *a bird.* Na′-vis, is, *a ship.*
Cla′-vis, is, *a key.* O′-vis, is, *a sheep.*

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *arundo.*

For-mī′-do, *fear.* I-mā′-go, *an image.*
Gran′-do, *hail.* Mar′-go, m. *a margin.*
Tes-tū′-do, *a tortoise.* Vir′-go, *a virgin.*
Ho′-mo, inis, c. *a man.*
Ne′-mo, inis, c. *no one.*

Tell the root of each noun in this exercise.

Translate into English :—

Clade ovium. In nubĭbus. Cum navĭbus.
Claves ædis. Navĭbus. (*dat.*) O vulpes. (*pl.*)

LESSON 16.

Nouns in as *and* us.

1. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ātis ;* as, *æ′-tas,* an age, which is thus declined :—

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term*
N. V.	æ′-tas,	*s,*	*N. Ac. V.*	æ-tā′-tes,	*es,*
G.	æ-tā′-tis,	*ĭs,*	*G.*	æ-tā′-tum,	*um,*
D.	æ-tā′-ti,	*ĭ,*	*D. Ab.*	æ-tat′-ĭ-bus.	*ibus.*
Ac.	æ-tā′-tem,	*em,*			
Ab.	æ-tā′-te;	*e;*			

2. Feminines in *us* form their genitive in *ūtis* or *ūdis*, and are declined like *virtus*, virtue: thus,

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	vir'-tus,	*s,*	*N. Ac. V.*	vir-tū'-tes,	*es,*
G.	vir-tū'-tis,	*is,*	*G.*	vir-tū'-tum,	*um,*
D.	vir-tū'-ti,	*i,*	*D. Ab.*	vir-tu'-tĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ac.	vir-tū'-tem,	*em,*			
Ab.	vir-tū'-te;	*e;*			

QUESTIONS.—When is a noun said to increase? How do nouns in *as* form their genitive? Decline *ætas*. How do feminines in *us* of the third declension form their genitive? Decline *virtus*.

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *ætas*.

Æs'-tas, *summer;* pi'-ĕ-tas, *piety*, (only in the sing.;) and po-tes'-tas, *power*.

And the following declined like *virtus*:—

Juventus, *youth;* pa'-lus, ūdis, *a marsh;* laus, lau'-dis, *praise*.
Tell the roots of the nouns in this lesson.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

By-strife.	The-key (*nom.*) of-the-tower.
In the-dust.	By-the-slaughter of-the-soldiers.
From the-helmet.	In the-temples of-the-gods.
With the-blood of-sheep.	By-the-piety of-the-daughter.
With strife.	

Translate into English:—

Pietātem. In æstāte. Pulvĕris. A palūde. Laudĭbus. (*abl.*) Cassis in pulvĕre.

LESSON 17.

Nouns in s *impure and* x.

1. Nouns in *s* impure form their genitive in *is* or *tis*. *Ars*, art, is thus declined:—

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	ars,	*s,*	*N. Ac. V.*	ar'-tes,	*es,*
G.	ar'-tis,	*is,*	*G.*	ar'-ti-um,*	*ium,*
D.	ar'-ti,	*i,*	*D. Ab.*	ar'-tĭ-bus.	*ĭbus,*
Ac.	ar'-tem,	*em,*			
Ab.	ar'-te;	*e;*			

* Pronounced *ar'-she-um.*

NOTE.—Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*, change *s* into *is*. Nouns in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, change *s* into *tis*.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive in *cis* or *gis*. *Vox*, a voice, is thus declined:—

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V.	vox,	*s*,	*N. Ac. V.*	vo'-ces,	*es*,
G.	vo'-cis,	*is*,	*G.*	vo'-cum,	*um*,
D	vo'-ci,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	voc'-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus*.
Ac.	vo'-cem,	*em*,			
Ab.	vo'-ce;	*e*;			

REMARK.—*Nox*, night, makes in the gen. sing. *noc'-tis*, gen. plur. *noc'-ti-um*, (pronounced *noc'-she-um*.) *Nix*, snow, has *ni'-vis*.

Nouns in ys.

Greek nouns in *ys* either form a Latin genitive in *is* or *dis*, or retain the Greek form in *os* or *dos*.

Those which increase in *is* or *os* are declined like *Tethys*:—

N.	Te'-thў̆s, *s*,	*Ac.*	Te'-thyn, *n*,
G.	Te'-thў̄-os, *ŏs*,	*V.*	Te'-thy, —
D.	Te'-thў̄-i; *ĭ*;	*Ab.*	Teth'-ў̄-e. *ĕ*.

QUESTIONS.—How do nouns in *s* impure form their genitive? When is a letter said to be impure? Decline *ars*. In what terminations is *s* changed into *is*? In what, into *tis*? How do nouns in *s* form their genitive? What kind of consonant is *x*? For what two single letters does *x* stand in *vox*?—in *lex*? (gen. *le'-gis*.) Decline *vox*. How do Greek nouns in *ys* form their genitive? Decline *Tethys*.

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of:—

Frons,	tis, *the forehead*.	Arx,	cis, *a citadel*. (*G. pl.* ium.)
Gens,	tis, *a nation*.	Cer'-vix,	ĭcis, *the neck*.
Pars,	tis, *a part*.	Co'-rax,	ăcis, m. *a raven*.
Plebs,	is, *the common people*.	Lex,	gis, *a law*.
Urbs,	is, *a city*.	Rex,	gis, m. *a king*.

Write the roots of the preceding nouns—the declension of *nox*.

Translate into English:—

Arte.	In fronte.	Pars noctis.	Vulpi.
Partium.	Ab arce.	Leges gentis.	Rex gentis.
Voce.	Cum gente.	Arx urbis.	Cervix ariĕtis.

LESSON 18.

NEUTERS.

1. The letters of the word *cliyeta* constitute seven of the terminations of neuter nouns of the third declension. The other terminations are *men*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us* when it makes *ĕris* or *ŏris* in the genitive;—or thus,

2. Nouns in *cliyeta** neuter are,
Us (*ĕris*, *ŏris*,) *men*, *ur*, *ar*.

* (To be pronounced *cli-ye'-ta.*)

Nouns in men *and* us.

3. Nouns in *men* form their genitive in *inis*; as, *carmen*, *carmĭnis*, a verse:—

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	car'-men,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	car'-mĭ-na,	*a*,
G.	car'-mĭ-nis,	*is*,	*G.*	car'-mĭ-num,	*um*,
D.	car'-mĭ-ni,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	car-mĭn'-ĭ-bus.	*ibus.*
Ab.	car'-mĭ-ne;	*e*;			

4. Neuters in *us* form their genitive in *ĕris* or *ŏris*; as *opus*, *opĕris*, a work:

	Singular.	*Term.*		*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	o'-pus,	*s*,	*N. Ac. V.*	op'-ĕ-ra,	*a*,
G.	op'-ĕ-ris,	*is*,	*G.*	op'-ĕ-rum,	*um*,
D.	op'-ĕ-ri,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	o-per'-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus.*
Ab.	op'-ĕ-re;	*e*;			

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of neuter nouns of the third declension? How do nouns in *men* form their genitive?—neuters in *us*? Decline *carmen*—*opus*. What three cases of neuter nouns are alike? How do these cases end in the plural? How do masculines and feminines end in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural? What is the root of *carmen*?—of *opus*?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of:—

Ag'-men, *an army.*	No'-men, *a name.*
Cri'-men, *a crime.*	Nu'-men, *a deity.*
Flu'-men, *a river.*	Teg'-men, *a covering.*
Fœ'-dus, ĕris, *a league.*	Cor'-pus, ŏris, *a body.*
Ge'-nus, ĕris, *a kind.*	Pec'-tus, ŏris, *the breast.*
Sce'-lus, ĕris, *a crime.*	Tem'-pus, ŏris, *time.*

Tell the root of each of the preceding nouns.

Translate into English:—

Crimĭne.	Numĭnum.	Agmĭnĭbus. (*dat.*)
Scelerĭbus. (*abl.*)	Corpŏri.	Flumĭnis.

Translate into Latin:—

Of-rivers.	From the-deity.	A-covering of-the-breast.
Of-the-deity.	Of-the-kind.	From the-time.
O the-times!	For-the-rivers.	With the-army.

LESSON 19.

Nouns in c, t, *and* a.

1. *Caput*, a head, and its compounds, the only nouns in *t*, are thus declined:—

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	ca′-put,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	cap′-ĭ-ta,	*a*,
G.	cap′-ĭ-tis,	*is*,	*G.*	cap′-ĭ-tum,	*um*,
D.	cap′-ĭ-ti,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	ca-pit′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus*.
Ab.	cap′-ĭ-te;	*e*;			

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ătis*; as, *po-ē′-ma*, *po-em′-ă-tis*, a poem:

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	po-ē′-ma,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	po-em′-ă-ta,	*a*,
G.	po-em′-ă-tis,	*is*,	*G.*	po-em′-ă-tum,	*um*,
D.	po-em′-ă-ti,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	po-em′-ă-tis or po-e-mat′-ĭ-bus.	*is* or *ĭbus*.
Ab.	po-em′-ă-te;	*e*;			

3. *I′-ter*, n., a journey, has a double increase, and is thus declined:—

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	i′-ter,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	i-tin′-ĕ-ra.	*a*,
G.	i-tin′-ĕ-ris,	*is*,	*G.*	i-tin′-ĕ-rum,	*um*,
D.	i-tĭn′-ĕ-ri,	*i*,	*D. Ab.*	it-i-ner′-ĭ-bus.	*ĭbus*.
Ab.	i-tin′-ĕ-re;	*e*;			

4. *Alec* (or *halec*) *alēcis*, and *lac*, *lactis*, the only nouns in *c*, want the plural.

5. Nouns in *y* form their genitive in *os* or *s*; as, *misy*, *misўos*, or *misys*.

QUERIES.—What nouns end in *t*? Decline *caput*. How do nouns in *a* form their genitive? Decline *poēma*. What is said of the increase of *iter*? Decline

it. What is the root of *caput*?—of *pŏēma*?—of *iter*? What nouns end in *e*? Decline *iac*. How do nouns in *y* form their genitive?

EXERCISE.

Translate into Latin :—

For-the-head. Of-poems. By-journeys. By-kinds.
In the-breast. For-a-covering of-the-body. By-name.

Translate into English :—

In corpŏre. Capĭtum. In pŏēmatĭbus.
Sceleribus. (*abl.*) Poēmăta. Capĭta.

LESSON 20.

Nouns in e, al, *and* ar.

1. Nouns in *e* are declined like *se-dī'-le*, a seat: thus,

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	se-dī'-le,	*e,*	*N. Ac. V.*	se-dil'-i-a,	*ia,*
G.	se-dī'-lis,	*is,*	*G.*	se-dil'-i-um,	*ium,*
D. Ab.	se-dī'-li;	*i;*	*D. Ab.*	se-dil'-ī-bus.	*ĭbus.*

2. Neuters in *al* and *ar* are declined like *an'-ĭ-mal*, an animal: thus,

Singular.		*Term.*	*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. Ac. V.	an'-ĭ-mal,	—	*N. Ac. V.*	an-i-ma'-li-a,	*ia,*
G.	an-i-ma'-lis,	*is,*	*G.*	an-i-ma'-li-um,	*ium,*
D. Ab.	an-i-ma'-li;	*i;*	*D. Ab.*	an-i-mal'-ī-bus.	*ĭbus.*

Remark.—The following terminations of nouns of the third declension are exclusively Greek; viz., *ma, i, y, dn, în, ōn, ȳn, ēr, ȳr, ys, eus, yx, inx, ynx,* and plurals in *e.*

Questions.—Decline *sedile—animal.* What terminations of the third declension are masculine?—feminine?—neuter? In what do neuters of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the singular?—in the plural? In what do neuters in *e, al,* and *ar,* differ from other neuters in the singular?—in the plural?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns in *e, al,* and *ar*:—

An-cī'-le, *a shield.* O-vī'-le, *a sheepfold.*
Cu-bī'-le, *a couch.* Vec-tī'-gal, *a tax.*
Mo-nī'-le, *a necklace.* Cal'-car, *a spur.*

Translate into Latin:—

For-a-shield.	In the-sheep-folds of-the-shepherds.
The-taxes of-the-nation.	By-the-shields of-the-soldiers.
The-necklaces of-the-girls.	From the-necks of-the-animals.

Translate into English:—

Animali. (*dat.*)	Calcar milĭtis.	In vĭâ pedĭtis.
Ancĭlia.	Cubilia hominum.	In luco deōrum.
Ovilium.	Monilia deārum.	Cum filiābus.
Ab insŭlâ.	A cubilĭbus hominum.	Cura animalium.

LESSON 21.

Irregular Nouns.

The following nouns of the third declension are declined irregularly; *Jupĭter*, m. Jupiter; *vis*, f. strength; *bos*, m. or f. an ox or cow:—

Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. V. Ju'-pĭ-ter,	*N. V.* vis,	*N. Ac. V.* vi'-res,
G. Jo'-vis,	*G.* vis,	*G.* vir'-i-um,
D. Jo'-vi,	*D.* —	*D. Ab.* vir'-i-bus.
Ac. Jo'-vem,	*Ac.* vim,	
Ab. Jo'-ve.	*Ab.* vi.	

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. V. bos,	*N. Ac. V.* bo'-ves,
G. bo'-vis,	*G.* bo'-um,
D. bo'-vi,	*D. Ab.* bo'-bus *or* bu'-bus.
Ac. bo'-vem,	
Ab. bo'-ve.	

EXERCISE.

Decline *musa—dominus—gener—ager—regnum—honor*. What is the termination of the dat. sing. in the first declension?—in the second?—in the third? What is the termination of the acc. sing. in the first declension?—in the second?—of masculines and feminines in the third?—of the abl. sing. of the first?—of the second?—of the third? (Answer: commonly *e*, but sometimes *i*.) What is the termination of the nom. pl. in masculines and feminines of the third declension?—of the second?—of the first?—of neuters of the third? (Answer: *a*,—sometimes *ia*)—of the second? What is the termination of the genitive plural of the first declension?—of the second?

—of the third? (Answer: *um*,—sometimes *ium*)—the termination of the dative and ablative plural of the first declension?—of the second?—of the third?

LESSON 22.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.

NOTE.—The teacher will probably think it expedient to omit this and the following lesson until the book is reviewed.

Rules for forming the nominative singular of the third declension from the root.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; t, d;* and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative.

REMARKS.

1. *t*, *d*, and *r*, before *s* are dropped.[a]
2. *c* and *g* before *s* form *x*.[b]
3. Short *i* in the root before *c*, *b*, *p*, and *t* is commonly changed to *e*.[c]
4. Short *e* or *o* before *r*, in neuters, is changed to *u*.[d]
5. Some roots, mostly monosyllabic, of masculines and feminines, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone.

(*a*) So *bos* drops *v*, and *pollis* and *sanguis* drop *n*.
(*b*) So *ve* from *niv* the root of *nix*. (*c*) So *ă* in *aucepe*, *auctipis*.
(*d*) So in *ebur*, *femur*, *jecur*, and *robur*, which do not take *s*. In the masc. and fem., *cinis*, *cuclmis*, *pulvis*, and *vomis*, *ŏ* is changed to *ĕ*.

The following words will illustrate the preceding rule and remarks:—

Gen.	*Root.*	*Nom.*	*Gen.*	*Root.*	*Nom.*
Nepōtis,	nepot—,	nepos.	Principis,	princip—,	princeps.
Laudis,	laud—,	laus.	Comĭtis,	comit—,	comes.
Floris,	flor—,	flos.	Genĕris,	gener—,	genus.
Vocis,	voc—,	vox.	Tempŏris,	tempor—,	tempus.
Regis,	reg—,	rex.	Rupis,	rup—,	rupes.
Pollĭcis,	pollic—,	pollex.	Auris,	aur—,	auris.
Cœlĭbis,	cœlib—,	cœlebs.	Gruis,	gru—,	grus.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first rule for forming the nominative singular from the root? What letters are dropped before *s*? What is the rule for *c* and *g* before *s*? What is the rule for short *i* in the root before *c*, *b*, *p*, and *t*?—for short *e* or *o* before *r* in neuters? What roots add *es* or *is*?

EXERCISE.

From the following genitives form the nominative singular:—

Frigŏris, *n.*	Pollĭcis, *m.*	Virtūtis, *f.*	Fraudis, *f.*
Æstatis, *f.*	Clientis, *m.*	Moris, *m.*	Tellūris, *f.*
Forcipis, *m.* & *f.*	Alitis, *m.*	Munĕris, *n.*	Montis, *m.*

LESSON 23.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR—CONTINUED.

II. The nominative singular of roots ending in *l*, *n*, *r*, and of neuters in *t*, commonly takes no grammatical termination.

REMARKS.

1. *ōn* (long), and *ĭn* (short), in the root of masculines and feminines, become *o*.[a]
2. *ĭn* (short) in neuters, becomes *ĕn*.[b]
3. *tr* and *br*, at the end of a root, take *e* between them.
4. In the root of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *it* becomes *ut*.
5. A few neuters add *e* to the root.
6. Roots ending in a repeated consonant drop one in the nominative.

NOTE. 1.—*t* in *hepar* is changed to *r*.
NOTE. 2.—*Lac* drops *t*, and *cor* drops *d*.
(*a*) So likewise *ōn* in *Anio* and *Nerio*. (*b*) So in *cacen*, *pecten*, *tibīcen*, and *subīcen*.
NOTE 3.—Some exceptions to these rules, and to those concerning the gender and genitive of the third declension, may be found in the Appendix.

The following words will illustrate the preceding rule and remarks:—

Gen.	*Root.*	*Nom.*
Animālis,	animal—,	animal, *n.*
Canōnis,	canon—,	canon, *m.*
Honōris,	honor—,	honor, *m.*
Sermōnis,	sermon—,	sermo, *m.*
Arundĭnis,	arundin—,	arundo, *f.*
Flumĭnis,	flumin—,	flumen, *n.*
Patris,	patr—,	pater, *m.*
Imbris,	imbr—,	imber, *m.*
Poēmătis,	poēmat—,	poēma, *n.*
Retis,	ret—,	rete, *n.*
Fellis,	fell—,	fel. *n.*

QUESTIONS.—What is the second rule for forming the nominative singular from the root? What terminations in the root become *o* in the nominative singular?—what becomes *ĕn*? What is the rule for *tr* and *br* at the end of a root?—for *at* in the root of neuters? What add *e* to the root?

EXERCISE.

From the following genitives form the nominative singular:—

Legiōnis, *f.*	Matris, *f.*	Dogmātis, *n.*	Originis, *f.*
Virginis, *f.*	Octobris, *m.*	Animālis, *n.*	Delphīnis, *m.*
Agminis, *n.*	Ancīlis, *n.*	Prædōnis, *m.*	Criminis, *n.*
Farris, *n.*	Capītis, *n.*	Impăris, *adj.*	Volūcris, *adj.*

LESSON 24.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Some nouns in *is*, not increasing, have their accusative singular in *em* or *im*; and some, especially names of places, rivers, and gods, in *im* alone; as,

Turris, a tower, G. *turris*, Ac. *turrem* or *turrim*.
Tiběris, the Tiber, G. *Tiběris*, Ac. *Tiběrim*.

2. Greek nouns form their accusative in *im*, *in*, or *a*; as, *Paris*, *Parim*, *aër*, *aëra*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

3. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as,

Sedile, n. a seat, G. *sedilis*, Ab. *sedili*.

4. Nouns having *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as,

Turris, a tower, Ac. *turrem* or *turrim*, Ab. *turre* or *turri*.
Tiběris, the Tiber, Ac. *Tiběrim*, Ab. *Tiběri*.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

5. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *ia* in the nominative plural; as,

Sedile, n. a seat, N. pl. *sedilia*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

6. Nouns which have *i* in the ablative singular, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

Sedile, n. a seat, Ab. sing. *sedili*, G. pl. *sedilium*.

7. Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing, have *ium*; as,

Rupes, a rock, G. *rupis*, G. pl. *rupium*.

8. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*, names of nations in *as*, and monosyllables ending in two consonants, have *ium*; as,

Cliens, a client, G. *clientis*, G. pl. *clientium*.
Urbs, a city, G. *urbis*, G. pl. *urbium*.

QUESTIONS.—What nouns are excepted in the accusative singular? How do Greek nouns form their accusative? What nouns have *i* in the ablative singular? What neuters have *ia* in the nominative plural? What is the first class of nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural?—the second?—the third?

LESSON 25.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. Nouns in *us* of the fourth declension are masculine; those in *u* are neuter.

2. Nouns in *us* are declined like *fruc'-tus*, fruit: thus,

Singular.	*Term.*	*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. V. fruc'-tus,	*us*,	*N. Ac. V.* fruc'-tus,	*us*,
G. fruc'-tûs,	*ûs*,	*G.* fruc'-tu-um,	*uum*,
D. fruc'-tu-ī,	*ui*,	*D. Ab.* fruc'-tĭ-bus.	*ibus*.
Ac. fruc'-tum,	*um*,		
Ab. fruc'-tu;	*u*;		

3. *Cor'-nu*, a horn, is thus declined:—

Singular.	*Term.*	*Plural.*	*Term.*
N. D. Ac. V. Ab. cor'-nu,	*u*,	*N. Ac. V.* cor'-nu-a,	*ua*,
G. cor'-nûs;	*ûs*;	*G.* cor'-nu-um,	*uum*,
		D. Ab. cor'-nĭ-bus.	*ibus*.

QUESTIONS.—How do masculines of the fourth declension end?—neuters? Decline *fructus—cornu*. What are the terminations of the several cases of masculines in the singular?—in the plural?—of neuters in the singular?—in the plural? What is the root of *fructus*?—of *cornu*?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns:—

Can'-tus, *a song.*
Cur'-rus, *a chariot.*
Ex-er'-cĭ-tus, *an army.*
Fluc'-tus, *a wave.*
Mo'-tus, *motion.*
Se-nā'-tus, *the senate.*

Translate into Latin:—

The-fruits of-summer.
By-the-fruit of-the-tree.
By-the-motions of-the-waves.
The-honor of-the-senate.
The-chariots of-the-armies.
By-the-motion of-the-chariots.
The-songs of-the-birds.
For-the-senate of-the-nation.

Translate into English:—

Fructĭbus (*abl.*) arbŏrum.
Exercitui regis.
Cornu (*nom.*) ovis.
Delphin in fluctĭbus.
Cornua dracōnis.
Motu fluctŭs.
Cantus (*sing.*) pastōris.
Cornĭbus (*abl.*) ariĕtis.

LESSON 26.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. Feminine are these in *us*,
Tribus, acus, porticus,
The plurals, *idus* and *quinquātrus,*
With *domus, nurus, socrus, anus,*
Colus, with names of trees, and *manus.*

2. *Penus*, when of the fourth declension, is commonly feminine; *specus* is rarely feminine or neuter, and the defective *secus*, sex, is always neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

3. *Domus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second It is thus declined:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N. V.	do'-mus,	do'-mus,
G.	do'-mûs, *or* do'-mi,	dom'-u-um, *or* do-mō'-rum,
D.	dom'-u-i, *or* do'-mo,	dom'-ī-bus,
Ac.	do'-mum,	do'-mus, *or* do'-mos
Ab.	—— do'-mo;	

Remark 1.—*Domi* commonly signifies *at home*, or at a specified house.

4. The dative and the ablative
Of *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*,
Of *lacus*, *specus*, *tribus* too,
Of *pecu* and of *partus*,
In *ŭbus* must be always formed;
But *genu*, *veru*, *portus*,
Sometimes in *ĭbus* may be found,
And sometimes, too, in *ŭbus*.

REMARK 2.—Some nouns of the fourth declension have a genitive in *i*, and sometimes other forms belonging to the second declension; as, *senātŭs*, gen. *senatûs* or *senāti*.

REMARK 3.—Nouns of this declension originally belonged to the third declension, and were formed by contraction; as, N. *fructus*, G. *fructuis—ûs*, D. *fructui—u*, &c.

REMARK 4.—The contracted dative in *u* occurs in Cæsar, and occasionally in other authors; as, *equitātu* for *equitatui*.

QUESTIONS.—Of what declensions is *domus*? In what case does it follow the 2d dec. only? In what cases the 4th only? What is the signification of *domi*? What words of the 4th declension are feminine? What words are excepted in the dat. and abl. plural?

LESSON 27.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are feminine.

They are declined like *res*, a thing, and *dies*, a day:

	Singular.		*Term.*		*Plural.*		*Term.*
N. V.	re-s,	di'-es,	*es*,	*N. Ac. V.*	re-s,	di'-es,	*es*,
G. D.	re'-i,	di-ē'-i,	*ei*,	*G.*	re'-rum,	di-ē'-rum,	*ērum*,
Ac.	re-m,	di'-em,	*em*,	*D. Ab.*	re'-bus.	di-ē'-bus.	*ēbus*.
Ab.	re;	di'-e;	*e*;				

Exception.

Dies is either masculine or feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural.

REMARKS.

1. In the genitive and dative singular *e* or *i* is sometimes found instead of *ei*; and *es* also was an ancient termination of the genitive singular.

2. Of nouns of the fifth declension, only *res* and *dies* are complete

in the plural. *Acies, facies, effigies, series, species,* and *spes* are found in the nominative and accusative plural; *glacies* and *progenies* in the accusative, the other nouns of this declension have no plural.

3. Some nouns of the fifth declension have forms belonging to the first; as, *luxuries* and *luxuria.*

4. In this declension, *e* in the last syllable of the nominative, though found in all the cases, is considered as a part of the termination.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

1. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; as,

N. res-publica,	*N.* jus-jurandum,
G. rei-publicæ, &c.	*G.* juris-jurandi, &c.

2. When one part of a compound noun is a nominative and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined; as,

N. pater-familias,
G. patris-familias, &c. See L. 8.

QUESTIONS.—Of what gender are nouns of the fifth declension?—of the first? What word in the fifth declension is excepted? Decline *res—dies.* What is the root of *res?*—of *dies?* In what other declension are the genitive and dative singular alike? How do these cases end in the fifth declension?—in the first? In what declensions does the dative singular end in *i?* In what declensions does the dative plural end in *bus?*—in *is?* What is the termination of the genitive plural in each of the several declensions? With what two letters does the genitive plural always end? In which of the declensions are three cases always alike in the plural? What is the termination of the accusative plural of masculines and feminines in each declension? When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, how is it declined?—when it consists of a nominative and an oblique case?

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS.

1. Neuter nouns belong to the second, third or fourth declensions.

2. Neuters have three cases alike—the nominative, accusative and vocative, and these cases in the plural end in *a.*

3. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in *m*—in the 1st decl. in *am*, in the 2d and 4th in *um*, in the 3d and 5th in *em.*

4. The vocative singular of all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension, is like the nominative.

5. The nominative and vocative plural are always alike.

6. The genitive plural ends in *um*, viz., in *ārum*, *ōrum*, *um* (*ium*), *uum*, or *ērum.*

7. The dative and ablative plural end alike—in the 1st and 2d declensions in *is*, in the 3d and 4th in *ĭbus*, in the 5th in *ēbus.*

8. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *s*, viz., in *as*, *os*, *es*, or *us.*

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS. NO. I.

MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Terminations:—	*a.*	*us, er, ir.*	*er, or, es, os, &c.*	*us.*	*es.*
			Singular.		
N.	mu′-*sa,*	dom′-ĭ-*nus,*	ho′-*nor,*	fruc′-*tus,*	*res,*
G.	mu′-*sæ,*	dom′-ĭ-*ni,*	ho-*nō′-ris,*	fruc′-*tûs,*	*re′-i,*
D.	mu′-*sæ,*	dom′-ĭ-*no,*	ho-*nō′-ri,*	fruc′-*tu-i,*	*re′-i,*
Ac.	mu′-*sam,*	dom′-ĭ-*num,*	ho-*nō′-rem,*	fruc′-*tum,*	*rem,*
V.	mu′-*sa,*	dom′-ĭ-*ne,*	ho′-*nor,*	fruc′-*tus,*	*res,*
Ab.	mu′-*sâ;*	dom′-ĭ-*no;*	ho-*nō′-re;*	fruc′-*tu;*	*re;*
			Plural.		
N.	mu′-*sæ,*	dom′-ĭ-*ni,*	ho-*nō′-res,*	fruc′-*tus,*	*res,*
G.	mu-*sā′-rum,*	dom-ĭ-*nō′-rum,*	ho-*nō′-rum,*	fruc′-*tu-um,*	*re′-rum,*
D.	mu′-*sis,*	dom′-ĭ-*nis,*	ho-*nor′-ĭ-bus,*	fruc′-*tĭ-bus,*	*re′-bus,*
Ac.	mu′-*sas,*	dom′-ĭ-*nos,*	ho-*nō′-res,*	fruc′-*tus,*	*res,*
V.	mu′-*sæ,*	dom′-ĭ-*ni,*	ho-*nō′-res,*	fruc′-*tus,*	*res,*
Ab.	mu′-*sis.*	dom′-ĭ-*nis.*	ho-*nor′-ĭ-bus.*	fruc′-*tĭ-bus.*	*re′-bus.*

NEUTERS.

	II.	III.	IV.
Terminations:—	um.	*c, l, i, y, e, t, a, &c.*	*u.*
		Singular.	
N.	reg′-*num,*	car′-*men,*	cor′-*nu,*
G.	reg′-*ni,*	car′-*mĭ-nis,*	cor′-*nus,*
D.	reg′-*no,*	car′-*mĭ-ni,*	cor′-*nu,*
Ac.	reg′-*num,*	car′-*men,*	cor′-*nu,*
V.	reg′-*num,*	car′-*men,*	cor′-*nu,*
Ab.	reg′-*no;*	car′-*mĭ-ne;*	cor′-*nu;*
		Plural.	
N.	reg′-*na,*	car′-*mĭ-na,*	cor′-*nu-a,*
G.	reg-*nō′-rum,*	car′-*mĭ-num,*	cor′-*nu-um,*
D.	reg′-*nis,*	car-*min′-ĭ-bus,*	cor′-*nĭ-bus,*
Ac.	reg′-*na,*	car′-*mĭ-na,*	cor′-*nu-a,*
V.	reg′-*na,*	car′-*mĭ-na,*	cor′-*nu-a,*
Ab.	reg′-*nis.*	car-*min′-ĭ-bus.*	cor′-*nĭ-bus.*

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS. NO. II.

MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Terminations :—*a.*	*us, er, ir.*	*er, or, es, os, &c.*	*us.*	*es.*
	Singular.			
N. V. mu'-sa,	*N.* dom'-ĭ-*nus*,	*N. V.* ho'-nor,	*N. V.* fruc'-*tus*,	*N. V.* res,
G. D. mu'-sæ,	*G.* dom'-ĭ-*ni*,	*G.* ho-nō'-*ris*,	*G.* fruc'-*tūs*,	*G. D.* re'-*i*,
Ac. mu'-*sam*,	*D. Ab.* dom'-ĭ-*no*,	*D.* ho-nō'-*ri*,	*D.* fruc'-*tu-i*,	*Ac.* rem,
Ab. mu'-*sā*;	*Ac.* dom'-ĭ-*num*,	*Ac.* ho-nō'-*rem*,	*Ac.* fruc'-*tum*;	*Ab.* re;
	V. dom'-ĭ-*ne*;	*Ab.* ho-nō'-*re*;	*Ab.* fruc'-*tu*;	
	Plural.			
N. V. mu'-sæ,	*N. V.* dom'-ĭ-*ni*,	*N. Ac. V.* ho-nō'-*res*,	*N. Ac. V.* fruc'-*tus*,	*N. Ac. V.* res,
G. mu-sā'-*rum*,	*G.* dom-i-nō'-*rum*,	*G.* ho-nō'-*rum*,	*G.* fruc'-*tu-um*,	*G.* re'-*rum*,
D. Ab. mu'-*sis*,	*D. Ab.* dom'-ĭ-*nis*,	*D. Ab.* ho-nor'-ĭ-*bus*.	*D. Ab.* fruc'-tĭ-*bus*.	*D. Ab.* re'-*bus*.
Ac. mu'-*sas*.	*Ac.* dom'-ĭ-*nos*.			

NEUTERS.

Terminations :—*um.*	*e, l, i, y, e, t, a, &c.*	*u.*
	Singular.	
N. Ac. V. reg'-*num*,	*N. Ac. V.* car'-*men*,	*N. Ac. V.* cor'-*nu*,
G. reg'-*ni*,	*G.* car'-*mĭ-nis*,	*G.* cor'-*nus*,
D. Ab. reg'-*no*;	*D.* car'-*mĭ-ni*,	*D. Ab.* cor'-*nu*;
	Ab. car'-*mĭ-ne*;	
	Plural.	
N. Ac. V. reg'-*na*,	*N. Ac. V.* car'-*mĭ-na*,	*N. Ac. V.* cor'-*nu-a*,
G. reg-nō'-*rum*,	*G.* car'-*mĭ-num*,	*G.* cor'-*nu-um*,
D. Ab. reg'-*nis*.	*D. Ab.* car-min'-ĭ-*bus*.	*D. Ab.* cor'-*nĭ-bus*.

LESSON 28.

ADJECTIVES.

1. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun.

Thus in the phrases, a good pen, a sharp knife, a white horse, a mellow apple, a free people, rough stones; the words, *good, sharp, white*, &c., limit the meaning of the nouns, *pen, knife, horse*, &c., which, without some word to limit them, would signify, any pen, any knife, &c.

2. Latin adjectives are declined like nouns of the same terminations.

3. Some adjectives are of the first and second declensions, their feminine gender being of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter of the second.

4. Some adjectives are of the third declension in all their genders.

5. The adjective is always of the same gender, number, and case, as its noun, but it is often of a different declension.

QUESTIONS.—What is an adjective? How are Latin adjectives declined? Of what declensions are adjectives? When an adjective is of the first and second declensions, to which declension does its feminine gender belong?—its masculine?—its neuter? In what respects must an adjective agree with its noun? In what may it differ?

EXERCISE.

Name the adjectives in the following sentences:—

A good tree cannot bear evil fruit, nor a corrupt tree good fruit. The ancient Romans were temperate and brave. Ten men composed the laws of the twelve tables. Great men are not always wise. No man putteth a piece of new cloth unto an old garment.

Write ten English sentences containing adjectives.

QUESTIONS ON THE EXERCISES.—Why is *good* an adjective? Answer. Because it expresses the quality of the noun *tree*; and "An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun," &c.

LESSON 29.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

1. The masculine gender of adjectives of the first and second declensions ends in *us* or *er*, (except *satur*, full;) the feminine in *a*, and the neuter in *um*.

Adjectives in us, a, um.

2. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*, the feminine like *musa*, and the neuter like *regnum*.

Bonus, good, is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. bo'-nus,	*N. V.* bo'-na,	*N. Ac. V.* bo'-num,
G. bo'-ni,	*G. D.* bo'-næ,	*G.* bo'-ni,
D. Ab. bo'-no,	*Ac.* bo'-nam,	*D. Ab.* bo'-no;
Ac. bo'-num,	*Ab.* bo'-nā;	
V. bo'-ne;		

Plural.

N. V. bo'-ni,	*N V.* bo'-næ,	*N. Ac. V.* bo'-na,
G. bo-nō'-rum,	*G.* bo-nā'-rum,	*G.* bo-nō'-rum,
D. Ab. bo'-nis,	*D. Ab.* bo'-nis,	*D. Ab.* bo'-nis.
Ac. bo'-nos.	*Ac.* bo'-nas.	

NOTE 1.—All participles in *us*, and superlatives are declined like *bonus*; as, *amātus*, loved; *altissimus*, highest.

NOTE 2.—*Meus* has *mi* in the vocative singular masculine; as, *mi amice*, my friend.—*Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus* are possessive adjective pronouns.

QUESTIONS.—How does the masculine gender of adjectives of the first and second declensions end?—the feminine?—the neuter? How are adjectives in *us*, *a*, and *um* declined? Decline the masculine of *bonus*—the feminine—the neuter. What classes of words are declined like *bonus*? What is the vocative singular masculine of *meus*?

EXERCISE.

Decline like *bonus* the following adjectives:—

Al'-tus, *high.*	Lon'-gus, *long.*
A-vā'-rus, *covetous.*	Ple'-nus, *full.*
Be-nig'-nus, *kind.*	Me'-us, *my.*
Fi'-dus, *faithful.*	Tu'-us, *thy.*
In-ī'-quus, *unjust.*	Su'-us, *his, hers, its, their.*

Write out and repeat the declension of the following nouns with their respective adjectives, putting each in the same case:—

Bonus amīcus, m., *a good friend.*
Bona mensa, f., *a good table.*
Bonum exemplum, n., *a good example.*

Thus, *N.* bo'-nus a-mī'-cus,
G. bo'-ni a-mī'-ci,
D. Ab. bo'-no a-mī'-co, &c.

LESSON 30.

Adjectives in er, a, um.

1. The feminine and neuter of adjectives in *us* and *er* are formed by adding *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine.

2. The masculine gender of a few adjectives in *er* is declined without syncopation, like *gener.*

In this manner is declined *tener*, tender:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V. te'-ner,	*N. V.* ten'-ĕ-ra,	*N. Ac. V.* ten'-ĕ-rum,
G. ten'-ĕ-ri,	*G. D.* ten'-ĕ-ræ,	*G.* ten'-ĕ-ri,
D. Ab. ten'-ĕ-ro,	*Ac.* ten'-ĕ-ram,	*D. Ab.* ten'-ĕ-ro;
Ac. ten'-ĕ-rum;	*Ab.* ten'-ĕ-râ;	

Plural.

N. V. ten'-ĕ-ri,	*N. V.* ten'-ĕ-ræ,	*N. Ac. V.* ten'-ĕ-ra,
G. ten-e-rō'-rum,	*G.* ten-e-rā'-rum,	*G.* ten-e-rō'-rum
D. Ab. ten'-ĕ-ris,	*D. Ab.* ten'-ĕ-ris,	*D. Ab.* ten'-ĕ-ris.
Ac. ten'-ĕ-ros.	*Ac.* ten'-ĕ-ras.	

QUESTIONS.—How are the feminine and neuter of adjectives in *us* and *er* formed? What is the root of *tener?* Like what noun is *tener* declined in the masculine gender?—in the feminine?—in the neuter?

EXERCISE.

Form the feminine and neuter of the following adjectives, declined like *tener*:—

As'-per, *rough.* Li'-ber, *free.* Sa'-tur, *full.*
La'-cer, *torn.* Mi'-ser, *miserable.*

Write out the declension of *as'-per* in the masculine—of *lĭ'-ber* in the feminine—of *sa'-tur* in the neuter.

Write out the declension of *tener puer*, a tender boy—of *tenĕra puella*, a tender girl—of *tenĕrum virgultum*, a tender shrub, making the adjective and its noun to agree in gender, number, and case.

LESSON 31.

Syncopated Adjectives in er.

Most adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension, like *ager*. They are declined like *piger*, slothful: thus,

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V. pi'-ger,	*N. V.* pi'-gra,	*N. Ac. V.* pi'-grum,
G. pi'-gri,	*G. D.* pi'-græ,	*G.* pi'-gri,
D. Ab. pi'-gro,	*Ac.* pi'-gram,	*D. Ab.* pi'-gro;
Ac. pi'-grum;	*Ab.* pi'-grâ;	

Plural.

N. V. pi'-gri,	*N. V.* pi'-græ,	*N. Ac. V.* pi'-gra,
G. pi-grō'-rum,	*G.* pi-grā'-rum,	*G.* pi-grō'-rum,
D. Ab. pi'-gris,	*D. Ab.* pi'-gris,	*D. Ab.* pi'-gris.
Ac. pi'-gros.	*Ac.* pi'-gras.	

EXERCISE.

Form the feminine and neuter of the following adjectives, declined like *piger*:—

Æ'-ger, *sick.*	Ni'-ger, *black.*	Sa'-cer, *sacred.*
Cre'-ber, *frequent.*	Pul'-cher, *beautiful.*	Nos'-ter,* *our.*
In'-tĕ-ger, *entire.*	Ru'-ber, *red.*	Ves'-ter,* *your.*

Write out the declension of *creber* in the masculine gender—of *pulcher* in the feminine—of *noster* in the neuter.

Write out the declension of *noster ager*, our field—of *sacra insŭla*, a sacred island—of *vestrum donum*, your gift.

Write out the declension of *niger corvus*, a black raven, where

* This is a possessive adjective pronoun?

the adjective, though of the same declension as its noun, has a different form in its nominative and vocative singular: thus,

N. ni′-ger cor′-vus,
G. ni′-gri cor′-vi,
D. Ab. ni′-gro cor′-vo, &c.

Write out the declension of *bonus pater*, a good father—*bonus* being of the second declension and *pater* of the third: thus,

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. bo′-nus pa′-ter,	*N. V.* bo′-ni pa′-tres,
G. bo′-ni pa′-tris,	*G.* bo-nō′-rum pa′-trum,
D. bo′-no pa′-tri, &c.	*D. Ab.* bo′-nis pat′-rī-bus, &c.

Write out the declension of *alta populus*, a tall poplar—*populus* being a feminine noun of the second declension, by the second general rule of gender. Less. 5.

Write out the declension of *mons sacer*, a sacred mountain: thus,

N. V. mons sacer. *G.* montis sacri, &c.

NOTE.—The adjective is often placed thus after its noun.

LESSON 32.

Adjectives in us *and* er, *genitive* ius.

1. Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* have their genitive singular in *ius*, and dative in *i*, in all genders. In their other cases they are declined like *bonus*, *tener*, or *piger*.

Those in *us* are:—

A′-li-us, *another.*	To′-tus, *whole.*	Ul′-lus, *any one.*
So′-lus, *alone.*	U′-nus, *one.*	Nul′-lus, *no one.*

2. *Unus* is thus declined in the singular number:—

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. u′-nus,	*N. V.* u′-na,	*N. Ac. V.* u′-num,
G. u-nī′-us,	*G.* u-nī′-us,	*G.* u-nī′-us,
D. u′-ni,	*D.* u′-ni,	*D.* u′-ni,
Ac. u′-num,	*Ac.* u′-nam,	*Ab.* u′-no.
V u′-ne,	*Ab.* u′-nâ.	
Ab. u′-no.		

3. REMARK.—*Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter, and *a-lī'-us* in the genitive.

NOTE.—In the genitives in *ius*, *i* is sometimes short in poetry, except in *alius*. L. 3, and L. 2.

4. The adjectives in *er*, which have *ius* in the genitive and *i* in the dative, are:—

Al'-ter, *the other*; u'-ter, *which (of the two)*; and neu'-ter, *neither (of the two)*; with their compounds.

5. ***Al'-ter*** is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V. al'-ter,	*N. V.* al'-tĕ-ra,	*N. Ac. V.* al'-tĕ-rum,
G. al-te'-rī-us,	*G.* al-te'-rī-us,	*G.* al-te'-rī-us,
D. al'-tĕ-rī, &c.	*D.* al'-tĕ-rī, &c.	*D.* al'-tĕ-rī, &c.

In the other parts it is declined like *tener*.

6. ***Uter*** and ***neuter*** are thus declined:—

Singular.

N. V. u'-ter,	*N. V.* u'-tra,	*N. Ac. V.* u'-trum,
G. u-trī'-us,	*G.* u-trī'-us,	*G.* u-trī'-us,
D. u'-trī, &c.	*D.* u'-trī, &c.	*D.* u'-trī, &c.

In the other parts they are declined like *piger*.

7. ***Uterque***, both or each, is declined like ***uter***, but has ***que*** annexed to all its parts; as,

N. V. u-ter'-que, u'-trā-que, u-trum'-que; *G.* u-tri-us'-que, &c.

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of *alter homo*, the other man—of *u'-trā-que manus*, each hand; *manus* being a feminine noun of the fourth declension. Less. 26.

LESSON 33.

Duo *and* ambo.

Duo, two, and ***ambo***, both, are declined irregularly: thus,

Plural.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V. du'-o,	*N. V.* du'-æ.	*N. Ac. V.* du'-o,
G. du-ō'-rum,	*G.* du-ā'-rum,	*G.* du-ō'-rum,
D. Ab. du-ō'-bus,	*D. Ab.* du-ā'-bus,	*D. Ab.* du-ō'-bus.
Ac. du'-os, *or* du'-o.	*Ac.* du'-as.	

QUESTION.—What nouns of the 1st declension are declined in the plural like the feminine of *duo* and *ambo*?

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of—

duo leōnes, two lions. (Less. 13.)
duæ filiæ, two daughters. (Less. 8, Rem. 1.)
duo corpŏra, two bodies. (Less. 18.)
ambæ voces, both voices. (Less. 17.)
duæ res, two things. (Less. 27.)

Translate into Latin—

For-two boys.	By-two soldiers.	To-one daughter.
Of-both hands.	In two houses.	To-a-beautiful girl.

Translate into English—

O pulchræ deæ!	In uno modo.	O sacri montes!
In rubrâ manu.	A vestrâ domo.	Mi fili.

LESSON 34.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular,—one for each gender; some, two,—one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter; and some, only one for all genders.

2. Those of three terminations have *er* in the masculine, *is* in the feminine, and *e* in the neuter. Of this kind are—

A'-cer, *sharp.*	E-ques'-ter, *equestrian.*
Al'-ă-cer, *brisk.*	Sa-lū'-ber, *wholesome.*
Cel'-ĕ-ber, *famous.*	Vol'-ū-cer, *winged.*

Acer is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V. a′-cer,	*N. V.* a′-cris,	*N. Ac. V.* a′-cre,
G. a′-cris,	*G.* a′-cris,	*G.* a′-cris,
D. Ab. a′-cri,	*D. Ab.* a′-cri,	*D. Ab.* a′-cri;
Ac. a′-crem;	*Ac.* a′-crem;	

Plural.

Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*
N. Ac. V. a′-cres,	*N. Ac. V.* a′-cri-a,
G. a′-cri-um,	*G.* a′-cri-um,
D. Ab. ac′-ri-bus.	*D. Ab.* ac′-ri-bus.

QUESTIONS.—How many terminations in the nominative singular have adjectives of the third declension? What is the termination of the masculine in adjectives of three terminations?—of the feminine?—of the neuter? Decline *acer* in the masculine—in the feminine—in the neuter. What is the root of *acer*? How is the nominative masculine formed from the root?—the nominative feminine?—the nominative neuter? Write the root of *alăcer*, *celĕber*, *equester*, *salŭber*, and *volŭcer*.

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of—

volŭcer equus, a winged horse.
equestris statua, an equestrian statue.
celĕbre nomen, a famous name. See Less. 18.

Translate into English—

Celĕbri homini. *Volŭcres dracōnes.* *Nigros leōnes.*
Alăcris milĭtis. *O volŭcer puer!* *Nostrārum curārum.*

NOTE.—For the pronunciation of doubtful penults, see L. 2, and L. 3.

LESSON 35.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Adjectives of two terminations have *is* in the masculine and feminine, and *e* in the neuter; except comparatives, which have *or* and *us*.

The following are examples of adjectives of two terminations:

Bre′-vis, *short.*	For′-tis, *brave.*	Mi-rab′-ĭ-lis, *wonderful.*
Cru-dā′-lis, *cruel.*	Gra′-vis, *heavy.*	Mī′-tis, *mild.*
Dul′-cis, *sweet.*	In-col′-ū-mis, *safe.*	Om′-nis, *all.*

Mitis **is thus declined :—**

Singular.

N. V.	mi′-tis,	*N. Ac. V.*	mi′-te,
G.	mi′-tis,	*G.*	mi′-tis,
D. Ab.	mi′-ti,	*D. Ab.*	mi′-ti;
Ac.	mi′-tem;		

Plural.

N. Ac. V.	mi′-tes,	*N. Ac. V.*	mit′-i-a,[b]
G.	mit′-i-um,[a]	*G.*	mit′-i-um,
D. Ab.	mit′-i-bus.	*D. Ab.*	mit′-i-bus.

(a) Pronounced *mish′-e-um*; (b) *mish′-e-ah.*

NOTE.—*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*. N. *tres*, *tria*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is the termination of the masculine and feminine in adjectives of two terminations?—of the neuter? Decline *mitis* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. How is *tres* declined? What is its root?

EXERCISE.

Write the declension of—

brevis via, a short way. *breve tempus*, a short time.
vir fortis, a brave man. *tres dies*, three days.

Translate into Latin—

Of-brave soldiers. Of-sweet fruit. In all the-temples.
By-cruel wars. For-all the-fingers. To-cruel lions.

Translate into English—

In brevi tempŏre. O mi domine! Ab altis nubĭbus.
O crudēles homĭnes! Graves curæ. Cum benignâ matre.

LESSON 36.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

1. Adjectives of the comparative degree have *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter.

The following are comparatives:—

Al′-ti-or, *higher*. Fe-lic′-i-or, *happier*. Gra′-vi-or, *heavier*.
Bre′-vi-or, *shorter*. For′-ti-or, *braver*. Mit′-i-or, *milder*.

2. *Mītior* is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*
N. V. mit'i-or,*	*N. Ac. V.* mit'-i-us,*
G. mit-i-ō'-ris,	*G.* mit-i-ō'-ris,
D. mit-i-ō'-ri,	*D.* mit-i-ō'-ri,
Ac. mit-i-ō'-rem,	*Ab.* mit-i-ō'-re, *or* mit-i-ō'-ri;
Ab. mit-i-ō'-re, *or* mit-i-ō'-ri;	

Plural.

N. Ac. V. mit-i-ō'-res,	*N. Ac. V.* mit-i-ō'-ra,
G. mit-i-ō'-rum,	*G.* mit-i-ō'-rum,
D. Ab. mit-i-or'-i-bus.	*D. Ab.* mit-i-or'-i-bus.

* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, &c.

3. *Plus*, more, is thus declined:—

Singular.	*Plural.*	
Neut.	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Ac. plus,	*N. Ac.* plu'-res,	*N. Ac.* plu'-ra,
G. plu'-ris.	*G.* plu'-ri-um,	*G.* plu'-ri-um,
The rest wanting.	*D. Ab.* plu'-ri-bus.	*D. Ab.* plu'-ri-bus.

Questions.—What is the termination of the masculine and feminine of comparatives?—of the neuter? Decline *mītior* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. What is its root? How is the neuter nominative formed from the root? (See Less. 22, R. 1, and R. 4.) Decline *plus* in the singular. What genders of *plus* are wanting in the singular? Decline it in the plural. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from the root? (See Less. 22.)

EXERCISE.

Write the declension of—

altior mons, a higher mountain, *fortior vir*, a braver man, *brevius tempus*, a shorter time.

Translate into Latin—

Of-a-higher tree.	From a-milder man.
In a-higher mountain.	By-a-heavier stone.
In a-shorter day.	Of-happier times.

Translate into English—

In mitiorĭbus æstatĭbus.	Plurium donōrum.
Cum plurĭbus hominĭbus.	Ab altiōre stellâ.
In breviōre tempus.	Pluris pretii.[a]
O viri fortiōres!	Curæ graviōres.

(a) pretium, ii, n., *price, value.*

LESSON 37.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

1. Adjectives of one termination increase in the genitive. Their ablative singular ends in *e* or *i*; their genitive plural in *ium*; and their nominative plural neuter in *ia*.

2. ***Felix***, happy, is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*
N. V. fe'-lix,	*N. Ac. V.* fe'-lix,
G. fe-lī'-cis,	*G.* fe-lī'-cis,
D. fe-lī'-ci,	*D.* fe-lī'-ci,
Ac. fe-lī'-cem,	*Ab.* fe-lī'-ce, *or* ci;
Ab. fe-lī'-ce, *or* ci;	

Plural.

N. Ac. V. fe-lī'-ces,	*N. Ac. V.* fe-lic'-i-a,
G. fe-lic'-i-um,	*G.* fe-lic'-i-um,
D. Ab. fe-lic'-i-bus.	*D. Ab.* fe-lic'-i-bus.

3. ***Præsens***, present, is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*
N. V. præ'-sens,	*N. Ac. V.* præ'-sens,
G. præ-sen'-tis,	*G.* præ-sen'-tis,
D. præ-sen'-ti,	*D.* præ-sen'-ti,
Ac. præ-sen'-tem,	*Ab.* præ-sen'-te *or* ti;
Ab. præ-sen'-te, *or* ti;	

Plural.

N. Ac. V. præ-sen'-tes,	*N. Ac. V.* præ-sen'-ti-a,
G. præ-sen'-ti-um,	*G.* præ-sen'-ti-um,
D. Ab. præ-sen'-ti-bus.	*D. Ab.* præ-sen'-ti-bus.

NOTE.—All present participles are declined like *præsens*.

The following are examples of adjectives of one termination:—

Au'-dax, ācis, *bold.*
Fe'-rox, ōcis, *fierce.*
In'-gens, tis, *huge.*
Pru'-dens, tis, *prudent.*
Par'-tī-ceps, ĭpis, *participant.*
So'-lers, tis, *shrewd.*

EXCEPTION.—Some adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the abl. sing., a few have only *i*. These, with a few other adjectives of one termination, have also *um* in the gen. plur.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the genitive of adjectives of one termination?—of their ablative singular?—their genitive plural?—their nominative plural? Decline *felix* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from it? Decline *præsens*. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from it? How are present participles declined? How are participles in *us* declined? (See Less. 29.)

EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of:—

ingens saxum, a huge rock. *vir prudens*, a prudent man.

Write the roots of *felix*, *præsens*, *audax*, *ferox*, *particeps* and *solers*.

LESSON 38.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. Numeral adjectives are those which denote number. They are either *cardinal*, *ordinal*, or *distributive*.

2. Cardinal numbers denote how many objects are intended.

3. Ordinal numbers denote order or rank.

4. Distributive numbers denote the number of objects taken together.

	Cardinal.	*Ordinal.*	*Distributive.*
5.	Unus, *one.*	Primus, *first.*	Singŭli, *one by one.*
	Duo, *two.*	Secundus, *second.*	Bini, *two by two*, &c.
	Tres, *three.*	Tertius, *third.*	Terni, *or* trini.
	Quatuor, *four.*	Quartus, *fourth.*	Quaterni.
	Quinque, *five.*	Quintus, *fifth.*	Quini.
	Sex, *six.*	Sextus, *sixth.*	Seni.
	Septem, *seven.*	Septĭmus, *seventh.*	Septēni.
	Octo, *eight.*	Octāvus, *eighth.*	Octōni.
	Novem, *nine.*	Nonus, *ninth.*	Novēni.
	Decem, *ten.*	Decĭmus, *tenth.*	Deni.

6. The cardinal numbers from four to a hundred, inclusive, are indeclinable. Those denoting hundreds, and all the distributives, are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

7. The ordinal numbers are declined like *bonus*.

8. *Mille*, a thousand, when used as an adjective, is indeclinable. As a noun it is neuter, and is declined in the plural only, like the plural of *sedile*. (L. 20.)

QUESTIONS.—What are numeral adjectives? Name their classes. What are cardinal numbers?—ordinal?—distributive? What cardinal numbers are indeclinable? How are those denoting hundreds declined? How are ordinal numbers declined?—distributives? When is *mille* declined? When is it indeclinable?

EXERCISE.

Decline *quinque dies*, five days.
secundum bellum, the second war.
decimus rex, the tenth king.

LESSON 39.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The comparison of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

2. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

3. The positive simply denotes a quality; as, *altus*, high.

4. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher.

5. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest.

6. The comparative and superlative are formed by adding *ior* and *issimus* to the root of the positive: thus,

Positive.	*Root.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Altus,	alt-	alt*ior*,	alt*issĭmus*.
Felix,	felic-	felic*ior*,	felic*issĭmus*.

NOTE 1.—The comparative and superlative are expressed in English by the terminations *er* and *est*, or by the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, high*er*, high*est*; *more* merciful, *most* merciful.

NOTE 2.—*Very*, *extremely*, and the like, are commonly expressed in Latin by the superlative; as, a very dear friend, *amicus carissĭmus*.

NOTE 3.—Comparatives are declined like *mitior*, (Less. 36) and superlatives like *bonus*, (Less. 29.)

QUESTIONS.—What is meant by the comparison of an adjective? How many and what are the degrees of comparison? What does the positive denote?—the comparative?—the superlative? How are the comparative and superlative formed? Compare *altus—felix*. How are the comparative and superlative expressed in English? How are *very, extremely*, and the like expressed in Latin? How are comparatives declined?—superlatives?

EXERCISE.

Write out the degrees of comparison of the following adjectives:—

Arc'-tus, *strait.* Ca'-rus, *dear.* Cle'-mens, (tis,) *merciful.*
Ca'-pax, *capacious.* Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel.* In'-ers, (tis,) *sluggish.*

Translate into Latin, in the nominative singular,—

The-highest tree. A-more-capacious house.
The-happiest man. A-more-merciful man.
The-most-cruel lion. A-dearer friend.

Translate into English—

Altissĭma rupes. Felicius regnum. Clementissĭmus rex.
Altior nubes. Crudelissĭmum numen. Inertior homo.

LESSON 40.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

1. Adjectives in *er* add *rĭmus* to the nominative singular masculine to form the superlative; their comparative is regular.

In this manner are compared *acer*, sharp, *asper*, rough, and *celĕber*, famous; thus:—

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Root.*	*Comp.*	*Sup.*
acer,	acris,	acr-	acr*ior*,	acerr*rĭmus*.
asper,	aspĕri,	asper-	asper*ior*,	asperr*rĭmus*.
celĕber,	celebris,	celebr-	celebr*ior*,	celeberr*rĭmus*.

2. Some adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *limus* to the root; as, facil*is*, easy, facil*ior*, facil*limus*.

3. The following adjectives are very irregular in their comparison:—

Bonus,	melior,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minĭmus,	*small,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	plus, (*neut.*)	plurĭmus,	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus, *or* ĭmus,	*low,*	*lower,*	*lowest.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus,	*high,*	*higher,*	*highest.*

QUESTIONS.—How are adjectives in *er* compared?—some adjectives in *lis*? Compare *acer—asper—celĕber—facĭlis—bonus*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Write the comparison of *difficĭlis*, difficult; *humĭlis*, humble; *simĭlis*, like; and *dissimĭlis*, unlike; which are compared like *facĭlis*.

Translate into Latin—

For-the-best men.	For-greater birds.
In the-worst manner.	Of-a-difficult way.
In a-very-celebrated city.	By-a-very-sharp sword.

Translate into English—

Plurĭmi homĭnes.	Jovi maxĭmo.	Lex suprēma.
Pejōrem fructum.	Majōre vi.	Dii majōres.
Majōres corvos.	Celeberrĭma poēmăta.	Vir melior.
Iter difficilius.	Minĭma pars.	Acri dolōre.

LESSON 41.

PRONOUNS.

1. A pronoun is a word which indicates a person or thing as previously named or known.

2. Pronouns are of two kinds—*substantive* and *adjective*.

3. The substantive pronouns are, *ego*, I; *tu*, thou; and *sui*, of himself, of herself, or of itself.

4. *Ego* and *tu* are either masculine or feminine, *sui* either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

They are thus declined:—

Singular.

N. ĕ'-go, *I*,	*N.* tu, *thou*,	*N.* —— ——
G. mei'-i, *mine* or *of me*,	*G.* tui'-i, *thine* or *of thee*,	*G.* sui'-i, *of himself*, &c.
D. mi'-hi, *to* or *for me*,	*D.* tibi'-i, *to* or *for thee*,	*D.* sibi'-i, *to* or *for himself*,
Ac. me, *me*,	*Ac.* te, *thee*,	*Ac.* se, *himself*,
V. —— ——	*V.* tu, *O thou*,	*V.* —— ——
Ab. me, *with, from*, or *by me*;	*Ab.* te, *with thee*, &c.	*Ab.* se, *with himself*, &c.

Plural.

N. nos, *we*,	*N.* vos, *ye* or *you*,	*N.* —— ——
G. { nos'-trûm, *ours* or *or* nos'-tri, *of us*,	*G.* { ves'-trûm, *yours* or *or* ves'-tri, *of you*,	*G.* sui'-i, *of themselves*,
D. nobis, *to* or *for us*,	*D.* vobis, *to* or *for you*,	*D.* sibi'-i, *to* or *for themselves*,
Ac. nos, *us*,	*Ac.* vos, *you*,	*Ac.* se, *themselves*,
V. —— ——	*V.* vos, *O ye* or *you*,	*V.* —— ——
Ab. nobis, *with us*, &c.	*Ab.* vobis, *with you*, &c.	*Ab.* se, *with themselves*.

QUESTIONS.—What is a pronoun? Of how many kinds are pronouns? Which are substantive-pronouns? Of what gender are they? Decline *ego*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Translate into Latin—

For-me alone.	To-thee.	With-you.	For-themselves.
Of-themselves.	For-me.	From us.	Ours.

Translate into English—

Nobis, (*dat.*)	Vestrûm.	O felix tu!	Sui, (*sing. f.*)
Sibi, (*plur.*)	Mei solius.	O vos!	Te, (*acc.*)

LESSON 42.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. (*a*) The adjective pronouns which most frequently occur, are,

Hic, *this, the latter*.	Qui, *who, which, that*.
Ille, *that, the former*.	Quis? *who? which? what?*
Is, *that*, especially as the antecedent of *qui*.	Meus, *my*.
	Tuus, *thy* or *your*.
Iste, *that*, especially *that of yours*.	Suus, *his, her, its, their*.
Ipse, *self*, or *myself, thyself*, &c.	Noster, *our*.
Idem, *the same*.	Vester, *your*.

NOTE 1.—These pronouns, except *meus* and *noster*, want the vocative.

(*b*) *Ille, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, are demonstratives; *ipse*, an intensive; *qui*, a relative; *quis*, an interroga-

tive; and *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, possessives.

2. *Hic*, *ille*, *is*, and *iste*, when referring to a noun understood, are often translated 'he, she, or it,' (plur. 'they'); and they are then parsed like substantive pronouns.

NOTE 2.—*Ille* sometimes denotes that an object is well known; and *iste*, that it is regarded with contempt.

Hic.

3. *Hic* is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. hic,	*N.* hæc,	*N. Ac.* hoc,
G. hu'-jus,	*G.* hu'-jus,	*G.* hu'-jus,
D. huic,*	*D.* huic,*	*D.* huic,*
Ac. hunc,	*Ac.* hanc,	*Ab.* hoc;
Ab. hoc;	*Ab.* hac;	

Plural.

N. hi,	*N.* hæ,	*N. Ac.* hæc,
G. ho'-rum,	*G.* ha'-rum,	*G.* ho'-rum,
D. Ab. his,	*D. Ab.* his,	*D. Ab.* his.
Ac. hos.	*Ac.* has.	

* Pronounced *hike*.

QUESTIONS.—Name the adjective-pronouns which most commonly occur. Which of these pronouns want the vocative? Name the demonstrative pronouns—the intensive—the relative—the interrogative—the possessive. What does *hic* signify?—*ille*, &c.? How are *hic*, *ille*, *is*, and *iste* translated when they refer to a noun understood? What do *ille* and *iste* sometimes denote? Decline *hic* in the masculine—in the feminine—in the neuter.

EXERCISE.

Write out and repeat the declension of—

hic homo, this man.
hæc res, this thing.
hoc regnum, this kingdom.
hic bonus vir, this good man.
hæc celeberrima urbs, this very celebrated city.

Translate—

Hæc duo sedilia.	In hac ætāte.
Hoc magnum crimen.	In his agris.
Hi maximi viri.	Hujus capĭtis.
Hæ felices sorōres.[a]	Huic prudenti homĭni.
Hic unus puer.	Ab his montĭbus.

(*a*) soror, ōris, *a sister*.

LESSON 43.

Ille, iste, *and* ipse.

Ille and *iste* are thus declined :—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. il′-le,	*N.* il′-la,	*N. Ac.* il′-lud,
G. il-lī′-us,	*G.* il-lī′-us,	*G.* il-lī′-us,
D. il′-li,	*D.* il′-li,	*D.* il′-li,
Ac. il′-lum,	*Ac.* il′-lam,	*Ab.* il′-lo;
Ab. il′-lo;	*Ab.* il′-lâ;	

Plural.

N. il′-li,	*N.* il′-læ,	*N. Ac.* il′-la,
G. il-lō′-rum,	*G.* il-lā′-rum,	*G.* il-lō′-rum,
D. Ab. il′-lis,	*D. Ab.* il′-lis,	*D. Ab.* il′-lis.
Ac. il′-los.	*Ac.* il′-las.	

2. *Ipse* is declined like *ille*, except that in the nom. and acc. singular it has *ipsum* in the neuter.

QUESTIONS.—How is *ille* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? What pronoun is declined like *ille*? How does the declension of *ipse* differ from that of *ille*?

EXERCISE.

Decline *ipse* in the neuter gender. Decline *illud regnum*, that kingdom. Decline *iste sermo*, that speech.

Write out and repeat the declension of *ego ipse*, I myself—of *tu ipsa*, thou thyself—of *ille ipse*, he himself.

Translate—

For-myself.[a]	Of-themselves.[b]	For-the-soldier himself.
Of-yourself.[a]	To-herself.[b]	In the-cave itself.

a Make use of the personal pronoun with *ipse*. *b* Make use of *sui* alone.

Tibi ipsi.	Istius crimĭnis.	In his regnis.
Nobis ipsis. (*dat.*)	Illi magistro.	Illas puellas.

Illi præsenti deo.
In illis magnis urbĭbus.
Iste tuus furor.
A Jove optĭmo.
In illis amœnis[a] locis.
Ab illis decem viris.
O viri fortissĭmi!
O felĭces parentes!
Ab istis tuis comitĭbus.
In illis altis montĭbus.
In ipsa celeberrĭma urbe.
Ille magnus Alexander.

(*a*) amœnus, a, um, *pleasant.*

LESSON 44.

Is *and* idem.

1. ***Is*** **is thus declined :—**

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. is,	*N.* e'-a,	*N. Ac.* id,
G. e'-jus,	*G.* e'-jus,	*G.* e'-jus,
D. e'-i,	*D.* e'-i,	*D.* e'-i,
Ac. e'-um,	*Ac.* e'-am,	*Ab.* e'-o;
Ab. e'-o;	*Ab.* e'-ā;	

Plural.

N. i'-i,	*N.* e'-æ,	*N. Ac.* e'-a,
G. e-ō'-rum,	*G.* e-ā'-rum,	*G.* e-ō'-rum,
D. Ab. i'-is, *or* e'-is,	*D. Ab.* i'-is, *or* e'-is,	*D. Ab.* i'-is, *or* e'-is.
Ac. e'-os.	*Ac.* e'-as.	

2. ***Idem***, **a compound of *is* and *dem*, is thus declined :**

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. i'-dem,	*N.* e'-ă-dem,	*N. Ac.* i'-dem,
G. e-jus'-dem,	*G.* e-jus'-dem,	*G.* e-jus'-dem,
D. e-ī'-dem,	*D.* e-ī'-dem,	*D.* e-ī'-dem,
Ac. e-un'-dem,	*Ac.* e-an'-dem,	*Ab.* e-ō'-dem ;
Ab. e-ō'-dem ;	*Ab.* e-ā'-dem ;	

Plural.

N. i-ī'-dem,	*N.* e-æ'-dem,	*N. Ac.* e'-ă-dem,
G. e-o-run'-dem,	*G.* e-a-run'-dem,	*G.* e-o-run'-dem,
D. Ab. e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem,	*D. Ab.* e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem,	*D. Ab.* e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem.
Ac. e-os'-dem.	*Ac.* e-as'-dem.	

NOTE.—In compound pronouns *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem*, *eorundem*, *quendam*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—How is *is* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? How is *idem* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? In compound pronouns, what change of letters occurs before *d*?

EXERCISE.

Write out and repeat the declension of *ea vox*, that voice—of *idem homo*, the same man—of *eadem res*, the same thing.

Translate—

Of-the-same summer.	For-the-same things.	Of-that (*is*) way.
In the-same house.	By-that (*is*) sword.	To-this bird.

In iisdem carminibus. Cum eŏdem comite.
In eâ ætāte. Ab iisdem regnis.
In eis sermonĭbus. Ejusdem domini.

LESSON 45.

Qui *and* quis.

1. The relative *qui* is thus declined:—

Singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. qui,	*N.* quæ,	*N. Ac.* quod,
G. cu'-jus,	*G.* cu'-jus,	*G.* cu'-jus,
D. cui,[a]	*D.* cui,[a]	*D.* cui,[a]
Ac. quem,	*Ac.* quam,	*Ab.* quo;
Ab. quo;	*Ab.* quâ;	

Plural.

N. qui,	*N.* quæ,	*N. Ac.* quæ,
G. quo'-rum,	*G.* qua'-rum,	*G.* quo'-rum,
D. Ab. qui'-bus,	*D. Ab.* qui'-bus,	*D. Ab.* qui'-bus.
Ac. quos.	*Ac.* quas.	

a Pronounced *ki*.

2. The interrogative *quis* is declined like the relative, except that in the singular number it has two forms in the nominative masculine, and two in the nominative and accusative neuter: thus,

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. quis *or* qui,	*N.* quæ,	*N. Ac.* quid *or* quod,
G. cu'-jus, &c.	*G.* cu'-jus, &c.	*G.* cu'-jus, &c.

3. *Quis* and *quid* are commonly used as nouns, *qui* and *quod* as adjectives.

4. The compounds of the interrogative *quis* or *qui* are declined in the same manner, except that *alĭquis*, some one, *siquis*, if any, *nequis*, lest any, and *numquis*, have *qua* where *quis* has *quæ:* thus,

N. { al'-ĭ-quis, *or* al'-ĭ-qui,	*N.* al'-ĭ-qua,	*N. Ac.* { al'-ĭ-quid, *or* al'-ĭ-quod,	
G. al-i-cū'-jus.	*G.* al-i-cū'-jus.	*G.*	al-i-cū'-jus, &c.

NOTE 1.—The compounds *quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, have sometimes in the nominative and accusative neuter, *quicque*, *quicquam*, and *quippiam*.

NOTE 2.—*Unusquisque* is declined like *unus* and *quisque* when separate:—Gen. *uniuscujusque*, Dat. *unicuique*, &c.

REMARK 1.—The declension of the possessive adjective pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, has been given under adjectives. See Lessons 29 and 31.

2. *Sui* and *suus* are often called *reflexives*, because they refer to the subject of the sentence. The other substantive and possessive pronouns are also used as reflexives, when the subject of the sentence is of the first or second person.

3. The genitive singular of the adjective pronouns, except the possessives, ends in *ius*, or, after a vowel, in *jus*, and the dative singular in *i*, in all genders; as, gen. *illius*, *istius*, *ipsius*, *hujus*, *ejus*, *cujus*; dat. *illi*, *isti*, *ipsi*, *ei*, *cui*; but *hic* makes *huic* in the dative.

QUESTIONS.—How is the masculine of *qui* declined?—the feminine?—the neuter? How is the interrogative *quis* declined? What is the distinction in the use of *quis* and *qui*? How are the compounds of *quis* or *qui* declined? What exception is made in respect to *aliquis*, *siquis*, *nequis*, and *numquis*?—in respect to *quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*? How is *unusquisque* declined? What are *sui* and *suus* often called? Why are they called reflexives? What other pronouns are sometimes used as reflexives? How does the genitive singular of all the adjective pronouns end?—the dative singular? What word is excepted in the dative?

EXERCISE.

Write the declension of *qui homo?* what man?—*quæ res?* what thing?—of *unusquisque* in the neuter singular—of *quisque* in the masculine in both numbers—of *siquis* in the feminine singular.

Translate—

Quem virum?	Cui deæ?	Alĭcui.	Quo digĭto?
Quis?	Siqua domus.		Quibus ventis?

LESSON 46.

VERBS.

1. A verb is a word which expresses the being, state, action, or passion of some subject; as,

Est Deus, There *is* a God. *Aqua calet*, The water *is warm*. *Puer legit*, The boy *reads*. *Tu monēris*, Thou *art advised*.

NOTE 1.—*Passion* in Grammar denotes the *receiving* of an action.

2. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

3. An active verb is one which requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, Alexander *conquered* (conquered whom?) Darius.

NOTE 2.—The *object* of a verb is that on which the action is exerted; as, Romulus founded *Rome*.

4. A neuter verb is one which with its subject makes complete sense; as, Time *flies*.

5. Active verbs have two voices, the *active* and the *passive*.

6. Neuter verbs have only the active voice.

NOTE 3.—Neuter verbs are sometimes used *impersonally* in the passive voice. L. 81.

7. A deponent verb is one which has an active or a neuter sense with a passive form.

8. The active voice is that in which the *agent* of the verb is its subject; as, The Romans *destroyed* Carthage.

9. The passive voice is that in which the *object* of the verb is its subject; as, Carthage *was destroyed* by the Romans.

In each of these sentences the agent, the action, and the object of the action, are the same; but in the former the agent, in the latter the object, is made the subject of the verb.

NOTE 4.—With the active voice the object, and with the passive the agent, is often omitted.

QUESTIONS.—What is a verb? What is meant by *passion* in grammar? How many kinds of verbs are there? What is an active verb? What is the object of a verb? What is a neuter verb? How many voices have active verbs?—neuter verbs? What is a deponent verb? What is the active voice of a verb?—the passive voice? What is often omitted with the active voice?—with the passive voice?

EXERCISE.

Determine which of the following verbs are active and which are neuter:—

To sit: to read; to walk; to love: to eat: to be: to hear: to purchase: to laugh; to destroy: to sleep: to desire.

Determine the voice of each of the following verbs:—

I love. He is hated. They are despised. We shall be taught. Fortune favors the brave. The brave are favored by fortune. All men desire happiness. The ship is driven by the wind. The horses draw the chariot. He eats and drinks. The provisions were consumed.

LESSON 47.

MOODS.

1. Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

2. The indicative *asserts* an action, the subjunctive *implies* or *supposes* it, the imperative *commands* it, and the infinitive denotes it *indefinitely*.

3. *To* is commonly used with the infinitive in English, and *may*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, are signs of the Latin subjunctive.

4. A question may be put either in the indicative or the subjunctive, as the sense requires.

TENSES.

5. Latin verbs have six tenses—the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future-perfect*: the first three represent *unfinished*, the last three *finished* action.

6. The present represents an action as going on at the *present* time; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

7. The imperfect represents an action as going on at a *past* time; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

8. The future represents an action as going on at a *future* time; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or be loving.

9. The perfect represents an action as finished *now* or at an *indefinite past* time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

10. The pluperfect represents an action as finished at a *definite past* time; as, *amavĕram*, I had loved.

11. The future-perfect represents an action as finished at a *definite future* time; as, *amavĕro*, I shall have loved.

NOTE 1.—In the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect, the English forms, *have been loving*, *had been loving*, and *shall have been loving*, are likewise found.

NOTE 2.—The present is also used to denote what is customary; the imperfect, to denote what *was* usual or customary, and likewise the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act, at a definite past time.

NOTE 3.—The perfect, when translated by *have*, is called the perfect *definite*; when without have, the perfect *indefinite*, or *historical* perfect.

NOTE 4.—In animated narration the present is sometimes used for the historical perfect, and is then called the *historical present.*

PERSON.

12. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of the subject.—Hence,

13. Verbs have three persons in each number—the *first*, *second*, and *third.*

NUMBER.

14. Number, in verbs, is the form by which they denote whether their subject is one object or more than one.—Hence,

15. Verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural.*

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

16. Participles are forms of the verb partaking of the nature of an adjective.

17. Gerunds and supines are forms of the verb partaking of the nature of a noun.

QUESTIONS.—How many and what moods have Latin verbs? How do the several moods represent an action? What is the sign of the infinitive in English? What words in English are signs of the Latin subjunctive? In what moods may a question be put? How many and what tenses have Latin verbs? How do the first three represent an action?—the last three? How does the present represent an action?—the imperfect?—the future?—the perfect?—the pluperfect?—the future-perfect? For what peculiar purpose is the present sometimes used?—the imperfect? What is the perfect called when translated by *have*?—when translated without *have*? What tense is sometimes used for the historical perfect? What is person in verbs? How many persons have verbs? What is number in verbs? How many numbers have verbs? What are participles? What are gerunds and supines?

LESSON 48.

CONJUGATIONS.

1. Verbs whose terminations are alike, are said to be of the same conjugation.

2. Latin verbs are divided into four conjugations.

3. The conjugations may be distinguished by the termination of the present infinitive.

(*a*) The termination of the present infinitive active,
In the first conjugation is *āre* ;[a]
In the second " *ēre* ;
In the third " *ĕre* ;
In the fourth " *īre*.

(*b*) The termination of the present infinitive passive,
In the first conjugation is *ārī* ;[a]
In the second " *ērī* ;
In the third " *ī* ;
In the fourth " *īrī*.

a Except in *do, dāre*, to give, and its compounds.

ROOTS.

4. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*.

5. The root of the *present* is called the *first* or *general* root, and is commonly found in every form of the verb.

6. The root of the *perfect* active is called the *second* root.

7. The root of the *supine* or *perfect participle* is called the *third* root.

8. The first root is found in each conjugation by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

QUESTIONS.—When are verbs said to be of the same conjugation? How many are the conjugations of Latin verbs? How may these be distinguished? What are the terminations of the present infinitive active?—passive? What are the two parts of which a verb consists? What is the first root?—the second?—the third? How is the first root found?

EXERCISE.

Determine the conjugation of each of the following verbs and write down its root, the present infinitive of each being given :—

Nominăre, *to name.*	Docēri, *to be taught.*	Timēre, *to fear.*
Ducĕre, *to lead.*	Legi, *to be read.*	Munīre, *to fortify.*
Amāri, *to be loved.*	Scīre, *to know.*	Punīri, *to be punished.*
Cædi, *to be cut.*	Dări, *to be given.*	Ostendĕre, *to show.*

In the preceding verbs change the active infinitives into passives and the passives into actives, and translate them accordingly.

LESSON 49.

THE SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

The second and third roots are formed by adding to the first root,

In the first conjugation *āv* and *āt*;
In the second " *u* and *ĭt*;
In the third " *s* and *t*;
In the fourth " *īv* and *ĭt*.

NOTES.

1. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a vowel, and often when it ends with a consonant, the second root has the same form; as, *arguo*, *argui*, *argūtum*, *lĕgo*, *lĕgi*, *lectum*.

REMARK 1.—When the second root of a verb ends with a consonant, the vowel before it is usually long; as, *e* in *lēgī* from *lĕgo*.

2. Many verbs in all the conjugations add *t* alone to form the third root, and some, especially those whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, add *s* alone.

3. By adding *s* in the second or third root to *c*, *g*, or *qu*, in the first root, *x* is formed; as, *rego*, (regsi) *rexi*; *coquo*, *coxi*.

4. *D* and *t* before *s* are either dropped or changed into *s*; as, *rōdo*, *rōsi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw; *cedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield.

5. *B* is changed to *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*: *g* and *qu* to *c* before *t*; as, *jungo*, *junxi*, *junctum*.

6. Some other irregularities occur in forming the second and third roots, especially in the third conjugation, and many verbs, particularly in the second conjugation, want the third root. For these see the larger Grammar and the Dictionary.

REMARK 2.—The tenses formed from the second root are sometimes syncopated; as, *amāstis* for *amavistis*.

QUESTIONS.—How are the second and third roots regularly formed? How is the second root formed in the third conjugation when the first ends with a vowel? What is the quantity of the last syllable of the second root when it ends with a consonant? How do many verbs in all the conjugations form the third root? When the first root ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*, and *s* is added, what letter is produced? What is the rule when *s* is added after *d* or *t*? What change occurs in *b* before *s* and *t*?—in *g* and *qu* before *t*? What tenses are sometimes syncopated?

EXERCISE.

Form the first, second, and third roots from the following infinitives:—

Amāre, æstimāre, cantāre; terrēre, mœrēre, monēre; carpĕre,—regĕre, ducĕre and inducĕre, (by note 3d,) acuĕre (by note 1st;) audire, munīre, scīre; claudĕre, (by notes 2d and 4th.)

LESSON 50.

In writing Latin the following rules are to be observed:—

1. An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must be put in the same gender, number, and case, as its noun.

2. A finite verb must be put in the same number and person as its subject.

3. The object of an active verb in the active voice, and of an active deponent verb, must be put in the accusative. Less. 46, N. 2.

NOTE 1.—A finite verb is a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

NOTE 2.—The subject of a verb is that of which something is affirmed.

REMARKS.

1. The subject of a Latin, as well as of an English sentence, usually stands first; as, *Puer* legit, *The boy* reads.

2. The accusative and other oblique cases, depending on a verb, commonly stand before it in Latin, but after it in English; as, Puer *librum* legit, The boy reads *the book*. *Mihi librum dat*, He gives the book to me.

3. *Ne* annexed to the first word in a sentence denotes a question; as, Scribi*ne?* Do you write?

4. In translating a question into English, the auxiliary of the verb, as, *do*, *did*, *have*, *had*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *might*, *is*, *was*, &c., is usually put first, then the subject, and after that the verb or participle; as, Will he write? Have you written?

5. *Not* is usually represented in Latin by *non*. When this is joined to a verb in the present tense, the auxiliary *do*, or *am*, &c., is commonly used in the translation; as, *Puer non legit*, The boy *does* not read, or *is* not reading.

6. In the lessons illustrating the paradigms of verbs, the following verbs have been employed, viz.:—

Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
Liběro	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	*to free.*
Paro,	parāre,	parāvi,	parātum,	*to prepare.*
Voco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	*to call.*
Vulnĕro,	vulnerāre,	vulnerāvi,	vulnerātum,	*to wound.*
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
Habeo,	habēre,	habui,	habĭtum,	*to have.*
Mereo,	merēre,	merui,	merĭtum,	*to deserve.*
Taceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacĭtum,	*to be silent.*
Terreo,	terrēre,	terrui,	terrĭtum,	*to terrify.*
Rego,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Dico,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*to say.*
Duco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*to lead.*

Jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	*to join.*
Lego,	legĕre,	legi,*	lectum,	*to read.*
Audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*to hear.*
Finio,	finīre,	finīvi,	finītum,	*to finish.*
Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*to fortify.*
Punio,	punīre,	punīvi,	punītum,	*to punish.*
Scio,	scīre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*to know.*

* Lesson 49, N. 1.

QUESTIONS.—In writing Latin, what is the rule for the adjective, &c.?—for a finite verb?—for the object of an active verb in the active voice? What is a finite verb?—the subject of a verb? Where does the subject of a sentence usually stand?—the accusative and other oblique cases depending on a verb? How may a question be denoted in Latin? What is the order of words in a question in English? How is *not* expressed in Latin? When *non* is joined to a verb in the present tense, how is the verb translated?

LESSON 51.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF LATIN VERBS.

1. The principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the former *supine*.

NOTE 1.—These parts, like the nominative and genitive singular of nouns, are given in the Dictionary, and must be retained in memory.

NOTE 2.—For the purpose of indicating the third root, a former supine, even when it is not found in actual use, is frequently inserted in the Latin Dictionaries. Most of the supines found in the classics are pointed out in Andrews' and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, § 164—177.

2. The following is the mode of conjugating verbs in each of the four conjugations :—

ACTIVE VOICE.

(*a*) PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
1. A′-mo,	a-mā′-re,	a-mā′-vi,	a-mā′-tum,	(*to love.*)
2. Mo′-ne-o,	mo-nē′-re,	mon′-u-i,	mon′-i-tum,	(*to advise.*)
3. Re′-go,	reg′-ĕ-re,	rex′-i,	rec′-tum,	(*to rule.*)
4. Au′-di-o,	au-dī′-re,	au-dī′-vi,	au-dī′-tum,	(*to hear.*)

(*b*) ROOTS.

1.	2.	3.
am-	amāv-	amāt-
mŏn-	monu-	monĭt-
reg-	rex-	rect-
aud-	audīv-	audīt-

REMARKS.

1. Every finite verb has a subject expressed or understood. This is called the subject nominative.

2. In the singular number the subject of the first person is *ego*, I; of the second, *tu*, thou; of the third, *ille*, he, or some other pronoun or noun in the singular: in the plural, the subject of the first person is *nos*, we; of the second, *vos*, ye or you; of the third, *illi*, they, or some other pronoun or noun in the plural.

3. In the following paradigms the subject is omitted before the verb in Latin.

4. In writing Latin the subjects of verbs in the first and second persons are commonly omitted, unless they are emphatic, the termination sufficiently showing the person and number.

In the present tense a verb with its subjects expressed is thus conjugated:—

Singular.	*Plural.*
Ego amo, *I love*,	Nos amāmus, *we love*,
Tu amas, *thou lovest*,	Vos amātis, *ye love.*
Ille amat, *he loves;*	Illi amant, *they love.*

QUESTIONS.—Which are the principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice? Repeat the principal parts of *amo*—of *moneo*—of *rego*—of *audio*. Repeat the roots of *amo*—of *moneo*—of *rego*—of *audio*. What verbs must have a subject expressed or understood? What is the subject of the first person singular?—of the second?—of the third?—of the first person plural?—of the second?—of the third? What subjects are commonly omitted in Latin? Conjugate *amo* in the present tense, with its subjects expressed.

EXERCISE.

Write the principal parts of the following verbs:—

1. *Conj.* Damno, *to condemn.*
2. " Terreo, *to terrify.*
3. " Scribo, *to write.* (Lesson 49; N. 5.)
4. " Vestio, *to clothe.*

LESSON 52.

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *love, do love, am loving.*

Terminations.					*P.*			
	S. 1.	o,	as,	at;		āmus,	ātis,	ant.
	2.	eo,	es,	et;		ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
	3.	o,	is,	it;		imus,	itis,	unt.
	4.	io,	is,	it;		īmus,	ītis,	iunt.

	I love.	*Thou lovest,*	*He loves;*
S. 1.	A′-mo,	a′-mas,	a′-mat;
2.	Mo′-ne-o,	mo′-nes,	mo′-net;
3.	Re′-go,	re′-gis,	re′-git;
4.	Au′-di-o,	au′-dis,	au′-dit;

	We love,	*Ye* or *you love,*	*They love.*
P. 1.	a-mā′-mus,	a-mā′-tis,	a′-mant.
2.	mo-nē′-mus,	mo-nē′-tis,	mo′-nent.
3.	reg′-ĭ-mus,	reg′-ĭ-tis,	re′-gunt.
4.	au-dī′-mus,	au-dī′-tis,	au′-di-unt.

Imperfect, *was loving, loved, did love.*

Term.							
S. 1.	ābam,	ābas,	ābat;	*P.* abāmus,	abātis,	ābant.
2.	ēbam,	ēbas,	ēbat;	ebāmus,	ebātis,	ēbant.
3.	ēbam,	ēbas,	ēbat;	ebāmus,	ebātis,	ēbant.
4.	iēbam,	iēbas,	iēbat;	iebāmus,	iebātis,	iēbant.

	I was loving,	*Thou wast loving,*	*He was loving;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-bam,	a-mā′-bas,	a-mā′-bat;
2.	mo-nē′-bam,	mo-nē′-bas,	mo-nē′-bat;
3.	re-gē′-bam,	re-gē′-bas,	re-gē′-bat;
4.	au-di-ē′-bam,	au-di-ē′-bas,	au-di-ē′-bat;

	We were loving,	*Ye were loving,*	*They were loving.*
P. 1.	am-a-bā′-mus,	am-a-bā′-tis,	a-mā′-bant.
2.	mon-e-bā′-mus,	mon-e-bā′-tis,	mo-nē′-bant.
3.	reg-e-bā′-mus,	reg-e-bā′-tis,	re-gē′-bant.
4.	au-di-e-bā′-mus,	au-di-e-bā′-tis,	au-di-ē′-bant.

Future, *shall* or *will.*

Term.							
S. 1.	ābo,	ābis,	ābit;	*P.* abĭmus,	abĭtis,	ābunt.
2.	ēbo,	ēbis,	ēbit;	ebĭmus,	ebĭtis,	ēbunt.
3.	am,	es,	et;	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
4.	iam,	ies,	iet;	iēmus,	iētis,	ient.

	I shall love,	*Thou wilt love,*	*He will love;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-bo,	a-mā′-bis,	a-mā′-bit;
2.	mo-nē′-bo,	mo-nē′-bis,	mo-nē′-bit;
3.	re′-gam,	re′-ges,	re′-get;
4.	au′-di-am,	au′-di-es,	au′-di-et;

	We shall love,	*Ye will love,*	*They will love.*
P. 1.	a-mab′-ĭ-mus,	a-mab′-ĭ-tis,	a-mā′-bunt.
2.	mo-neb′-ĭ-mus,	mo-neb′-ĭ-tis,	mo-nē′-bunt.
3.	re-gē′-mus,	re-gē′-tis,	re′-gent.
4.	au-di-ē′-mus,	au-di-ē′-tis,	au′-di-ent.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first root of *amo?*—of *moneo?*—of *rego?*—of *audio?* What tenses of the active voice, indicative mood, are formed from the first root? What are the terminations of the present indicative active in each conjugation?

Repeat the present tense of *amo*, &c. What are the terminations of the imperfect indicative active in each conjugation? Repeat the imperfect of *amo*, &c. What are the terminations of the future indicative active in each conjugation? Repeat the future of *amo*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of *moneo* in the present—in the imperfect—in the future. Do the same with *rego* and *audio*.

Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 53.

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

FORMS OF SENTENCES.

There are four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

1. Affirmative; as, *Avis volat*, The bird flies.
2. Negative; as, *Avis non volat*, The bird does not fly.
3. Interrogative; as, *Avisne volat?* Does the bird fly?
4. Interrogative negative; as, *Nonne avis volat?* Does not the bird fly?

QUESTIONS.—What are the four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods? Repeat the example of an affirmative sentence—of a negative—of an interrogative—of an interrogative-negative.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences:—

Tu amābis.	Milites te vulnerābunt.
Ille amat.	Pueri libros legēbant.
Pater monet.	Habes amīcum.
Pater filium monēbat.	Habēbo amīcos.
Vos audiētis.	Dux ducēbat.
Mater audit.	Duces ducent.
Audiēmus.	Vocābas.
Miles me vulnĕrat.	Finiebāmus.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms into English.

III. Write the sentences in the first exercise, substituting the plural for the singular, and the singular for the plural; as, *Vos amabitis*, &c., and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences:—

Hast thou a book?	Wilt thou be silent?
I have a book.	I am silent.
Will they punish?	Will you (*pl.*) read?
They will punish.	We are reading.
The lion terrifies the boy.	The bee loves flowers.
The king was leading the soldiers.	
The soldiers were not leading the king.	

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The verbs in the preceding exercises, and in those which follow in the conjugation of verbs, may be found in Lesson 50.

amīcus, i, m.	*a friend.*	*bee,*	apis, is, f.
dux, ducis, m. & f.	*a leader.*	*book,*	liber, bri, m.
filius, i, m.	*a son.*	*boy,*	puer, ĕri, m.
liber, bri, m.	*a book.*	*city,*	urbs, urbis, f.
mater, tris, f.	*a mother.*	*flower,*	flos, floris, m.
miles, ĭtis, m. & f.	*a soldier.*	*lion,*	leo, ōnis, m.
pater, tris, m.	*a father.*	*king,*	rex, regis, m.
puer, ĕri, m.	*a boy.*	*soldier,*	miles, ĭtis, m. & f.

QUESTIONS.—What are the four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods? Repeat the example of an affirmative sentence—of a negative—of an interrogative—of an interrogative-negative.

LESSON 54

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have loved;* (indefinite,) *loved,*

Term.—*S.* i, isti, it; *P.* imus, istis, ērunt, *or* ēre.

	I have loved,	*Thou hast loved,*	*He has loved;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-vi,	am-a-vis′-ti,	a-mā′-vit;
2.	mon′-u-i,	mon-u-is′-ti,	mon′-u-it;
3.	rex′-i,	rex-is′-ti,	rex′-it;
4.	au-dī′-vi,	au-di-vis′-ti,	au-dī′-vit;

	We have loved,	*Ye have loved,*	*They have loved.*
P. 1.	a-mav′-ī-mus,	am-a-vis′-tis,	am-a-vē′-runt, *or* -re.
2.	mo-nu′-ī-mus,	mon-u-is′-tis,	mon-u-ē′-runt, *or* -re.
3.	rex′-ī-mus,	rex-is′-tis,	rex-ē′-runt, *or* -re.
4.	au-div′-ī-mus,	au-di-vis′-tis,	au-di-vē′-runt, *or* re.

Pluperfect, *had.*

Term.—S. ēram, ēras, ērat; *P.* erāmus, erātis, ērant.

	I had loved,	*Thou hadst loved,*	*He had loved;*
S. 1.	a-mav′-ĕ-ram,	a-mav′-ĕ-ras,	a-mav′-ĕ-rat;
2.	mo-nu′-ĕ-ram,	mo-nu′-ĕ-ras,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rat;
3.	rex′-ĕ-ram,	rex′-ĕ-ras,	rex′-ĕ-rat;
4.	au-div′-ĕ-ram,	au-div′-ĕ-ras,	au-div′-ĕ-rat;

	We had loved,	*Ye had loved,*	*They had loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-ve-rā′-mus,	am-a-ve-rā′-tis,	a-mav′-ĕ-rant.
2.	mon-u-e-rā′-mus,	mon-u-e-rā′-tis,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rant.
3.	rex-e-rā′-mus,	rex-e-rā′-tis,	rex′-ĕ-rant.
4.	au-di-ve-rā′-mus,	au-di-ve-rā′-tis,	au-div′-ĕ-rant.

Future-Perfect, *shall* or *will have.*

Term.—S. ĕro, ĕris, ĕrit; *P.* erimus, erītis, ĕrint.

	I shall have loved,	*Thou wilt have loved,*	*He will have loved;*
S. 1.	a-mav′-ĕ-ro,	a-mav′-ĕ-ris,	a-mav′-ĕ-rit;
2.	mo-nu′-ĕ-ro,	mo-nu′-ĕ-ris,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rit;
3.	rex′-ĕ-ro,	rex′-ĕ-ris,	rex′-ĕ-rit;
4.	au-div′-ĕ-ro,	au-div′-ĕ-ris,	au-div′-ĕ-rit;

	We shall have loved,	*Ye will have loved,*	*They will have loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-ver′-ī-mus,	am-a-ver′-ī-tis,	a-mav′-ĕ-rint.
2.	mon-u-er′-ī-mus,	mon-u-er′-ī-tis,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rint.
3.	rex-er′-ī-mus,	rex-er-ī-tis,	rex′-ĕ-rint.
4.	au-di-ver′-ī-mus,	au-di-ver′-ī-tis,	au-div′-ĕ-rint.

QUESTIONS.—How is the second root formed? What is the second root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*? What are the terminations of all verbs in the active voice, indicative mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense?—future-perfect tense? Repeat the perfect indicative active of *amo*—of *moneo*, &c.

NOTE.—In reciting the perfect tense, both forms of the third person plural should be repeated; as *am-a vē′-runt*, or *am-a-vē′-re.*

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each verb in the paradigms, in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 55.

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—SECOND ROOT.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences:—

Amavisti.	Illi junxĕrant.
Pater monuĕrat.	Milites audivĕrunt. *perf. def.*
Monuerĭmus.	Duxistis.
Rexistis.	Pater filium punivĕrat.
Audīvi.	Milites nos vulneravēre. *perf. indef.*
Puĕri tacuĕrunt.	Leōnes puĕros terruĕrant.
Tacuerĭtis.	Tu sciĕris.*
Ille monuĕrit.	Rex urbem munivĕrat.

* For *scivĕris* from *scio* L. 49, R. 2.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms.

III. Write the sentences in the first exercise, substituting the plural for the singular, and the singular for the plural, as. *Amavistis; Patres monuĕrant*, &c., and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences:—

Wilt thou have prepared?	I have not been silent.
I have prepared.	Hast thou read the book?
Thou hadst not prepared.	I have not read the book.
The king had led the soldiers.	The father advised the son.
The kings punished the leaders.	Thou wilt have finished.
I have advised thee.	He has freed his son.
Hast thou advised me?	Had he deserved?
Hast thou called the boy?	The king has fortified the city.
We shall have called thee.	They have not known.

LESSON 56.

ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may* or *can*.

Term.	*S.* 1. em,	es,	et;	*P.* ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
	2. eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
	3. am,	as,	at;	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
	4. iam,	ias,	iat;	iāmus,	iātis,	iant.

	I may love,	*Thou mayst love,*	*He may love;*
S. 1.	a′-mem,	a′-mes,	a′-met;
2.	mo′-ne-am,	mo′-ne-as,	mo′-ne-at;
3.	re′-gam,	re′-gas,	re′-gat;
4.	au′-di-am,	au′-di-as,	au′-di-at;

	We may love,	*Ye may love,*	*They may love.*
P. 1.	a-mā′-mus,	a-mā′-tis,	a′-ment.
2.	mo-ne-ā′-mus,	mo-ne-ā′-tis,	mo′-ne-ant.
3.	re-gā′-mus,	re-gā′-tis,	re′-gant.
4.	au-di-ā′-mus,	au-di-ā′-tis,	au′-di-ant.

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Term.

S. 1.	ārem,	āres,	āret;	*P.* ārēmus,	arētis,	ārent.
2.	ērem,	ēres,	ēret;	erēmus,	erētis,	ērent.
3.	ĕrem,	ĕres,	ĕret;	erēmus,	erētis,	ĕrent.
4.	īrem,	īres,	īret;	irēmus,	irētis,	īrent.

	I would love,	*Thou wouldst love,*	*He would love;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-rem,	a-mā′-res,	a-mā′-ret;
2.	mo-nē′-rem,	mo-nē′-res,	mo-nē′-ret;
3.	reg′-ĕ-rem,	reg′-ĕ-res,	reg′-ĕ-ret;
4.	au-dī′-rem,	au-dī′-res,	au-dī′-ret;

	We would love,	*Ye would love,*	*They would love.*
P. 1.	am-a-rē′-mus,	am-a-rē′-tis,	a-mā′-rent.
2.	mon-e-rē′-mus,	mon-e-rē′-tis,	mo-nē′-rent.
3.	reg-e-rē′-mus,	reg-e-rē′-tis,	reg′-ĕ-rent.
4.	au-di-rē′-mus,	au-di-rē′-tis,	au-dī′-rent.

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of the active voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj. ?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.—the imperfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the verbs in the present subjunctive—in the imperfect. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 57.

ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

1. In *dependent* sentences connected by *ut*, 'that,' and other similar connectives, the *present* subjunctive is often to be translated by *may*, sometimes by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, and sometimes by the indicative.

2. In *independent* sentences, the present subjunctive is used to express a *wish*, an *exhortation*, a *request*, a *command*, or a *permission;* as, *amet*, may he love, or let him love.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

Ut puer amet.	Ut dicerētis.
Ut puĕrī libros suos legant.	Ut milĭtes bellum finīrent.
Puer legat.	Ut librum legerētis.
Ut moneāmus.	Illi non parārent.
Amīcos moneāmus.	Leōnes puĕrum terrērent.
Ut rex regat.	Puĕri taceant.
Ut habeātis.	Rex regat.

II. Change the singular for the plural and the plural for the singular, in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

3. When the present subjunctive is used to express a wish, an exhortation, &c., *not* is expressed by *ne;* as, *Ne scribat*, let him not write.

III. Translate into Latin—

That thou mayst know.	Let us call.
They would advise.	Let us not be silent.
That he could lead.	They would punish.
That thou mayst have.	May I read.
Let the boy have.	Let me not hear.
Let not the boy have.	Let them not wound.
Mayst thou hear.	That ye should love.
I should[a] be silent.	Shouldst[a] thou be silent.

[a] *Should* in the subjunctive mood implies *supposition*, not *obligation*.

QUESTIONS.—How is the present subjunctive translated in dependent sentences? How is the present subjunctive used in independent sentences? When the subjunctive is used to express a wish, &c., how is *not* expressed in Latin?

LESSON 58.

ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, *may have.*

Term.—*S.* ĕrim, ĕris, ĕrit; *P.* erīmus, erītis, ĕrint.

	I may have loved,	*Thou mayst have loved,*	*He may have loved;*
S. 1.	a-mav′-ĕ-rim,	a-mav′-ĕ-ris,	a-mav′-ĕ-rit;
2.	mo-nu′-ĕ-rim,	mo-nu′-ĕ-ris,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rit;
3.	rex′-ĕ-rim,	rex′-ĕ-ris,	rex′-ĕ-rit;
4.	au-div′-ĕ-rim,	au-div′-ĕ-ris,	au-div′-ĕ-rit;

	We may have loved,	*Ye may have loved,*	*They may have loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-ver′-ī-mus,	am-a-ver′-ī-tis,	a-mav′-ĕ-rint.
2.	mon-u-er′-ī-mus,	mon-u-er′-ī-tis,	mo-nu′-ĕ-rint.
3.	rex-er′-ī-mus,	rex-er′-ī-tis,	rex′-ĕ-rint.
4.	au-di-ver′-ī-mus,	au-di-ver′-ī-tis,	au-div′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Term.—*S.* issem, isses, isset; *P.* issēmus, issētis, issent.

	I would have loved,	*Thou wouldst have loved,*	*He would have loved;*
S. 1.	am-a-vis′-sem,	am-a-vis′-ses,	am-a-vis′-set;
2.	mon-u-is′-sem,	mon-u-is′-ses,	mon-u-is′-set;
3.	rex-is′-sem,	rex-is′-ses,	rex-is′-set;
4.	au-di-vis′-sem,	au-di-vis′-ses,	au-di-vis′-set;

	We would have loved,	*Ye would have loved,*	*They would have loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-vis-sē′-mus,	am-a-vis-sē′-tis,	am-a-vis′-sent.
2.	mon-u-is-sē′-mus,	mon-u-is-sē′-tis,	mon-u-is′-sent.
3.	rex-is-sē′-mus,	rex-is-sē′-tis,	rex-is′-sent.
4.	au-di-vis-sē′-mus,	au-di-vis-sē′-tis,	au-di-vis′-sent.

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of the active voice, subjunctive mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense? What tenses of the subjunctive are formed from the first root?—from the second root? What tenses of the indicative are wanting in the subjunctive? What is the first root of *amo*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *moneo*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *rego*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *audio*?—the second?—the third? Repeat the perfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.—the pluperfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Write the conjugation of *damno, terreo, scribo,* and *vestio,* in the same tenses.

LESSON 59.

ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—SECOND ROOT.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

Ut amavisses.	Ut illi habuissent.
Nonne amavissēmus?	Habuissēmus.
Monuerītis.	Ut oppĭdum muniverītis.
Ut rex rexisset.	Ut vulneravĕrit.
Ut rex milites rexĕrit.	Nonne tacuissētis.
Ut duces audivĕrint.	Tacuissēmus.
Audivissētis.	Ut puer librum legĕrit.
Puer avem liberavisset.	Finissem.[a]

(a) *Vi* is often omitted in the third root. Less. 49, R. 2.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. Translate into Latin—

Shouldst thou have prepared?	May he not have led the army?
I may have advised.	Ye might have called.
Ye may have had the book.	Thou wouldst have been silent.
Would he not have loved me?	He would have joined the hands.
He would have loved me.	They would have known.
Thou wouldst have finished.	Thou wouldst have wounded the bird.
Wouldst thou have finished?	Ye might have read.
Would he not have finished?	They might have advised.
He may have led the army.	

LESSON 60.

ACTIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Term.

	S.	*P.*
1. a *or* ā	āto;	āte *or* ātōte, anto.
2. e *or* ē	ēto;	ēte *or* ētōte, ento.
3. e *or* ĭ	ĭto;	ĭte *or* ĭtōte, unto.
4. ĭ *or* ī	īto;	īte *or* ītōte, iunto.

	Love or *love thou*,	*Let him love;*
S. 1.	a′-ma *or* a-mā′-to,	a-mā′-to;
2.	mo′-ne *or* mo-nē′-to,	mo-nē′-to;
3.	re′-ge *or* reg′-ĭ-to,	reg′-ĭ-to;
4.	au′-di *or* au-dī′-to,	au-dī′-to;

	Love or *love ye,*	*Let them love.*
P. 1.	a-mā′-te *or* am-a-tō′-te,	a-man′-to.
2.	mo-nē′-te *or* mon-e-tō′-te,	mo-neṅ′-to.
3.	reg′-ī-te *or* reg-i-tō′-te,	re-gun′-to.
4.	au-dī′-te *or* au-di-tō′-te,	au-di-un′-to.

ACTIVE VOICE—INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.		Perfect.		Future.	
To love or *to be loving.*	*Term.*	*To have loved.*	*Term.*	*To be about* or *going to love.*	
1. a-mā′-re,	āre.	am-a-vis′-se,	issе.	am-a-tū′-rus	es′-se.
2. mo-nē′-re,	ēre.	mon-u-is′-se,		mon-i-tū′-rus	es′-se.
3. reg′-ĕ-re,	ĕre.	rex-is′-se,		rec-tū′-rus	es′-se.
4. au-dī′-re,	īre.	au-di-vis′-se,		au-di-tū′-rus	es′-se.

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the imperative formed? What are the terminations of the active voice, imperative mood, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? What person is wanting in the Latin imperative? Repeat the present imperative active of *amo*, &c. From which root is the present infinitive active formed? What is its termination in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? From which root is the perfect infinitive active formed? What is its termination? From which root is the future infinitive active formed?

NOTE.—*Esse* (to be) in the future infinitive is from the verb *sum*. See Less. 62.

EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Amanto. Mone. Dicīte. Sciunto.
Parāte. Tacēte. Audi. Finīto.

II. Call thou. Let the lion terrify.
Let him call. Finish thou.
Let him be silent. Let him say.
Let them punish. Let the soldiers have.
Lead ye. Prepare thou.

Write the imperative and infinitive active of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*.

LESSON 61.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.		Future.	
Loving.	*Term.*	*About* or *going to love.*	*Term.*
1. a′-mans,	ans.	1. am-a-tū′-rus,	ūrus.
2. mo′-nens,	ens.	2. mon-i-tū′-rus,	
3. re′-gens,	ens.	3. rec-tū′-rus,	
4. au′-di-ens,	iens.	4. au-di-tū′-rus,	

GERUND.

Gen. *of loving.*	Dat. *to* or *for loving.*	Acc. *loving.*	Abl. *by loving.*
1. a-man'-di,	a-man'-do,	a-man'-dum,	a-man'-do.
2. mo-nen'-di,	mo-nen'-do,	mo-nen'-dum,	mo-nen'-do.
3. re-gen'-di,	re-gen'-do,	re-gen'-dum,	re-gen'-do.
4. au-di-en'-di,	au-di-en'-do,	au-di-en'-dum,	au-di-en'-do.

FORMER SUPINE.

1. a-mā'-tum, *to love.*	3. rec'-tum, *to rule.*	*Term.*
2. mon'-i-tum, *to advise.*	4. au-di'-tum, *to hear.*	um.

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the present participle formed? What is its termination in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present participle of *amo*, &c.—the future active participle of *amo*, &c. Decline *amans*, (see Less. 37.) From which root is the future active participle formed? What is its termination? Decline *amatūrus*, (see Less. 29.) From which root is the gerund formed? Of which declension is the gerund? What cases of the gerund are wanting? Of which number is the gerund? From which root is the former supine formed? What is its termination? What is the third root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*?

EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Libĕrans,	muniens,	tacens.
liberatūrus,	munitūrus,	tacitūrus
habens,	vulnĕrans,	legens.
habitūrus,	vulneratūrus,	lectūrus.

Puer librum legens. Pater filium monitūrus.

II. The father loving the son. The king ruling the kingdom.
The boy about-to-read. The mother about-to-advise.
For-the-boy reading. To-the-soldiers about-to-wound.

LESSON 62.

SUM.

1. *Sum*, 'I am,' when connected with a participle, is called an *auxiliary* verb; when used without a participle, it is called the *substantive* verb.

2. *Sum* is irregular in the parts derived from the first root *es*, but regular in those derived from the second root *fu*, and the third root *fut*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum,	es'-se,	fu'-i,	fu-tū'-rus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present.

Singular.	*Plural.*
sum, *I am,*	su'-mus, *we are,*
es, *thou art,*	es'-tis, *ye are,*
est, *he is;*	sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

e'-ram, *I was,*	e-rā'-mus, *we were,*
e'-ras, *thou wast,*	e-rā'-tis, *ye were,*
e'-rat, *he was;*	e'-rant, *they were.*

Future, *shall* or *will.*

e'-ro, *I shall be,*	er'-ĭ-mus, *we shall be,*
e'-ris, *thou will be,*	er'-ĭ-tis, *ye will be,*
e'-rĭt, *he will be;*	e'-runt, *they will be.*

REMARK.—The imperfect of the indicative of *sum* is the same as the *termination* of the *pluperfect* of other verbs, and the future is the same as the *termination* of the *future perfect* of other verbs, except in the third person plural, where it has u instead of i.

QUESTIONS.—When is *sum* an auxiliary verb?—when a substantive verb? In what parts is *sum* irregular? What are its roots?—its principal parts? Repeat its present tense—its imperfect, &c. What does its imperfect indicative resemble?—its pluperfect?—its future-perfect?

EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Corvus est niger.
Nix est alba.
Tempus est breve.
Meus canis est fidus.
Nostri milĭtes erant fortes.
Boni homines erunt felices.
Nos erāmus miserrĭmi.
Tu es incolŭmis.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. We are happy.
Ye are free.
The way was difficult.
I was happy.
Thou wast happier.
The lions were fierce.
Good kings are merciful.
Ye will be very-great.
Nero was very-cruel.
The soldier was very-brave.

LATIN VOCABULARY.

albus, a, um, . . *white.*
arbor, ŏris, f. . . *a tree.*
benignus, . . . *kind.*
bonus, a, um, . . *good.*
brevis, e, . . . *short.*
canis, is, m. & f. *a dog.*
corvus, i, m. . . *a raven.*
crudēlis, e, . . . *cruel.*
diligens, tis, . . *diligent.*
felix, īcis, . . . *happy.*
fidus, a, um, . . *faithful.*
fortis, e, ... *brave.*
homo, ĭnis, m. & f. *a man.*
incolŭmis, e, . *safe.*

manus, ūs, f. . . .	*a hand.*
meus, a, um, . . .	*my.*
miles, ĭtis, m. & f. .	*a soldier.*
miser, a, um, . . .	*miserable.*
mitis, ...	*mild.*
niger, gra, grum, . .	*black.*
nix, nivis, ...	*snow.*
noster, tra, trum, . .	*our.*
plenus, a um, . . .	*full.*
prudens, tis, . . .	*prudent.*
puer, i, m.	*a boy.*
tempus, ŏris, n. . .	*time.*

ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

black, . .	*niger, gra, grum.*
brave, . .	*fortis, e.*
very-brave,	*fortissĭmus.*
cruel, . .	*crudēlis, e.*
very cruel, .	*crudelissĭmus.*
difficult, . .	*difficĭlis, e.*
dog, . . .	*canis, is, m. & f.*
free, . . .	*liber, a, um.*
faithful, . .	*fidus, a, um.*
fierce, . .	*ferox, ōcis.*
good, . . .	*bonus, a, um.*
great, . . .	*magnus, a, um.*
very-great, .	*maxĭmus, a, um.*
happy, . .	*felix, ĭcis.*
happier, . . .	*felicior, us.*
very-happy, . .	*felicissĭmus, a, um.*
king, ...	*rex, regis, m.*
lion, ...	*leo, ōnis, m.*
man, ...	*homo, ĭnis, m. & f.*
merciful, . .	*clemens, tis.*
miserable, . .	*miser, a, um.*
very-miserable, .	*miserrĭmus, a, um.*
Nero, ...	*Nero, ōnis, m.*
raven, ...	*corvus, i, m.*
short, ...	*brevis, e.*
soldier, ...	*miles, ĭtis, m. & f.*
time, ...	*tempus, ŏris, n.*
way, ...	*via, æ, f.*

LESSON 63.

INDICATIVE MOOD. (*Continued.*)

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have been;* (indefinite,) *was.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
fu'-i, *I have been,*	fu'-i-mus, *we have been,*
fu-is'-ti, *thou hast been,*	fu-is'-tis, *ye have been,*
fu'-it, *he has been;*	fu-ē'-runt *or* -re, *they have been.*

Pluperfect, *had.*

fu'-ĕ-ram, *I had been,*	fu-e-rā'-mus, *we had been,*
fu'-ĕ-ras, *thou hadst been,*	fu-e-rā'-tis, *ye had been,*
fu'-ĕ-rat, *he had been;*	fu'-ĕ-rant, *they had been.*

Future-Perfect, *shall* or *will have.*

fu'-ĕ-ro, *I shall have been,*	fu-er'-i-mus, *we shall have been,*
fu'-ĕ-ris, *thou will have been,*	fu-er'-i-tis, *ye will have been,*
fu'-ĕ-rit, *he will have been;*	fu'-ĕ-rint, *they will have been.*

QUESTIONS.—What is the second root of *sum?* What tenses of the indicative mood are derived from the second root? What are the terminations of the perfect, &c.? Repeat the perfect, &c. What is the English of this verb in the perfect definite?—in the perfect indefinite? Repeat the English of the pluperfect without the Latin—of the future-perfect.

EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Fuisti fidus.	Milītes crudēles fuērunt.
Puer dīligens fuit.	Meæ manus plenæ fuēre.
Fuerāmus.	Ille homo fuit prudentissīmus.
Felices fuerīmus.	Nos incolūmes fuerīmus.
Vos feliciōres fuerītis.	Fīdi fuerāmus.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. The ravens were black.	Ye have been happier.
The dogs had been faithful.	Thou wast very-happy.
The time will have been short.	I had been very-miserable.
The soldiers had been brave.	The good king was merciful.
We have been happy.	The men had been free.

LESSON 64.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
sim, *I may be,*	sĭ'-mus, *we may be,*
sis, *thou mayst be,*	sĭ'-tis, *ye may be,*
sit, *he may be;*	sint, *they may be.*

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should.*

es'-sem, *I might be,*	es-sĕ'-mus, *we might be,*
es'-ses, *thou mightst be,*	es-sĕ'-tis, *ye might be,*
es'-set, *he might be;*	es'-sent, *they might be.*

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, *may have.*

fu'-ĕ-rim, *I may have been,*	fu-er'-ĭ-mus, *we may have been,*
fu'-ĕ-ris, *thou mayst have been,*	fu'-er'-ĭ-tis, *ye may have been,*
fu'-ĕ-rit, *he may have been;*	fu'-ĕ-rint, *they may have been.*

Pluperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

fu-is'-sem, *I might have been,*	fu-is-sĕ'-mus, *we might have been,*
fu-is'-ses, *thou mightst have been,*	fu-is-sĕ'-tis, *ye might have been,*
fu-is'-set, *he might have been;*	fu-is'-sent, *they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

es *or* es′-to, *be* or *be thou*, es′-te *or* es-tō′-te, *be* or *be ye*.
es′-to, *let him be*; sun′-to, *let them be*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es′-se, *to be.* *Perfect.* fu-is′-se, *to have been.*
Future. fu-tū′-rus es′-se, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present. — *Future.* fu-tū′-rus, *about to be.*

NOTE.—The subjunctive in wishes, &c., may be translated thus:—

Pres. May I be, &c. *Imperf.* Might I be, &c.
Perf. May I have been, &c. *Pluperf.* Might I have been, &c.

QUESTIONS.—Which tenses of the subjunctive mood are derived from the first root?—from the second? From which root is the imperative formed?—the present infinitive?—the perfect infinitive?—the future infinitive?—the future participle? Repeat the subjunctive present, &c. How may this verb be translated in wishes, &c.?

EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Sis felix.[a] Estōte benignæ.
Puer sit bonus.[a] Puĕri sunto diligentiōres.
Sint puĕri feliciōres.[a] Essēmus prudentiōres.
Leōnes fuissent crudeliōres. Fuerītis incolūmes.
Este boni. Fuisses mitior.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. He may be happier. Be thou merciful.
May he be happier.[a] Be ye merciful.
He might have been better. Let the soldiers be brave.
They may have been prudent. Let the boy be diligent.
The lions would be very-cruel. Let us be good.[a]

(*a*) The subjunctive used to express a *wish*, &c. Less. 57, Remark.

LESSON 65.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. The *principal parts* in the passive voice are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, and the *perfect participle.*

2. The second root is not found in the passive voice.

3. Those tenses which, in the active voice, are derived from the second root, are, in the passive, compounded of the perfect participle and the auxiliary *sum.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
1. A′-mor,	a-mā′-ri,	a-mā′-tus,	(*to be loved.*)
2. Mo′-ne-or,	mo-nē′-ri,	mon′-ĭ-tus,	(*to be advised.*)
3. Re′-gor,	re′-gi,	rec′-tus,	(*to be ruled.*)
4. Au′-di-or,	au-dī′-ri,	au-dī′-tus,	(*to be heard.*)

4. In the passive voice the conjugations may be distinguished from each other by the termination of the present infinitive. See Less. 48.

The first conjugation ends in			*āri.*
The second	"	"	*ēri.*
The third	"	"	*i.*
The fourth	"	"	*īri.*

5. The perfect participle is formed from the third root by adding *us;* as, *amāt-, amātus; monīt-, monītus; rect-, rectus; audīt-, auditus.*

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal parts in the passive voice? What root is not found in the passive voice? How are those tenses formed in the passive voice which in the active are formed from the second root? Repeat the principal parts of *amo* in the passive voice—of *moneo*, &c. How may the conjugations be distinguished from each other in the passive voice? How does the first conjugation end?—&c. How is the perfect participle formed?

EXERCISE.

Write down the principal parts of the following verbs, in both voices:—first conjugation, *accūso*, to accuse; *æstimo*, to value; *celĕbro*, to celebrate; *paro*, to prepare:—in the second conj., *habeo*, to have; *moneo*, to admonish; *terreo*, to terrify:—in the third conj., *carpo*, to pluck; *dico*, to say; *jungo*, to join; *acuo*, to sharpen:—in the fourth, *finio*, to finish.

LESSON 66.

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *am.*

Term.	*S.* 1.	or,	āris *or* āre,	ātur;	*P.*	āmur,	amĭni,	antur.
	2.	eor,	ĕris *or* ēre,	ētur;		ēmur,	emĭni,	entur.
	3.	or,	ĕris *or* ĕre,	ĭtur;		ĭmur,	imĭni,	untur.
	4.	ior,	īris *or* īre,	ītur;		īmur,	imĭni,	iuntur.

	I am loved,	*Thou art loved,*	*He is loved;*
S. 1.	a′-mor,	a-mā′-ris *or* -re,[a]	a-mā′-tur;
2.	mo′-ne-or,	mo-nē′-ris *or* -re,	mo-nē′-tur;
3.	re′-gor,	reg′-ĕ-ris *or* -re,	reg′-ĭ-tur;
4.	au′-di-or,	au-dī′-ris *or* -re,	au-dī′-tur;

	We are loved,	*Ye are loved,*	*They are loved.*
P. 1.	a-mā′-mur,	a-mam′-ĭ-ni,	a-man′-tur.
2.	mo-nē′-mur,	mo-nem′-ĭ-ni,	mo-nen′-tur.
3.	reg′-ĭ-mur,	re-gim′-ĭ-ni,	re-gun′-tur.
4.	au-dī′-mur,	au-dim′-ĭ-ni,	au-di-un′-tur.

Imperfect, *was.*

Term.	*S.* 1.	ābar,	abāris *or* abāre,	abātur;	*P*	abāmur,	abamĭni,	abantur.
	2.	ēbar,	ebāris *or* ebāre,	ebātur;		ebāmur,	ebamĭni,	ebantur.
	3.	ēbar,	ebāris *or* ebāre,	ebātur;		ebāmur,	ebamĭni,	ebantur.
	4.	iēbar,	iebāris *or* iebāre,	iebātur;		iebāmur,	iebamĭni,	iebantur.

	I was loved,	*Thou wast loved,*	*He was loved;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-bar,	am-a-bā′-ris *or* -re,[a]	am-a-bā′-tur;
2.	mo-nē′-bar,	mon-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,	mon-e-bā′-tur;
3.	re-gē′-bar,	reg-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,	reg-e-bā′-tur;
4.	au-di-ē′-bar,	au-di-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,	au-di-e-bā′-tur;

	We were loved,	*Ye were loved,*	*They were loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-bā′-mur,	am-a-bam′-ĭ-ni,	am-a-ban′-tur.
2.	mon-e-bā′-mur,	mon-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,	mon-e-ban′-tur.
3.	reg-e-bā′-mur,	reg-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,	reg-e-ban′-tur.
4.	au-di-e-bā′-mur,	au-di-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,	au-di-e-ban′-tur.

Future, *shall* or *will be.*

Term.	*S.* 1.	ābor,	abĕris *or* abĕre,	abĭtur;	*P.*	abĭmur,	abimĭni,	abuntur.
	2.	ēbor,	ebĕris *or* ebĕre,	ebĭtur;		ebĭmur,	ebimĭni,	ebuntur.
	3.	ar,	ĕris *or* ēre,	ētur;		ēmur,	emĭni,	entur.
	4.	iar,	iēris *or* iēre,	iētur;		iēmur,	iemĭni,	ientur.

	I shall be loved,	*Thou wilt be loved,*	*He will be loved;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-bor,	a-mab′-ē-ris *or* -re,[a]	a-mab′-ĭ-tur;
2.	mo-nē′-bor,	mo-neb′-ē-ris *or* -re,	mo-neb′-ĭ-tur;
3.	re′-gar,	re-gē′-ris *or* -re,	re-gē′-tur;
4.	au′-di-ar,	au-di-ē′-ris *or* -re,	au-di-ē′-tur;
	We shall be loved,	*Ye will be loved,*	*They will be loved.*
P. 1.	a-mab′-ĭ-mur,	am-a-bim′-ĭ-ni,	am-a-bun′-tur.
2.	mo-neb′-ĭ-mur,	mon-e-bim′-ĭ-ni,	mon-e-bun′-tur.
3.	re-gē′-mur,	re-gem′-ĭ-ni,	re-gen′-tur.
4.	au-di-ē′-mur,	au-di-em′-ĭ-ni,	au-di-en′-tur.

(a) Both forms of the second person singular should be repeated; as, *amāris* or *amāre*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*? What are the terminations of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the future tense in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present indicative passive of *amo*, &c.—the imperfect—the future.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 67.

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

FORMS.

Affirmative, *Puer amātur*, The boy is loved.
Negative, *Puer non amātur*, The boy is not loved.
Interrogative, *Puerne amātur?* Is the boy loved?
Interrogative-negative, *Nonne puer amātur?* Is not the boy loved?

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences:—

Ille amabĭtur.	Punimĭni.
Tu monēris.	Terrebēris.
Vos regebamĭni.	Milites nostri terrebantur.
Illi audiuntur.	Puer puniebātur.
Nos liberabimur.	Miles vulnerātur.
Liberāris.	Urbs muniētur.
Parabēris.	Parabāris.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms into English.

III. Change the singular for the plural, and the plural for the singular, in each sentence in the first exercise, and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences:—

Are you (*pl.*) prepared?	The soldier is not wounded.
We are prepared.	Will they be prepared?
Wilt thou be terrified?	We shall not be prepared.
I shall not be terrified.	Am I not advised?
Were not the soldiers led?	Robbers[b] will be punished.
The soldiers were led.	Will not a robber be punished?
The books[a] are read.	The hands were joined.
Is the soldier wounded?	He was called.

(*a*) A book, *liber, bri, m.* (*b*) A robber, *latro, ōnis, m.*

LESSON 68.

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE THIRD ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have been;* (indefinite,) *was.*

Term.—*S.* -us, {sum *or* fŭi,	-us, {es *or* fuisti,	-us, {est *or* fŭit;
P. -i, {sumus *or* fŭĭmus,	-i, {estis *or* fuistis,	-i, {sunt, fŭērunt, *or* fŭēre.

I have been loved,	*Thou hast been loved,*	*He has been loved;*
S. 1. a-mā′-tus, 2. mon′-ĭ-tus, 3. rec′-tus, 4. au-dī′-tus, } sum *or* fu′-i,	a-mā′-tus, mon′-ĭ-tus, rec′-tus, au-dī′-tus, } es *or* fu-is′-ti,	a-mā′-tus, mon′-ĭ-tus, rec′-tus, au-dī′-tus, } est *or* fu′-it;
We have been loved,	*Ye have been loved,*	*They have been loved.*
P. 1. a-mā′-ti, 2. mon′-ĭ-ti, 3. rec′-ti, 4. au-dī′-ti, } su′-mus *or* fu′-ĭ-mus,	a-mā′-ti, mon′-ĭ-ti, rec′-ti, au-dī′-ti, } es′-tis *or* fu-is′-tis,	a-mā′-ti, mon′-ĭ-ti, rec′-ti, au-dī′-ti, } sunt, fu-ĕ′-runt, *or* fu-ē -re.

Pluperfect, *had been.*

Term.—*S.* -us, {eram *or* fŭĕram,	-us, {eras *or* fŭĕras,	-us, {erat *or* fŭĕrat;
P. -i, {erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	-i, {erātis *or* fuerātis,	-i, {erant *or* fŭĕrant.

	I had been loved,	*Thou hadst been loved,*	*He had been loved;*
S.	a-mā′-tus,	a-mā′-tus,	a-mā′-tus,
2.	mon′-ĭ-tus,	mon′-ĭ-tus,	mon′-ĭ-tus,
3.	rec′-tus,	rec′-tus,	rec′-tus,
4.	au-dī′-tus,	au-dī′-tus,	au-dī′-tus,
	e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram,	e′-ras *or* fu′-ĕ-ras,	e′-rat *or* fu-ĕ-rat;

	We had been loved,	*Ye had been loved,*	*They had been loved.*
P.	a-mā′-ti,	a-mā′-ti,	a-mā′-ti,
2.	mon′-ĭ-ti,	mon′-ĭ-ti,	mon′-ĭ-ti,
3.	rec′-ti,	rec′-ti,	rec′-ti,
4.	au-dī′-ti,	au-dī′-ti,	au-dī′-ti,
	e-rā′-mus *or* fu-e-rā′-mus,	e-rā′-tis *or* fu-e-rā′-tis,	e′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future-Perfect, *shall* or *will have been.*

Term.—*S.*	-us, ero *or* fuĕro,	-us, eris *or* fuĕris,	-us, erit *or* fuĕrit;
P.	-i, erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus,	-i, erĭtis *or* fuerĭtis,	-i, erunt *or* fuĕrint.

	I shall have been loved, Thou wilt have been, &c.,	*He will have been, &c.*
S.	a-mā′-tus,	a-mā′-tus,
2.	mon′-ĭ-tus,	mon′-ĭ-tus,
3.	rec′-tus,	rec′-tus,
4.	au-dī′-tus,	au-dī′-tus,
	e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro,	e′-ris *or* fu′-ĕ-ris,	e′-rit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit

	We shall have been, &c., Ye will have been, &c., They will have been, &c.
P.	a-mā′-ti,
2.	mon′-ĭ-ti,
3.	rec′-ti,
4.	au-dī′-ti,
	er′-ĭ-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus,	er′-ĭ-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis,	e′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

QUESTIONS.—How is the perfect passive formed? (Answer. By means of the perfect participle and the present and perfect of *sum.*)—the pluperfect?—the future-perfect? Repeat the perfect indicative passive of *amo*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of the preceding verbs in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 69.

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—THIRD ROOT.

FORMS.

Affirmative, *Puer amātus est.*
Negative, *Puer non amātus est.*
Interrogative, *Puerne amātus est?*
Interrogative-negative, *Nonne puer amātus est?*

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

Vocātus eras.	Miles ductus fuit.
Illi monīti fuĕrint.	Puer punītus fuĕrat.
Monīti erātis.	Illi punīti fuēre.
Rectus eris.	Aves[b] territæ fuēre.
Milites recti erant.	Territi erātis.
Audītus fuĕro.	Domus parāta fuĕrat.
Audīti estis.	Vocātus fuĕris.
Ducti erāmus.	Puella[c] amāta fuĕrit.
Agmen[a] ductum est.	Agmina ducta erant.

(*a*) *Agmen, ĭnis, n.* an army. (*b*) *Avis, is, f.* a bird. (*c*) *Puella, æ, f.* a girl.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the other three forms and translate them into English.

III. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns, and verbs in each sentence of the first exercise, and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin—

I shall have been called.	Were ye not terrified?
Wilt not thou have been called?	We were terrified.
The girls had been terrified.	The bird will have been freed.
The soldiers were not terrified.	The city had been fortified.
Ye will not have been advised.	The books were read.
Had the book been read?	Were the robbers punished?
The book will have been read.	The robbers were punished.
The girl had been called.	The army was prepared.

LESSON 70.

PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may* or *can be.*

Term.

S.	1. er,	ēris *or* ēre,	ētur;	*P.*	ēmur,	emĭni,	entur.
	2. ear,	eāris *or* eāre,	eātur;		eāmur,	eamĭni,	eantur.
	3. ar,	āris *or* āre,	ātur;		āmur,	amĭni,	antur.
	4. iar,	iāris *or* iāre,	iātur;		iāmur,	iamĭni,	iantur.

	I may be loved,	*Thou mayst be loved,*	*He may be loved;*
S. 1.	a′-mer,	a-mē′-ris *or* -re,	a-mē′-tur;
2.	mo′-ne-ar,	mo-ne-ā′-ris *or* -re,	mo-ne-ā′-tur;
3.	re′-gar,	re-gā′-ris *or* -re,	re-gā′-tur;
4.	au′-di-ar,	au-di-ā′-ris *or* -re,	au-di-ā′-tur;

	We may be loved,	*Ye may be loved,*	*They may be loved.*
P. 1.	a-mē′-mur,	a-mem′-ī-ni,	a-men′-tur.
2.	mo-ne-ā′-mur,	mo-ne-am′-ī-ni,	mo-ne-an′-tur.
3.	re-gā′-mur,	re-gam′-ī-ni,	re-gan′-tur.
4.	au-di-ā′-mur,	au-di-am′-ī-ni,	au-di-an′-tur.

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Term.						
S. 1.	ārer,	arēris *or* arēre,	arētur;	*P.* arēmur,	aremīni,	arentur.
2.	ērer,	erēris *or* erēre,	erētur;	erēmur,	eremīni,	erentur.
3.	ĕrer,	erēris *or* erēre,	erētur;	erēmur,	eremīni,	erentur.
4.	īrer,	irēris *or* irēre,	irētur;	irēmur,	iremīni,	irentur.

	I would be loved,	*Thou wouldst be loved,*	*He would be loved;*
S. 1.	a-mā′-rer,	am-a-rē′-ris *or* -re,	am-a-rē′-tur;
2.	mo-nē′-rer,	mon-e-rē′-ris *or* -re,	mon-e-rē′-tur,
3.	reg′-ĕ-rer,	reg-e-rē′-ris *or* -re,	reg-e-rē′-tur;
4.	au-dī′-rer,	au-di-rē′-ris *or* -re,	au-di-rē′-tur;

	We would be loved,	*Ye would be loved,*	*They would be loved.*
P. 1.	am-a-rē′-mur,	am-a-rem′-ī-ni,	am-a-ren′-tur.
2.	mon-e-rē′-mur,	mon-e-rem′-ī-ni,	mon-e-ren′-tur.
3.	reg-e-rē′-mur,	reg-e-rem′-ī-ni,	reg-e-ren′-tur.
4.	au-di-rē′-mur,	au-di-rem′-ī-ni,	au-di-ren′-tur.

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of the passive voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present subjunctive passive of *amo*, &c.—the imperfect, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the present and imperfect tenses. Write *damno, terreo, scribo,* and *vestio,* in the same tenses.

LESSON 71.

PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

EXERCISES.

(See Lesson 57, N. 1, 2, and 3.)

I. Translate into English—

Vos amemīni. (Less. 57. 2.)
Ut vos amemīni.
Ut ille amētur.
Puer moneātur.
Ut moneremīni.
Ut populus regātur.
Non audirēris.
Audiāmur.
Ut agmen ducātur.
Agmen ne ducātur. (Less. 57. 3.)

Ut liberarēmur.	Liber non legātur.
Puer non terrerētur.	Ut puer monerētur.
Ut latrōnes punirentur.	Ut liberēris.
Ut tu parēris.	Avis liberētur.
Liber legātur.	Puer ne puniātur.

II. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns and verbs in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. Translate into Latin—

That the boy may be loved.	That the army may be led.
Let the boy be loved.	That the book should be read.
He would be advised.	Let us be prepared.
The city could be fortified.	That he may be called.
Could not the city be fortified?	Let the book be read.
Can the kingdom be ruled?	Ye might be wounded.
The lion would not be terrified.	The bird might be freed.

That the robber should be punished.
That we might be heard.

LESSON 72.

PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE THIRD ROOT.

Perfect, *may have been.*

Term.—*S.*	-us, { sim *or* fuĕrim,	-us, { sis *or* fuĕris,	-us, { sit *or* fuĕrit;
P.	-i, { simus *or* fuerīmus,	-i, { sitis *or* fuerītis,	-i, { sint, *or* fuĕrint.

I may have been loved, Thou mayest have been, &c. He may have been, &c.

S. a-mā′-tus, 2. mon′-ī-tus, 3. rec′-tus, 4. au-dī′-tus,	sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim,	a-mā′-tus, mon′-ī-tus, rec′-tus, au-dī′-tus,	sis *or* fu′-ĕ-ris,	a-mā′-tus, mon′-ī-tus, rec′-tus, au-dī′-tus,	sit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;

We may have been, &c. Ye may have been, &c. They may have been, &c.

P. a-mā′-ti, 2. mon′-ī-ti, 3. rec′-ti, 4. au-dī′-ti,	sī′-mus *or* fu-er′-ī-mus,	a-mā′-ti, mon′-ī-ti, rec′-ti, au-dī′-ti,	sī′-tis, *or* fu-er′-ī-tis,	a-mā′-ti, mon′-ī-ti, rec′-ti, au-dī′-ti,	sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Term.—*S.*	-us, { essem *or* fuissem,	-us, { esses *or* fuisses,	-us, { esset *or* fuisset;
P.	-i, { essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	-i, { essētis *or* fuissētis,	-i, { essent *or* fuissent.

I would have been loved, Thou wouldst have been, &c. He would have, &c.

S. a-mā′-tus,	es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem,	a-mā′-tus,	es′-ses *or* fu-is′-ses,	a-mā′-tus,	es′-set *or* fu-is′-set;
2. mon′-ī-tus,		mon′-ī-tus,		mon′-ī-tus,	
3. rec′-tus,		rec′-tus,		rec′-tus,	
4. au-dī′-tus,		au-dī′-tus,		au-dī′-tus,	

We would have been, &c. Ye would have been, &c. They would have, &c.

P. a-mā′-ti,	es-sē′-mus *or* fu-is-sē′-mus.	a-mā′-ti,	es-sē′-tis *or* fu-is-sē′-tis,	a-mā′-ti,	es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.
2. mon′-ī-ti,		mon′-ī-ti,		mon′-ī-ti,	
3. rec′-ti,		rec′-ti,		rec′-ti,	
4. au-dī′-ti,		au-dī′-ti,		au-dī′-ti,	

QUESTIONS.—What tenses of the passive voice, subjunctive mood, are formed from the first root?—from the third root? What tenses of *sum* are joined to the perfect participle, to form the passive voice, subjunctive mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense? Repeat the perfect subjunctive passive of *amo*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of the preceding verbs in the perfect and pluperfect tenses. Write *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

LESSON 73.

PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—THIRD ROOT.

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

Amātus fuĕris.	Ut terrītus sim.
Aves liberātæ essent.	Ut parāti essētis.
Ut ille monītus sit.	Miles non parātus fuisset.
Ut monīti fuissēmus.	Ut illi vulnerāti sint.
Ut agmen ductum esset.	Ille audītus fuisset.
Non audīti essētis.	Vox audīta fuisset.
Latrōnes punīti fuĕrint.	Ut vocāti essēmus.
Non terrīti essētis.	Audīti essētis.

II. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns, and verbs, in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. Translate into Latin—

Thou shouldst have been freed.
He should not have been terrified.
Would not the book have been finished?
The book would have been finished.
The soldier may have been wounded.
The army may have been led.
The city might have been fortified.
The girl may have been called.

LESSON 74.

PASSIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Term.

	S.	*P.*
1.	āre *or* ātor; ātor;	amīni, antor.
2.	ēre *or* ētor, ētor;	emīni, entor.
3.	ĕre *or* ĭtor, ĭtor;	imĭni, untor.
4.	īre *or* ītor, ītor;	imĭni, iuntor.

	Be thou loved,	*Let him be loved;*	*Be ye loved,*	*Let them be loved.*
1.	a-mā′-re *or* a-mā′-tor,	a-mā′-tor;	a-mam′-ĭ-ni,	a-man′-tor.
2.	mo-nē′-re *or* mo-nē′-tor,	mo-nē′-tor;	mo-nem′-ĭ-ni,	mo-nen′-tor.
3.	reg′-ĕ-re *or* reg′-ĭ-tor,	reg′-ĭ-tor;	re-gim′-ĭ-ni,	re-gun′-tor.
4.	au-dī′-re *or* au-dī′-tor,	au-dī′-tor;	au-dim′-ĭ-ni,	au-di-un′-tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.		Perfect.		Future.	
To be loved.	*Term.*	*To have been loved.*		*To be about to be loved.*	
1. a-mā′-ri,	āri.	a-mā′-tus,		a-mā′-tum,	
2. mo-nē′-ri,	ēri.	mon′-ĭ-tus,	es′-se *or*	mon′-ĭ-tum,	ĭ′-ri.
3. re′-gi,	i.	rec′-tus,	fu-is′-se.	rec′-tum,	
4. au-dī′-ri,	īri.	au-dī′-tus,		au-dī′-tum,	

PARTICIPLES.		SUPINE.
Perfect.	Future.	Latter.
Loved or *having been loved.*	*To be loved.*	*To be loved.*
a-mā′-tus, a, um.	a-man′-dus, a, um.	a-mā′-tu.
mon′-ĭ-tus, a, um.	mo-nen′-dus, a, um.	mon′-ĭ-tu.
rec′-tus, a, um.	re-gen′-dus, a, um.	rec′-tu.
au-dī′-tus, a, um.	au-di-en′-dus, a, um.	au-dī′-tu.

NOTE 1.—Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two vowels in the beginning of the termination, wherever they occur in the fourth conjugation, and they are the same in both conjugations; as, *capio, ĕre;—capiuntur, capiuntur, capiēbar*, &c.

NOTE 2.—The future infinitive passive consists of the former supine and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, to go. L. 80.

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the imperative formed? What are the terminations of the imperative passive, in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? Repeat, &c.

From which root is the present infinitive passive formed ? What is its termination in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? Of what is the perfect infinitive passive compounded ? Repeat, &c. How is the future infinitive passive formed ? Repeat, &c.

From which root is the perfect participle derived ? What is its termination ? From which root is the future passive participle derived ? What is its termination in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? How is the latter supine formed ? Repeat the perfect participle, &c.

EXERCISES.

PASSIVE IMPERATIVE.

I. Parāre.	Monemīni.	Libri leguntor.
Puer vocātor.	Jungimīni.	Fures[a] puniuntor.
Homines liberantor.	Parātor. (*3d pers.*)	Vox auditor.

II. Let him be freed. Let them be prepared.
Let the boy be advised. Let the boy be called.
Let them be ruled. Be thou ruled.
Let the city be fortified. Be ye prepared.
Let the soldiers be led. Let the books be finished.

(a) *Fur, furis*, m. a thief.

LESSON 75.

DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice of active verbs, but they have also the participles, gerunds, and supine of the active voice.

EXAMPLES.

Miror, mirāri, mirātus sum,	*to admire.*
Criminor, crimināri, criminātus sum,	*to accuse.*
Polliceor, pollicēri, pollicĭtus sum,	*to promise.*
Vereor, verēri, verĭtus sum,	*to fear.*
Loquor, loqui, locūtus sum,	*to speak.*
Utor, uti, usus sum, (Less. 49, N. 2,)	*to use.*
Mentior, mentīri, mentītus sum,	*to lie.*
Partior, partīri, partītus sum,	*to divide.*

NOTE.—Some deponent verbs in the second, third, and fourth conjugations are irregular.

EXERCISES.

I. Ille mirātus est.	Verāmur vos.
Me crimināris.	Illi locūti sunt.
Mirāmur.	Illi usi erant.
Pollicĭti erāmus.	Ille mentītur.

II. Change the numbers of the pronouns and verbs in the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. We have divided.	We will promise.
They might use.	Ye will have spoken.
Speak thou.	They have lied.
Let him fear.	Ye were accusing me.

FREQUENTATIVES, &c.

2. Frequentatives denote the repetition, inceptives the beginning, and diminutives a small degree of the action denoted by their primitive verbs; as,

Clamito, to cry frequently; *calesco*, to grow hot; and *cantillo*, to sing a little; from *clamo*, to cry; *caleo*, to be hot; and *canto*, to sing.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

3. The principal irregular verbs are *sum*, *volo*, *fero*, *fio*, *eo*, and their compounds.

4. The compounds of *sum*, except *prosum* and *possum*, are conjugated like the simple verb. (Less. 62, &c.)

5. *Prosum*, to be profitable, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

Ind. Pres. Pro'-sum, prod'-es, prod'-est, &c.
— *Imperf.* prod'-ĕ-ram, prod'-ĕ-ras, prod'-ĕ-rat.

QUESTIONS.—What is a deponent verb? Less. 46, 7. How are deponent verbs conjugated? Repeat the principal parts of *miror*, &c. What are frequentative verbs?—inceptives?—diminutives? What are the principal irregular verbs? How are the compounds of *sum* conjugated? What peculiarity has *prosum*?

EXERCISE.

Write down the principal parts of *adsum*, to be present. Conjugate *prosum* in the indicative future—in the future-perfect—in the present infinitive.

LESSON 76.

POSSUM.

Possum, I can, or I am able, is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*.

When compounded, both parts undergo some change:—

1. *Potis* becomes *pot*, and before *s* is changed to *pos*.
2. *Es* is dropped in *esse*, *essem*, &c., derived from the first root of *sum*.
3. *F* is dropped in the second root; as, *potui* for *potfui*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*
Pos'-sum,	pos'-se,	pot'-u-i.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*can* or *am able.*	*S.* pos′-sum,	pot′-es,	pot′-est ;
		P. pos′-sŭ-mus,	pot-es′-tis,	pos′-sunt.
Imperf.	*could*, or *was able*,	pot′-ĕ-ram,	pot′-ĕ-ras,	pot′-ĕ-rat, &c.
Fut.	*shall* or *will be*, &c.	pot′-ĕ-ro,	pot′-ĕ-ris,	pot′-ĕ-rit, &c.
Perf.	*could*, or *have*, &c.	pot′-u-i,	pot′-u-is′-ti,	pot′-u-it, &c.
Plup.	*had been able*,	pot-u′-ĕ-ram,	pot-u′-ĕ-ras,	pot-u′-ĕ-rat, &c.
F. Perf.	*shall* or *will have*, &c.	pot-u′-ĕ-ro,	pot-u′-ĕ-ris,	pot-u′-ĕ-rit, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*may be able*,	pos′-sim, pos′-sis, &c.
Imp.	*might*, &c., *be able*,	pos′-sem, pos′-ses, &c.
Perf.	*may have been able*,	pot-u′-ĕ-rim, &c.
Plup.	*might*, &c., *have been able*,	pot-u-is′-sem, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. pos′-se. *Perf.* pot-u-is′-se.

The rest is wanting.

QUESTIONS.—Of what is *possum* compounded? What changes does *potis* undergo? What changes occur in the first root of *sum*?—in the second root? What are the principal parts of *possum*? Repeat the indicative mood present tense, &c.—the subjunctive mood present tense, &c.—the infinitive mood present tense, &c.

EXERCISES.

I. Possŭmus. Possītis.
Leōnes possunt. Homĭnes possent.
Potuĕras. Potuissētis.

II. We could. (*perf.*) He can.
Ye might have been able. Thou couldst. (*imperf.*)
They may be able. Ye had been able.

LESSON 77.

Nolo is compounded of *non* and *volo* ; *Malo* of *magis* and *volo*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
Vo′-lo,	vel′-le,	vol′-u-i,	*to be willing* or *to wish*.
No′-lo,	nol′-le,	nol′-u-i,	*to be unwilling*.
Ma′-lo,	mal′-le,	mal′-u-i,	*to be more willing, to choose rather*.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S.	Vo′-lo,	vis,	vult ;	*P.* vol′-ŭ-mus,	vul′-tis,	vo′-lunt.
	No′-lo,	non vis,	non vult ;	nol′-ŭ-mus,	non vultis,	no′-lunt.
	Ma′-lo,	ma′-vis,	ma′-vult ;	mal′-ŭ-mus,	ma-vul′-tis,	ma′-lunt.

Imp.	vo-lē′-bam.	no-lē′-bam.	ma-lē′-bam.
Fut.	vo′-lam, es, &c.	no′-lam.	ma′-lam.
Perf.	vol′-u-i.	nol′-u-i.	mal′-u-i.
Plup.	vo-lu′-ĕ-ram,	no-lu′-ĕ-ram.	ma-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Fut. Perf.	vo-lu′-ĕ-ro.	no-lu′-ĕ-ro.	ma-lu′-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	ve′-lim,	ve′-lis,	ve′-lit;	*P.* ve-lī′-mus,	ve-lī′-tis,	ve′-lint.
	no′-lim,	no′-lis,	no′-lit;	no-lī′-mus,	no-lī′-tis,	no′-lint.
	ma′-lim,	ma′-lis,	ma′-lit;	ma-lī′-mus,	ma-lī′-tis,	ma′-lint.

Imperfect.

S.	vel′-lem,	vel′-les,	vel′-let;	*P.* vel-lē′-mus,	vel-lē′-tis,	vel′-lent.
	nol′-lem,	nol′-les,	nol′-let;	nol-lē′-mus,	nol-lē′-tis,	nol′-lent.
	mal′-lem,	mal′-les,	mal′-let;	mal-lē′-mus,	mal-lē′-tis,	mal′-lent.

Perf.	vo-lu′-ĕ-rim.	no-lu′-ĕ-rim.	ma-lu′-ĕ-rim.
Plup.	vol-u-is′-sem.	nol-u-is′-sem.	mal-u-is′-sem.

IMPERATIVE.

S. no′-li *or* no-lī′-to; *P.* no-lī′-te *or* nol-i-tō′-te.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	vel′-le.	nol′-le.	mal′-le.
Perf.	vol-u-is′-se.	nol-u-is′-se.	mal-u-is′-se.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. vo′-lens. no′-lens.

QUESTIONS.—Of what is *nolo* compounded?—*malo*? What root is wanting in *volo*, *nolo* and *malo*? Give the principal parts of each. Repeat each in the present, &c. Which of these verbs want the imperative? Which, the present participle? What parts are wanting in all these verbs?

EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of *volo* in the sense "to wish," in all the moods and tenses.

LESSON 78.

Fero, to bear, is thus conjugated:—

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
Pres. Indic.	Fe′-ro,	*Pres. Indic.*	Fe′-ror,
Pres. Infin.	fer′-re,	*Pres. Infin.*	fer′-rī,
Perf. Indic.	tu′-li,	*Perf. Part.*	la′-tus.
Supine.	la′-tum.		

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S.	fĕ′-ro,	fers, fert;	*S.*	fĕ′-ror,	fer′-ris *or* -re, fer′-tur;
P.	fer′-ĭ-mus,	fer′-tis, fĕ′-runt.	*P.*	fer′-ĭ-mur,	fe-rim′-ĭ-ni, fĕ-run′-tur.

Imp.	fe-rē′-bam.	*Imp.*	fe-rē′-bar.
Fut.	fe′-ram, -res, &c.	*Fut.*	fe′-rar, -rē′-ris, *or* -rē′-re, &c.
Perf.	tu′-li.	*Perf.*	la′-tus sum, *or* fu′-i.
Plup.	tu′-lĕ-ram.	*Plup.*	la′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram.
Fut. Perf.	tu′-lĕ-ro.	*F. Perf.*	la′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fe′-ram, -ras, &c.	*Pres.*	fe′-rar, -rā′-ris *or* -rā′-re, &c.
Imp.	fer′-rem, -res, &c.	*Imp.*	fer′-rer, -rē′-ris *or* -rē′-re, &c.
Perf.	tu′-lĕ-rim.	*Perf.*	la′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim.
Plup.	tu-lis′-sem.	*Plup.*	la′-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	fer, *or* fer′-to, fer′-to;	*S.*	fer′-re *or* fer′-tor, fer′-tor;
P.	fer′-te *or* fer-tō-te, fe-run′-to.	*P.*	fe-rim′-ĭ-ni, fe-run′-tor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	fer′-re.	*Pres.*	fer′-ri.
Perf.	tu-lis′-se.	*Perf.*	la′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se.
Fut.	la-tū′-rus es′-se.	*Fut.*	la′-tum ī′-ri.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	fe′-rens.	*Perf.*	la′-tus.
Fut.	la-tū′-rus.	*Fut.*	fe-ren′-dus.

GERUND.

fe-ren′-di, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. la′-tum. *Latter.* la′-tu.

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal parts of *fero* in the active voice?—in the passive? What is the first root?—the second?—the third? Repeat the present indicative active, &c.

LESSON 79.

Fio **is used as the passive of** ***facio*****, to make. It is thus conjugated :—**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
fi′-o,	fi′-ĕ-ri,	fac′-tus,	*to be made* or *to become.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	*S.* fi'-o,	fis,	fit;	*P.* fi'-mus,	fi'-tis, fi'-unt.
Imp.	fi-ē'-bam.			*Plup.*	fac'-tus e'-ram, &c.
Fut.	fi'-am, -es, &c.			*Fut. Perf.*	fac'-tus e'-ro, &c.
Perf.	fac'-tus sum *or* fu'-i.				

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fi'-am, -as, &c.	*Perf.*	fac'-tus sim, &c.
Imp.	fi'-ĕ-rem.	*Plup.*	fac'-tus es'-sem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S. fi *or* fi'-to, fi'-*to*;
P. fi'-te *or* fi-tō'-te, fi-un'-ţo.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fi'-ĕ-ri.
Perf. fac'-tus es'-se *or* fu-is'-se.
Fut. fac'-tum i'-ri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. fac'-tus.
Fut. fa-ci-en'-dus.

SUPINE.

Latter. fac'-tu.

NOTE.—*Audeo*, *gaudeo* and *soleo* of the second conjugation, and *fido* with its compounds of the third, are called *neuter-passive* verbs. Like *fio*, in the tenses usually formed from the second root, they have the passive form.

QUESTIONS.—Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? What are its principal parts?—its roots? Repeat the indicative present, &c. What verbs are called neuter passives? In what respect do they differ from other verbs?

LESSON 80.

Eo, to go, is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Perf. Part.*
E'-o.	i'-re.	i'-vi.	i'-tum.

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	*S.* e'-o,	is,	it;	*P.* i'-mus,	i'-tis, e'-unt.
Imp.	*S.* i'-bam,	i'-bas,	i'-bat;	*P.* i'-bā-mus,	i-bā'-tis, i'-bant.
Fut.	*S.* i'-bo,	i'-bis,	i'-bit;	*P.* ib'-ĭ-mus,	ib'-ĭ-tis, i'-bunt.

Perf. i'-vi. *Plup.* iv'-ĕ-ram. *Fut. Perf.* iv'-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	*S.* e'-am,	e'-as,	e'-at;	*P.* e-ā'-mus,	e-ā'-tis, e'-ant.
Imp.	*S.* i'-rem,	i'-res,	i'-ret;	*P.* i-rē'-mus,	i-rē'-tis, i'-rent.

Perf. iv'-ĕ-rim. *Plup.* i-vis'-sem.

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
S. ī *or* ī'-to, ī'-to;	*Pres.* ī'-re.
P. ī'-te *or* ī-tō'-te, e-un'-to.	*Perf.* ī-vis'-se.
	Fut. ī-tū'-rus es'-se.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
Pres. ī'-ens, (*gen.* e-un'-tis.)	e-un'-di, &c.
Fut. ī-tū'-rus.	

NOTE I.—*Eo* has no first root.

NOTE 2.—The compounds of *eo* generally omit *v* in the second root; as, *abeo, abīre, abii*, to go away.

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal parts of *eo*? What are its second and third roots? Repeat the indicative present, &c. What is said of the compounds of *eo*?

LESSON 81.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

2. The following verbs are defective in several of the tenses, viz.:

Odi,	*I hate.*	Aio,	*I say.*
Cœpi,	*I have begun.*	Inquam,	
Memĭni,	*I remember.*	Fore,	*to be about to be.*

3. *Odi, cœpi*, and *memĭni*, want all the tenses derived from the first root.

EXC.—*Memĭni* has in the imperative *mementō* and *mentōte*.

4. *Odi* and *memĭni* have in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect, the sense of the present, imperfect, and future.

5. *Fore* is thus conjugated:—

Sub. Imperf. *S.* Fo'-rem, fo'-res, fo'-ret; *P.* —, —, fo'-rent.
Inf. Pres. fo'-re.

Forem has the same meaning as *essem*.

QUESTIONS.—What are defective verbs? Which are the principal defective verbs? What tenses are wanting in *odi, cœpi*, and *memĭni*? In what sense are *odi* and *memĭni* used in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect? How is *fore* conjugated? What meaning has *forem*?

Among defective verbs are to be reckoned *impersonal* or *third-personal verbs*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

6. Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject; as,

Licet, it is lawful.

7. Impersonal verbs are of two kinds, according as they have the *active* or the *passive* form.

8. For the most part in the active, and sometimes in the passive form, the subject is an infinitive or subjunctive clause; as,

Me delectat *scribĕre*. *To write* delights me.

9. In English the pronoun *it* commonly stands before the active form, and sometimes also before the passive form, representing the clause which forms the real subject; as,

It delights me *to write*.

10. Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive form, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

Illi pugnant, or *Pugnātur ab illis*, They fight. *Illi quærunt*, or *quæritur ab illis*, They ask, or, The inquiry is made by them.

NOTE 1.—When the impersonal verb consists of the participle in *dus* with *sum*, the agent is in the dative. L. 112. 2.

11. In the passive form the agent with *a* or *ab* is very often omitted, and is to be supplied as the connection requires. It is commonly *nobis*, *illis*, *hominĭbus*, *militĭbus*, &c.

12. In English the subject of the passive form is commonly either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

Pugnātum est, *We*, *they*, &c., fought; or, The *battle* was fought. Concurritur, The *people* run together, or, There is a *concourse*. *Moriendum est*, We must die, or, Death is inevitable.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes the English subject in both forms of the impersonal is an oblique case following the verb in Latin; as, *Miseret me*, I pity. *Favetur mihi*, I am favored.

13. In the passive form of the impersonal verb the participle is always in the neuter gender.

QUESTIONS.—What are impersonal verbs? Of how many kinds are impersonal verbs? In the active form, what is the subject? What English pronoun represents the subjective clause? How may most neuter verbs be used in the passive form? In what case is the agent of a participle in *dus* with *sum*? What is often omitted in the passive form? What words may be supplied? What is the subject of the passive form in English? What other word is sometimes the subject in English? In what gender is the participle in the passive form?

LESSON 82.

PARTICLES.

1. Particles are of four kinds—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

Bene *dixit*, He spoke *well*.

3. Some adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives, are compared.

4. Adverbs are compared like the adjectives from which they are derived.

5. Comparatives end in *iùs*, superlatives in *issimè* or *imè*; as,

Durè, (hardly,) *duriùs*, *durissimè*; *bene* (well,) *meliùs*, *optimè*.

6. Adverbs are divided into various classes, according to their significations; as, Adverbs of *place*, *order*, *time*, *manner*, *quality*, *negation*, *interrogation*, *likeness*, &c.

PREPOSITIONS.

7. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between the noun or pronoun, before which it stands, and some preceding word; as,

Venit ad *urbem*, He came *to* the city.

In this sentence *ad*, to, expresses the relation in which *urbem*, the city, stands to *venit*, came.

CONJUNCTIONS.

8. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or sentences.

Conjunctions are divided into various classes; as,

(1.) Copulatives; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *etiam*, *-que*, *quoque*, and *neque* or *nec*.

(2.) Disjunctives; as, *aut*, *seu*, *sive*, *-ve*, *vel*, and *neve* or *neu*.

(3.) Adversatives; as, *at*, *atqui*, *sed*, *tamen*, *vero*, &c.

(4.) Enclitics; as, *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, which are always annexed to another word; as, *homĭnes*, *puerīque*, men and boys; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

INTERJECTIONS.

8. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion; as *ecce!* lo! behold! *eheu!* alas!

QUESTIONS.—How are particles divided? What is an adverb? Are adverbs compared? How are they compared? How do comparatives end?—superlatives? Compare *durē—bene*. What is a preposition? What is a conjunction? What are the four classes of conjunctions mentioned in this lesson? What are the enclitic conjunctions? How are they used? What is an interjection?

LESSON 83.

OF SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is a thought expressed in words.

2. Sentences are either *simple* or *compound*.

3. A simple sentence or proposition consists of two parts,—a *subject* and a *predicate*.

4. The subject is that of which something is affirmed.

5. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus in the simple sentence, *Cæsar conquered Gaul*, *Cæsar* is the subject, and *conquered Gaul* the predicate. In the sentence, *Gaul was conquered by Cæsar*, *Gaul* is the subject, and *was conquered by Cæsar* is the predicate.

NOTE.—When the sentence is interrogative, conditional, or imperative, the subject is that concerning which the question is asked or the supposition made, or the person to whom the command is given; the predicate is that which is asked, supposed, or commanded.

Thus, in the simple interrogative sentence, *Has the messenger arrived? the messenger* is the subject, and *has arrived* the predicate.

QUESTIONS.—What is a sentence? Into what two classes are sentences divisible? Of what does a simple sentence consist? What is the subject of a sentence?—the predicate?

EXERCISE.

Point out the subject and the predicate in each of the following sentences:—

John writes. Have you read the letter?
We are reading. If he should come.
Hear thou my request. We have been admonished.
Rome was founded by Romulus and his brother Remus, sons of Rhea Silvia, the daughter of Numitor.

LESSON 84.

DIVISION OF SUBJECTS AND PREDICATES.

1. Subjects and predicates are either *grammatical* or *logical*, *simple* or *compound*.

GRAMMATICAL SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

2. A grammatical subject consists of one word only—a noun, either singular or plural, or some word standing for a noun.

3. A grammatical predicate consists of a verb alone, or of the verb *to be*, followed by a noun, pronoun, adjective, or participle, referring to the subject.

The following are examples of grammatical subjects and predicates:—

John writes. You have been commended.
We are reading. Cicero was eloquent.
He is admired. Kings are men.
Go thou. Should he come.
Will he go? May he live!

NOTE.—In English the auxiliaries are considered as constituting a part of their verb. In the preceding examples therefore the predicates, "are reading," "is admired," "will go," "have been commended," &c., are considered as single verbs.

QUESTIONS.—How are subjects and predicates divided? Of what does a grammatical subject consist?—a grammatical predicate? How are the English auxiliaries considered?

EXERCISE.

Write ten English sentences containing grammatical subjects and predicates.

LESSON 85.

LOGICAL SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. A grammatical subject or predicate, with one or more words joined with it to explain or modify it, is called the *logical subject* or the *logical predicate.*

(*a*) The sentence, *Birds fly*, contains only a grammatical subject and predicate.

(*b*) In the sentence, *Some birds fly swiftly*, the grammatical subject and predicate are both modified, the former by *some*, and the latter by *swiftly*.

(*c*) In the sentence, *Some large birds fly very swiftly*, the grammatical subject and predicate are still further modified, the former by *large*, and the latter by *very*.

(*d*) In the sentence, *Some large birds of prey, inhabiting the woods and mountains, fly very swiftly, when pursuing other birds*, the subject and predicate are still further extended, and additions may in all cases be made to each, until it expresses precisely that idea which is present to the mind of the writer or speaker.

QUESTIONS.—What is a logical subject?—a logical predicate?

EXERCISES.

I. Point out, first, the grammatical subject in each of the following sentences; secondly, the logical subject; thirdly, the grammatical predicate; fourthly, the logical predicate:—

The horse started suddenly.
Many fishes are swimming in the sea.
An apple fell from the tree.
The east wind has continued many days without interruption.
The tallest man present was chosen king.
Great men are not always wise.

II. Write a sentence containing only a grammatical subject and predicate. Convert these into a logical subject and predicate by the addition of one or more explanatory or restrictive words to each.

LESSON 86.

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SUBJECTS AND PREDICATES.

1. When a sentence contains but a single subject, whether it be grammatical or logical, it is called a *simple subject.*

2. A *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects, having but one predicate.

In the sentences, *Man is mortal, All men are mortal*, the subjects are simple.

In the sentences, *The moon and stars were shining, Grammar and music were united*, the subjects are compound.

3. When a sentence contains but a single predicate, whether it be grammatical or logical, it is called a *simple predicate.*

4. A *compound predicate* consists of two or more simple predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

He reads and writes.
They are neither loved nor trusted.
The cities and villages of the enemy were plundered and burnt.

QUESTIONS.—What is a simple subject?—a simple predicate?—a logical subject?—a logical predicate?—a compound subject?—a compound predicate?

EXERCISE.

Write four sentences having compound subjects but simple predicates; four having compound predicates but simple subjects; and four whose subjects and predicates shall both be compound.

LESSON 87.

I. ANALYSIS.

The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate and noting their several modifications.

GENERAL RULES FOR THE ANALYSIS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate.

2. Point out the grammatical subject and the word or words *directly* modifying it.

3. Point out successively the words which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on.

4. Point out the grammatical predicate and the word or words *directly* modifying it.

5. Point out successively the words which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on.

II. PARSING.

Parsing consists in resolving a sentence into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing each word to its root, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

GENERAL RULES OF PARSING.

1. Name the part of speech, including the subdivision, to which it belongs.

2. If it is an *inflected* word, name its root, decline, compare, or conjugate it.

3. Point out its agreement, or the word on which its case depends.

4. If it is a conjunction, tell what it connects.

5. If it is an adverb, tell what it qualifies.

6. Give the rule of formation or construction applicable in each case.

NOTE 1.—The words constituting a sentence are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

NOTE 2.—For examples of Analysis and Parsing, see Less. 90, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is meant by the analysis of a proposition? What is the first general rule of analysis?—the second?—the third?—the fourth?—the fifth? What is parsing? What is the first general rule of parsing? If it is an inflected word what is next to be done? What is to be done after naming its root, declining, comparing or conjugating it? If it is a conjunction, what is to be told respecting it? If an adverb, what? What is the last rule for parsing?

LESSON 88.

I. ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

Bene mones, You advise well. *Valde bene*, Very well.
Longè dissimilis, Very unlike.

REMARK 1.—Adverbs sometimes also modify nouns, adjective pronouns, and prepositions.

REMARK 2.—An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it modifies.

II. CONJUNCTIONS.

2. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, and some others, connect words which are in the same construction.

REMARK 1.—Hence conjunctions connect—

1. Nouns or pronouns which are in the same case.
2. Adjectives agreeing with the same noun or pronoun.
3. Verbs in the same mood.
4. Adverbs and prepositions relating to the same words.

REMARK 2.—The same conjunctions connect *sentences* also, whose construction is the same.

REMARK 3.—Conjunctions are often omitted.

QUESTIONS.—What is the general rule for the construction of adverbs? What other parts of speech are sometimes modified by adverbs? What is the usual position of an adverb? What is the general rule for the construction of copulative and disjunctive conjunctions? How does this rule apply to nouns?—to adjectives?—to verbs?—to adverbs and prepositions? What besides single words do the same conjunctions connect? Are conjunctions always expressed?

NOTE.—Sentences illustrating the construction of adverbs and conjunctions will be found in the subsequent lessons.

LESSON 89.

APPOSITION.

1. A noun annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

2. A noun in apposition to two or more nouns is usually plural.

3. A whole is sometimes denoted by the former noun, and its parts, by nouns or pronouns in apposition to it.

REMARK.—In cases of apposition the annexed noun is generally added for the sake of *explanation* or *description*, but sometimes for the purpose of denoting *character* or *purpose*, or the *time*, *cause*, *reason*, &c., of an action.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English—

Cicĕro orātor.	Nos consŭles.
Cicerōnis oratōris.	Nostrûm consŭlum.
Cicerōni oratōri.	Nobis consulibus.

Marcus Antonius et Caius Cassius, tribūni plebis.
In fluminĭbus Rheno et Danubio.

Translate into Latin—

For-Cato the-Censor.	Of-Ovid the-poet.
By-Cato the-Censor.	Ovid the-poet. (*acc.*)
To-Brutus the-leader.	Of-Brutus and Cassius, leaders.
Brutus, leader. (*voc.*)	For-Brutus and Cassius, leaders.
By-Brutus the-leader.	To-Romulus and Remus, brothers.
Romulus and Remus,	Marcus Tullius Cicero. (*voc.*)
brothers. (*voc.*)	Alexander (when) a boy.

The names of-the-brothers, Anăpus and Amphinŏmus.

VOCABULARY.

Anăpus, i.	Leader, *dux*, *ducis*.
Amphinŏmus, i.	Brother, *frater*, *tris*.
Alexander, dri.	Poet, *pŏēta*, *æ*.
Cato, ōnis.	Friend, *amīcus*, *i*.
Censor, ōris.	And, *et*.
Brutus, i.	Ovid, *Ovidius*, *i*.
Cassius, i.	Name, *nomen*, *nomĭnis*.
Marcus, i.	Boy, *puer*, *ĕri*.
Tullius, i.	

LESSON 90.

SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.

1. The noun or pronoun, which is the subject of a finite verb, is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1.—(*a*) A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

(*b*) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative.

2. A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

NOTE 2.—The nominatives *ego*, *nos*, *tu*, and *vos*, are commonly omitted.

NOTE 3.—The verb, especially the verb *sum*, is sometimes omitted.

3. When the subject is compound, the verb is commonly plural.

REMARK 1.—If the nominatives, of which a compound subject is composed, are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third.

REMARK 2.—Sometimes when the subject is compound, the verb agrees with the nearest nominative.

4. A collective noun in the singular has sometimes a plural verb, especially when the noun is not expressed in the same clause, but in a preceding one.

5. An infinitive, or one or more clauses may be the subject, and the verb will then be in the singular.

6. Sometimes the subject, and sometimes the verb are to be supplied.

QUESTIONS.—In what case is the subject of a finite verb? What is a finite verb? What is the rule for the agreement of a verb with its subject-nominative? What nominatives are commonly omitted? Why? (see L. 51, Rem. 4.) Of what number is the verb, when the subject is compound? What is the rule for the verb, when the compound subject is of different persons? With what does the verb sometimes agree, when the subject is compound? What is the rule for the verb of a collective noun?—for the verb whose subject is an infinitive, or one or more clauses? What are sometimes to be supplied?

EXERCISES.

I. Avis volat.	Curris.	Arbor floret.
Aves volant.	Currĭtis.	Arbŏres florent.
Dormio. (N. 2.)	Leo rugit.	Hirundĭnes migrant.
Dormīmus.	Leōnes rugiunt.	Amabimĭni.

II. Pater et[a] filius amantur.
Ego atque[a] tu µnà[b] erāmus.
Turba ruunt.
Tu et Caius scribētis.
Vos et senātus jussit.
Pars monent.

(a) Less. 88, 2. (b) Less. 88, 1, & R. 2.

III. Write a Latin translation of the following English sentences:—

The boy weeps. *Puer fleo.*
The boys weep.
The horse runs. *Equus curro.*
We shall run.
You and I are warm. *Caleo.*
Ye sleep. *Dormio.*
Thou wast sleeping.
I have heard. *Audio.*
Ye will advise. *Moneo.*
The crowd come and go. *Turba venio eoque.*
The horses were running.

IV. Swallows fly.
The lion sleeps.
The horse and the lion will run.
A part sleep.
Caius[a] and I have written.
I have been advising.[b]
The father was weeping.
I have been advised.
Caius had heard.
We, the consuls, have commanded.

(a) See the order of the subjects in Exercise 2. (b) Lesson 47, N. 1.

In the exercises contained in this and the subsequent lessons,

each sentence is to be first *translated*, secondly, *analyzed*, and thirdly, *parsed:* e. g.

Avis volat, The bird flies.

ANALYSIS.—*Avis* is the subject. *Volat* is the predicate.

Q. Why is *avis* the subject? A. Because something is affirmed respecting it, and "The subject is that of which something is affirmed." Less. 83, 4.—Q. Why is *volat* the predicate? A. Because "The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject." Less. 83, 5.

PARSING.—*Avis* is a common noun, Nom. and Voc. *avis*, Gen. *avis*, of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number third person, and is nominative to *volat*. Less. 90, 1. (The passages referred to are to be repeated.)

Q. Why is *avis* a noun? A. Because it is a name, and "A noun is," &c. Less. 5, 1.—Q. Why is it a common noun? A. Because it is the name of a class of objects, and "A common noun is," &c. Less. 5, 3.—Q. Why is *avis* of the third declension? A. Because its genitive singular ends in *is*, and "The termination of the genitive singular," &c. Less. 7, 4.—Q. Why is it of the feminine gender? A. Because its nominative ends in *is*, and "Nouns not increasing in *e-s*," &c. Less. 15, 1.—Q. Why is it in the singular number? A. Because, "The singular number denotes," &c. Less. 5, 10.—Q. Why is it of the third person? A. Because it denotes a thing spoken of, and "Nouns and pronouns," &c. Less. 6, 9.

Volat is a neuter verb, from *volo*, *volāre*, *volāvi*, *volātum*, of the first conjugation. It is found in the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, (*volo*, *volas*, *volat*,) in the third person singular, agreeing with *avis*. "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

Q. Why is *volo* a verb? A. Because it expresses the action of its subject, *avis*, and "A verb is a word," &c. Less. 46, 1. Why a neuter verb? A. Because it makes complete sense with its subject, and "A neuter verb is one," &c. Less. 46, 4.—Q. Why is it of the first conjugation? A. Because it has *a* long before *re* in the infinitive, and "The conjugations may be distinguished," &c. Less. 48, 3.—Q. What are its roots? A. *vol*, *volāv*, *volat*.—Q. Why is it in the indicative mood? A. Because "The indicative asserts an action." Less. 47, 2.—Q. Why in the present tense? A. Because "The present tense represents," &c. Less. 47, 6.—Q. Why is it in the third person? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is of the third person, and "Person in verbs is," &c. Less. 47, 12.—Q. Why is it in the singular number? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is of the singular number, and "Number in verbs is," &c. Less. 47, 14.

NOTE.—After a little experience in parsing, it will in general be found unnecessary to mention the *person* of a noun, except in the few cases in which it is of the first or second person.

LESSON 91.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives are sometimes used as epithets; as, The blue sky: and sometimes as attributes; as, The sky is blue.

2. An adjective belonging to two or more nouns is put in the plural.

NOTE 2.—If the nouns are of different genders, and denote things *having life*, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; but if they denote things *without life*, the adjective is generally neuter.

NOTE 3.—The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun.

3. An adjective qualifying a *collective* noun in the singular is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

Supplex turba erant tuti, The suppliant crowd were safe.

4. An adjective in the masculine gender often agrees with some case of *homo* or of its plural *homines* understood; as,

Boni sunt rari, Good (men) are scarce.

NOTE 4.—With the possessive adjective pronouns the noun to be supplied is often *amīci*, friends; *milites*, soldiers; or *cives*, fellow-citizens or countrymen.

5. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, the word *thing* or *things* being supplied in English; as,

Labor omnia vincit, Labor overcomes all (things.)

6. The possessive adjective pronouns are often understood in Latin, where they must be supplied in English; as,

Ego et pater, (My) father and I.

7. An adjective may agree with an infinitive or a clause used substantively, and is then put in the neuter gender; as,

Nunquam est utile peccāre, To do wrong is never useful.

8. Adjectives signifying *first, last, highest, lowest, extreme, middle, innermost, outermost*, and a few others, may often be translated the first *part*, &c., as *Summa ārbor*, The highest part, or, The top of the tree.

9. An adjective agreeing with a noun may sometimes be translated by an adverb qualifying a verb, as, *Ver primus veniet*, Spring will come first.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What are the two ways in which an adjective may be used? Of what number is an adjective belonging to two or more nouns? What is the rule for the gender of an adjective belonging to two or more nouns? With what does the adjective in such case often

agree? What is the rule for an adjective qualifying a collective noun? With what word understood does a masculine adjective often agree? What is often to be supplied with possessive adjective pronouns? How is a neuter adjective without a noun often used? What adjectives are often understood in Latin? In what gender is an adjective which agrees with an infinitive or a clause? How may adjectives signifying *first, last,* &c. often be translated? Like what other part of speech may an adjective sometimes be translated?

EXERCISES.

To be translated, analyzed, and parsed.

I. Voluptas nimia nocet.
Anīma immortālis est.
Mora non est tuta.
Frigīda[a] nox fuit.
Iter tutum non fuit.
Dulcis est libertas.
Æstas torrīda venĕrat.
Media nox erat.

II. Suprēmi montes visi sunt.
Dies fuisset serēna.
Bonus puer discit.
Timīdi lepŏres fugiunt.
Velŏces canes sequuntur.
Fessus viātor sedēbat.
Meus equus valde fatigātur.
Superbi homĭnes cadunt.

(*a*) A predicate adjective with *sum*, &c., often stands before its noun.

III. Altæ turres cadent.
Tui fratres laudāti sunt.
Avārus nunquam est contentus.
Cæsar suos[b] misit.

Mors est certa.
Humīles casæ stabunt.
Celer equus vincet.
Dulcia delectant.

(*b*) See Lesson 96, 1.

IV. Men are mortal.
My friends are dear.
My eyes are deceived.
Our gardens are pleasant.
The war was destructive.
The ripe apples fell.
The great pine is shaken.
(My) father and mother are dead.

Homo sum mortālis.
Meus amīcus sum carus.
Meus ocŭlus fallo.
Noster hortus sum amœnus.
Bellum exitiōsus sum.
Mitis pomum cado.
Agĭto ingens pinus.
Pater et mater sum mortuus.

V. All[a] men are mortal.
I love (my) friends.
The weary[b] will sit.
The good will be happy.[c]
The great pines will fall.
The swift dog followed.

The timid have fled.
May the day be[d] serene.
Was[e] the journey safe.
Is not[f] liberty sweet.
All are content.
(My) brother and sister are dear.
Our house and garden are pleasant.

(*a*) *Omnis.* (*b*) Less. 91, 4. (*c*) *Felix.* (*d*) Less. 64, N. (*e*) Less. 53, 3. (*f*) Less. 53, 4.

EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

Mora non est tuta, Delay is not safe.

ANALYSIS.—*Mora* is the subject: Less. 83, 4. *Non est tuta* is the logical predicate: Less. 85, 1. The grammatical predicate is *est tuta:* (Less. 84, 3:) this is modified by *non.*

PARSING.—*Mora* is a common noun; N. and V. *mora*, G. *moræ*, of the first declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *est:* "The noun or pronoun," &c. Less. 90, 1.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *mora* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the first declension? A. Because its genitive singular ends in *æ*, and "The termination of the genitive singular," &c. Less. 7, 4.—Why feminine? A. Because it is of the first declension, and "Latin nouns of the first declension," &c. Less. 8, 1.

Est is the substantive verb, from *sum, esse, fui, futūrus.* It is found in the indicative mood, present tense, (*sum, es, est,*) in the third person singular, agreeing with *mora;* "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *est* a verb? A. Because it expresses the being of *mora*, and "A verb is a word," &c.—Why the substantive verb? A. Because "*Sum*, I am, when connected with," &c. Less. 62, 1.—Why in the indicative mood? Why in the present tense? What is the first root of *sum*?—the second?—the third?

Non is an adverb modifying *est;* "Adverbs modify or limit," &c. Less. 88, 1.

Tuta is an adjective from *tutus, tuta, tutum*, of the first and second declensions, feminine gender, (N. and V. *tuta*, G. *tutæ,*) found in the singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *mora;* "Adjectives, adjective pronouns," &c. Less. 91, 1.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *tuta* an adjective? A. Because it qualifies *mora*, and "An adjective is a word," &c. Less 28, 1.—Is *tuta* here used as an *epithet* or as an *attribute?* A. As an attribute; "Adjectives are sometimes used," &c.—Why is it of the first and second declensions? A. Its masculine ends in *us*, its feminine in *a*, and its neuter in *um*, and "The masculine gender of adjectives," &c. Less. 29, 1.—Why was it put in the feminine gender, singular number, and nominative case? A. Because its noun is of that gender, number, and case, and "Adjectives, adjective pronouns," &c. Less. 91, 1.

LESSON 92.

PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

1. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

2. Predicate adjectives follow the same verbs as predicate nouns.

REMARK 1.—To this rule belong especially:—

(*a*) *Sum* and neuter verbs denoting *position* or *motion.*

(*b*) The passive of verbs signifying to *name*, or *call*, to *choose, render*, or *constitute*, to *esteem* or *reckon.*

REMARK 2.—As the subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative, (Less. 95, 3,) the noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing, is also put in the accusative.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the predicate-nominative?—for predicate adjectives? What verbs belong especially to this rule? When the verb is in the infinitive, in what case is the predicate noun agreeing with the subject?

EXERCISES.

I. Inertia est vitium.	Tu fies poēta.
Virtus est sua merces.	Fames est optimus coquus.
Non sum pastor.	Ego Caius vocor.
Es judex.	Ira furor brevis est.
Ille est prudens.	Caius visus erat timĭdus.
II. Europe is a peninsula.	Eurōpa sum peninsŭla.
The boy becomes a man.	Puer fio homo.
Drunkenness is madness.	Ebriĕtas insania sum.
The tree has been a twig.	Arbor virga sum.
The earth is the great parent.	Magnus parens (*fem.*) terra sum.
A true friend is a great treasure.	Amīcus verus sum thesaurus magnus.
III. Ye are judges.	Marcus Antonius and Caius
They will never become poets.	Cassius were chosen tribunes.[b]
Europe and Africa are peninsulas.	Romulus and Remus were brothers.
The twig has become a tree.	Caius was innocent.[c]
The boys had become men.	They were shepherds.
Cicero was chosen[a] consul.	

(*a*) To choose, *creo*. (*b*) *Tribūnus*. (*c*) *Innocens*.

ANALYSIS AND PARSING

Tu fies poēta, Thou wilt become a poet.

ANALYSIS.—*Tu* is the subject. *Fies poēta* is the predicate.

QUESTION.—Is the predicate grammatical or logical? Less. 84, 3.

PARSING.—*Tu* is a substantive pronoun, of the second person: Nom. and Voc. *tu*, Gen. *tui*. It is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *fies*. "The noun or pronoun," &c. Less 90, 1.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *tu* a pronoun? A. Because "A pronoun is a word," &c. Less. 41, 1.—Why a substantive pronoun? A. Because "The substantive pronouns are," &c. Less 41, 3.—Why of the second person? A. Because it denotes the person spoken to, and "Nouns and pronouns have three persons," &c. Less. 6, 9.—Why of the singular number? A. Because "The singular number denotes one object." Less. 5, 9.

Fies is an active verb from *facio, facĕre, feci, factum*, of the third conjugation; it is found in the passive voice, where it is irregular: Less. 79 and 75, 2, (*fio, fiĕri, factus sum*,) in the indicative mood, future tense, second person, singular number, agreeing with its nominative *tu*; "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *fies* a verb? Why an active verb? A. Because "An active verb is," &c. Less. 46, 3.—Why of the third conjugation? A. Because it has *e* short before *re* in the present infinitive active, and "The conjugations may be distinguished," &c. Less. 48, 3.—What are the roots of the active voice? A. *fac, fec,*

and *fact*.—What does the first root become in the passive? A. *fi*.—Why in the passive voice? A. Because the object of the verb is made its subject, and "The passive voice is that," &c. Less. 46, 9.—Why in the indicative mood? Why in the future tense? A. Because it represents the action as future, and "The future represents," &c. Less. 47, 8.—Why in the second person? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is of the second person, and "Person in verbs is the form," &c. Less. 47, 12.—Why of the singular number? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is singular. Less. 47, 14.

Poëta is a common noun, of the second person; N. and V. *poëta*, G. *poëtæ*; of the first declension, masculine gender, singular number, and is nominative after *fies*. "A noun in the predicate," &c. Less. 91, 1.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *poëta* a noun? Why a common noun? Why in the second person? A. Because it denotes the person spoken to, and "Nouns," &c. Less. 6, 9.—Why of the first declension? Why masculine? A. Because it is a name applied to males only, and "The names of all male beings," &c. Less. 5, 1.—Why in the singular number? Why is it the nominative after *fies*? A. Because it follows *fies* a passive verb, and denotes the same person as its subject *tu*, and "A noun in the predicate," &c. Less. 92, 1.

NOTE.—In the subsequent exercises in parsing, the questions are generally omitted, but the teacher will of course supply them.

LESSON 93.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

1. A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences.

2. The *members* or *clauses* of a compound sentence are the simple sentences of which it is composed.

3. The clauses of a compound sentence are either *independent* or *dependent*.

4. An independent clause is one which makes complete sense by itself.

5. A dependent clause is one which makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

Thus in the compound sentence, "Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich," the former clause is independent, the latter dependent.

6. A member of a compound sentence on which another member depends, is called the *leading clause*; its subject, the *leading subject*; and its verb, the *leading verb*.

7. (*a*) The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or the imperative mood.

(*b*) The verb of a dependent clause may be either in the indicative, the subjunctive, or the infinitive mood.

8. The members of a compound sentence may be connected by *relative words*, *conjunctions*, or *adverbs*, but an infinitive clause requires no connective.

QUESTIONS.—What is a compound sentence? What is a simple sentence? Less. 83, 1. What are the members or clauses of a compound sentence? What is an independent clause?—a dependent clause?—a leading clause?—a leading subject?—a leading verb? In which of the moods is the leading verb commonly found? In what mood is the verb of a dependent clause? How may the members of a compound sentence be connected? What clauses require no connective?

EXERCISE.

Point out the several clauses in the following compound sentences, and the nature of each clause as being independent or dependent:—

The wicked flee, when no man pursueth.
If sinners entice thee, consent thou not.
I have been young, and now am old.
Go to the ant, thou sluggard, consider her ways, and be wise.
Blessed is he that considereth the poor.
I would punish you, if I were not angry.

LESSON 94.

RELATIVES.

1. Sentences are often compounded by means of relative words; as, *qui*, *quantus*, *qualis*, &c.

2. The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

Tu qui audis, Thou who hearest.
Aves quæ canunt, The birds which sing.
Puer qui legēbat, The boy who was reading.
Nos qui adsŭmus, We who are present.

NOTE 1.—In parsing the relative, the same rules are to be given for its *cases*, as for those of nouns.

NOTE 2.—The antecedent may be one or more clauses, and the relative is then in the neuter gender.

3. Sometimes the relative agrees with a noun following it, when the latter noun is explanatory of the antecedent, or signifies the same thing; as,

Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longè abĕrat, Before the election, which time was not far off. *Animal, qui vocātur homo*, The animal, which is called man.

REMARK.—In the preceding sentences, the relatives, instead of agreeing with their antecedents *comitia* and *animal*, agree with the subsequent nouns, *tempus* and *homo*.

4. A relative referring to two or more antecedents is commonly plural.

REMARK.—If the antecedents are of different genders, and denote things *having life*, the relative is masculine rather than feminine; but if they denote things *without life*, the relative is generally neuter; as,

Puer et puella, qui legunt, The boy and girl, who read. *Arbos et fructus, quæ spectantur*, The tree and fruit, which are seen.

5. *Qui* at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like *hic* or *ille*; as,

Quæ cùm ita sint, Since these things are so.

6. The relative is commonly placed after its antecedent and as near to it as possible.

7. The pronoun *is*, as an antecedent, is often to be supplied.

8. The relative is sometimes *attracted* into the case of the antecedent, or the antecedent into that of the relative.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the agreement of the relative? What rules are to be given for the case of the relative? Of what gender is a relative when its antecedent is a clause or clauses? With what word does the relative sometimes agree, instead of agreeing with its antecedent? What is the rule for a relative referring to two or more antecedents? What is the rule for the gender of the relative, when its antecedents are of different genders? How may *qui* often be translated at the beginning of a sentence? What is the rule for the position of a relative? What antecedent is often to be supplied? What is the rule for the attraction of the relative and antecedent?

EXERCISES.

I. Avis, quæ nuper canēbat, nunc tacet.
Nulla est natio, quæ pertimescĭtur.
Meus frater, qui æger fuit, nunc convalescit.
Omnes causæ, quæ commemorantur, justissĭmæ sunt.

II. Translate into Latin:—

The tree, which was then standing, has lately fallen, *Arbos qui tum sto, nuper cado.*

All the men, who had been condemned, were put to death, *Omnis homo, qui condemno, occīdo.*

We, who now live, shall soon die, *Ego, qui nunc vivo, citò morĭor.*

Avis, quæ nuper canēbat, nunc tacet, The bird, which was lately singing, is now silent.

ANALYSIS.—This is a compound sentence consisting of an antecedent clause, *avis nunc tacet*, and a relative clause, *quæ nuper canēbat*; the former being an independent, the latter a dependent clause.

Avis is the subject of the leading clause, and *tacet* its grammatical predicate, which is modified by *nunc*.

Quæ is the subject of the dependent clause, and *canēbat* its grammatical predicate, which is modified by *nuper*.

PARSING.—*Avis* is a common noun, N. and V. *avis*, G. *avis*, of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *tacet*; "The noun or pronoun," &c. Less. 90, 1.

Tacet is a neuter verb from *taceo, tacēre, tacui, tacĭtum*, of the second conjugation; it is found in the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, (*taceo, taces, tacet,*) third person singular, agreeing with its nominative *avis*; "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

Nunc is an adverb, modifying *tacet*; "Adverbs modify or limit," &c. Less. 88, 1.

Quæ is a relative pronoun, from *qui, quæ, quod*; it is found in the feminine gender, (N. *quæ*, G. *cujus,*) singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent *avis*, "The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees," &c. Less. 94, 2; and is nominative to *canēbat*, "The noun or pronoun," &c.

Canēbat is an active verb, from *cano, canĕre, cecĭni, cantum*, of the third conjugation; it is found in the active voice, indicative mood, imperfect tense, (*canēbam, canēbas, canēbat,*) third person singular, agreeing with *quæ*; "A verb agrees," &c.

Nuper is an adverb, modifying *canēbat*; "Adverbs modify or limit," &c.

LESSON 95.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. The tense of the infinitive is present, past or future, in reference to that of the verb with which it is connected; as,

Videor audire, I seem to hear. *Visus sum audire*, I seemed to hear. *Videbor audire*, I shall seem to hear. *Visus eram audire*, I had seemed to hear.

In all these examples the action of hearing is represented as present at the time denoted by the principal verbs, *videor, videbor*, &c.

Videor audivisse, I seem to have heard. *Visus sum audivisse*, I seemed to have heard.

In these examples the action of hearing is represented as past, at the time denoted by the principal verbs.

2. The infinitive may be considered either as a verb, or as an abstract noun.

As a verb, the following rule is to be observed respecting its subject.

3. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

Miror te non scribĕre, I wonder that you do not write.

Here *te*, the subject of *scribĕre*, is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1.—The particle *that* is commonly to be supplied in English before the subject of the infinitive, and the same is to be omitted in translating from English into Latin.

NOTE 2.—As a noun, the infinitive may be either the subject or the object of a verb, according to the following rules.

4. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb; as,

Homines interīre necesse est, That men should die is unavoidable.
Bene dicĕre haud absurdum est, To speak well is not unbecoming.

The grammatical subject in the first sentence is *interīre*, the logical subject is *homines interīre*. In the second sentence the grammatical subject is *dicĕre*, the logical subject is *bene dicĕre*.

NOTE 3.—The infinitive with the accusative is sometimes translated by a similar form, but more commonly by the indicative or potential with *that*.

5. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the object of a verb; as,

Spero te valēre, I hope that you are well. *Poĕtæ delectāre volunt*, The poets wish to please.

In the former of these sentences, the infinitive with its subject *te* depends on *spero*; in the latter, the infinitive *delectāre* depends on *volunt*.

NOTE 4.—The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, and the like.

NOTE 5.—The infinitive without a subject-accusative, follows verbs denoting *desire*, *ability*, *intention*, *endeavor*, and some others.

NOTE 6.—The present infinitive after verbs of sense may frequently be translated by a present participle; as, *surgĕre videt lunam*, He sees the moon rising.

6. The infinitive without a subject sometimes depends upon an adjective; as,

Ille erat dignus amāri, He was worthy to be loved.

7. Infinitives usually precede the verbs on which they depend.

QUESTIONS.—To what do the tenses of the infinitive refer? With what parts of speech may the infinitive be classed? Considered as a verb in what case is its sub-

ject? What particle is to be supplied in English before the subject of an infinitive? Considered as a noun in what two ways may the infinitive be used? What is the rule for the infinitive when it is the subject of a verb? How is the infinitive with the accusative to be translated? What is the rule for an infinitive, when it is the object of a verb? What classes of verbs does the infinitive with the accusative follow? What classes of verbs does the infinitive without the accusative follow? Upon what other part of speech may the infinitive depend? What is the rule for the position of the infinitive when depending on another word?

EXERCISE.

Sepulcrum Cyri[a] aperīri[b] Alexander jussit.
Miror tuum fratrem non scripsisse.
Nemo se[c] avārum esse intelligit
Intelligĕre non possum.
Alexander metui volēbat.
Milites requiescĕre non potĕrant.

(*a.*) Less. 100. (*b.*) To be opened, *or* that it should be opened.
(*c.*) *Se*, that he (N. 1) *esse*, is.

ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

Spero te valēre, I hope that you are well.

ANALYSIS.—This is a compound sentence. The leading clause is *spero*, the dependent clause is *te valēre*.

The subject of the first clause is *ego*, understood, (Less. 90, N. 2.) its predicate is *spero*.

The subject of the second clause is *te*, its verb is *valēre*.

PARSING:—*Spero* is an active verb, from *spero, sperāre, sperāvi, sperātum*, of the first conjugation; found in the active voice, indicative mood, present, *spero, speras, sperat*, in the first person singular number, agreeing with its nominative *ego*, understood; "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

Te is a substantive pronoun, of the second person, from *tu:* N. and V. *tu*, G. *tui*, D. *tibi*, Ac. and Ab. *te;* it is found in the singular number, accusative case, and is the subject of the infinitive *valēre;* "The subject of the infinitive mood," &c. Less. 95, 3.

Valēre is a neuter verb, from *valeo, valēre, valui*, of the second conjugation; found in the active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, depending on the leading verb *spero;* "After verbs of saying," &c. Less. 95, 1.

LESSON 96.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER ACTIVE VERBS.

1. The object of an active verb in the active voice is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1.—The object of an active verb in the passive voice is put in the nominative. Less. 46, 9.

NOTE 2.—The object of an active deponent verb is also put in the accusative.

NOTE 3.—Sometimes the accusative is omitted, and sometimes the verb.

2. Verbs signifying to *name* or *call*, to *choose*, *render*, or *constitute*, to *esteem* or *reckon*, are followed by two accusatives denoting the same person or thing.

NOTE 4.—A second accusative is added to many active verbs by way of apposition, to denote a *purpose*, *time*, *character*, &c.

NOTE 5.—A predicate adjective often supplies the place of the second accusative after verbs of *naming*, &c.

3. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* and *celo*, (to conceal,) are followed by two accusatives, one of a person, the other of a thing.

NOTE 6.—Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; and for the accusative of the thing, an ablative with *de*, or a dependent clause.

REMARKS.

1. The passive of verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and of *celo*, *cingo*, *induo*, and *exuo*, retains the accusative of the thing.
2. An infinitive, or one or more clauses, may be the object of an active verb. Less. 95, 5.
3. Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification; as, *Ire iter*, To go a journey.
4. Oblique cases generally precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions.

NOTE 7.—A verb on which no other word depends is said to be used *absolutely*.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the object of an active verb in the active voice?—in the passive voice?—for the object of an active deponent verb? What are sometimes omitted? What is the rule for verbs signifying to *name* or *call*, &c.? In what way is a second accusative sometimes added to an active verb? What often supplies the place of the second accusative after verbs of *naming*, &c.? What is the rule for verbs of *asking*, &c.? What sometimes supplies the place of one of the accusatives? What is the rule for the passive of verbs of *asking*, &c.? What may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb? By what kind of accusative may some neuter verbs be followed? Where do oblique cases generally stand? When is a verb said to be used absolutely?

EXERCISES.

I. Africa cervos non gignit. Lucem fugit blatta.
Maximos elephantos fert India. Pinus picem gignit.
Ceti pulmonem habent. Pœna scelus sequitur.
Aves nocturnæ uncos ungues habent.
Lapillos pretiosos gemmas vocamus.
Corsicam Græci Cyrnum appellavere.

Cicerōnem universa civĭtas consŭlem declarāvit.
Pœni Hamilcărem imperatōrem fecērunt.
Silvius Procas duos filios habuit, Numitōrem et Amulium. Less. 89, 3.

II. Rogo te nummos.—Istam pugnam pugnābo.
Pamphĭlus Apellem pictūram docuit.
Dolabella nummos Sicyonium magistrātum poposcit.
Hunc sermōnem te non celābo.
Jugurtha pacem Metellum rogāvit.
Te hanc artem docēbo.
Ille rogātus est sententiam.
Illa atras vestes induĭtur.

III.

The hyæna imitates human speech.	Hyæna sermo humānus assimŭlo.
Poverty follows sloth.	Ignavia egestas sequor.
I have received your letter.	Accipio epistŏla tuus.
Truth often produces hatred.	Verĭtas odium sæpe pario.
Read (*plur.*) good books.	Lego bonus liber.
The Greeks called Africa Libya.	Africa Græcus Libya appello.
Antonius called his flight victory.	Antonius fuga suus victoria voco.
The people made Ancus Marcius king.	Ancus Marcius rex popŭlus creo.

IV.

Thou demandest money of me.	Rogo ego pecunia.
We taught you (*plur.*) this art.	Doceo tu hic ars.
Eupompus had taught Pamphilus the art of painting.	Eupompus Pamphĭlus pictūra doceo.
I ask you (*sing.*) your opinion.	Rogo tu sententia tuus.
He has gone a long journey.	Proficiscor magnum iter.
I have sworn a very true oath.	Juro verus jusjurandum.

LESSON 97.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

NOTE.—The prepositions followed by the accusative are:—

Ad,	*to, at.*
Adversus *or* Adversum,	*against, towards.*
Ante,	*before.*
Apud,	*at, amongst.*
Circa *or* Circum,	*about,* of time, place, and person. / of place and person.

Circĭter,	*about, near.*
Cis or Citra,	*on this side of, within.*
Contra,	*against, over against.*
Erga,	*towards*, after words denoting actions or feelings.
Extra,	*without, out of.*
Infra,	*beneath, below.*
Inter,	*between, among.*
Intra,	*within.*
Juxta,	*near to, by.*
Ob,	*on account of, for.*
Penes,	*with, in the power of.*
Per,	*through, by, by means of.*
Ponĕ,	*behind.*
Post,	*after.*
Præter,	*besides, beyond.*
Prope,	*near to, hard by.*
Propter,	*near, on account of.*
Secundum,	*near, after, according to.*
Supra,	*above, over.*
Trans,	*beyond, on the farther side of, over.*
Ultra,	*beyond.*

2. The prepositions, *in*, *super*, *clam*, *subter*, and *sub*, are followed sometimes by the accusative and sometimes by the ablative.

Clam,	*without the knowledge of.*
In,	{ (with acc.) *into, towards, against, respecting.* { (with abl.) *in, upon, among.*
Sub,	*under.*
Subter,	*under.*
Super,	*over, on, above.*

3. *In* and *sub*, denoting *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative.

4. The preposition on which an accusative depends is sometimes compounded with a verb; as,

Transire flumen, To pass over a river.

5. *Nihil, neuter pronouns*, and *adjectives of quantity*, with verbs either active or neuter, are often put in the accusative without a preposition.

QUESTIONS.—How many prepositions are followed by the accusative? How many and what prepositions are followed by either the accusative or the ablative? What is the special rule for *in* and *sub*? What are the usual meanings of *in* with the accusative?—with the ablative? What is the rule for the accusative after a verb compounded with a preposition?—for the accusative of *nihil*, &c.

EXERCISES.

I. Pauci ad senectūtem veniunt.
Rosæ fulgent inter lilia.
Est lucus prope amnem.
Ille ad mare infra oppĭdum exspectăvit.
Post me erat Ægīna.

Est deus in nobis.
In Italiam migrāmus.
Alpes[a] nemo unquam cum exercĭtu ante Hannibălem transiĕrat.
Vulcānus tenuit insŭlas prope Siciliam.
Post mortem hanc terram relinquīmus.
Cœlum transcurrit nimbus.
Ego te[a] manum[b] injiciam.

(*a*) Less. 97, 4. (*b*) Less. 96, 1.

II. Hannibal sent ambassadors to the Roman senate.	Hannĭbal ad senātus Romānus legātus mitto.
Beyond the Rhine dwell the Germans.	Trans Rhenus incŏlo Germānus.
The way is dangerous on account of the defiles.	Via sum periculōsus propter angustiæ.
Hercules sailed among the Argonauts.	Hercŭles navĭgo inter Argonauta.
The slaves were in the power of the prosecutor.	Servus penes accusātor sum.
Megara was before me.	Ante ego sum Megăra.
I hold a letter in (my) hands.	In manus epistŏla teneo.
Mount Jura is between the Sequani and the Helvetii.	Mons Jura sum inter Sequāni et Helvetii.
We will do nothing against your will.	Contra voluntas tuus nihil facio.
He passed over the Euphrates.	Ille transeo Euphrātes.

LESSON 98.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

Nouns denoting duration of time or extent of space are put, after other nouns and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs, in the ablative.

EXERCISES.

I. Romŭlus septem et triginta annos regnāvit.
Ager multos annos quiēvit.—Vixi annos triginta.
Quædam bestiŏlæ unum diem vivunt.
Tredĕcim annis Alexander regnāvit.
Mulĭeres Romānæ Brutum annum luxērunt.
Saguntīni aggĕrem duxērunt trecentos pedes longum.
Aliquantum viæ progressus erat.

II. I was there two days.	Biduum ibi sum.
Appius was blind many years.	Appius cæcus multus annus sum.
We have followed you (*sing.*) night (*plur.*) and day, (*plur.*)	Tu sequor nox diesque.
We discoursed whole days.	Dies totus dissĕro.
He extended two ditches fifteen feet broad.	Duo fossa quindĕcim pes latus perdūco.
We proceeded a hundred furlongs.	Stadium centum procĕdo.

LESSON 99.

ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative:
Absque, a, (ab, abs,) *and* de,
Coram, palam, cum, ex, (e,)
Sine, tenus, pro, *and* præ.

REMARKS.

1. *A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before either vowels or consonants.

2. *Cum* is annexed to the ablatives of the substantive pronouns, and sometimes to those of *qui* and *quis*; as, *mecum*, with me.

3. *Tenus* always stands after its noun, and sometimes takes a genitive plural.

4. The preposition on which an ablative depends is sometimes compounded with a verb; as, *Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city: or with a verbal noun; as, *Omnibus portis eruptiōne factâ*, A sally having been made from all the gates.

NOTE.—The following are the more common significations of the preceding prepositions:—

A, ab, *or* abs, *from*,—*by*, (before the *doer* of an action.)
Absque, *without*, (little used.)
Coram, *before*, *in the presence of*.
Cum, *with*.
De, *concerning*, *about*, *of*.
E *or* ex, *out of*, *from*.
Palam, *before*, *in the presence of*.
Præ, *before*, *in comparison with*, *by reason of*.
Pro, *for*.
Sine, *without*.
Tenus, *as far as*.

QUESTIONS.—How many and what prepositions are followed by the ablative? What is the distinction in the use of *a* and *ab*, *e* and *ex*? To what words is *cum* annexed? What is said of the position of *tenus*? What is the rule for the ablative after a verb compounded with a preposition? Where does *a* or *ab* signify *by*?

EXERCISES.

I. Ex urbe aufugio.
Omnia mea[a] porto mecum.
Præ mœrōre loqui non possum.
Socrātes de immortalitāte disseruit.
Caius ab amīcis laudātur.
Alexander omnia oceāno tenus vicit.
Navītæ detrūdunt naves scopŭlo.
Ex vitâ discēdo tanquam ex hospitio non tanquam ex domo.
Timoleon Dionysium totâ Sicilīâ depŭlit.
Athlētæ vino abstinuērunt.
Milites Romāni prœlio excessērunt.
Me domo meâ expulistis.

(a) All my things, all my property. Less. 91, 5.

II. The shepherd drives (his) sheep before him.	Pastor præ sui ovis ago.
Plants cannot grow without air.	Sine aër planta cresco non possum.
No one has lived without grief, (no one) without joy.	Nemo sine dolor, sine gaudium vivo.
You (*plur.*) are safe, if God is with you.	Tutus sum, si Deus tu-cum sum.
Hannibal passed over the Alps with an army.	Hannĭbal Alpes cum exercĭtus transeo.
The Gauls retired from the battle.	Gallus prœlium excēdo.
The hen broods (her) chickens under (her) wings.	Gallīna pullus sub ala foveo.

LESSON 100.

GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

REMARK 1.—A pronoun limiting the meaning of a noun is put in the genitive; as, *Pars tui*, A part of thee.

REMARK 2.—The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes the subject of the action, feeling, &c., implied in the limited noun; as, *Junōnis ira*, The anger of Juno. It is *objective* when it denotes the object of such action, feeling, &c.; as, *Amor virtūtis*, The love of virtue.

NOTE 1.—The genitive commonly stands before the word which it limits, unless the latter is emphatic.

NOTE 2.—When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective stands first; as, *Omnis comĭtum ordo*, All the train of attendants.

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of the genitive singular in the several declensions?—of the genitive plural? What is the rule for the genitive after a noun? Where does the genitive commonly stand? What is the general rule for the position of oblique cases? When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, which stands first? What is the rule for a pronoun limiting a noun? When is the genitive subjective? When is it objective?

EXERCISES.

I. Deus est mundi creātor.
Honor est præmium virtūtis.
Lusciniārum cantus delectat.
Roma totīus orbis caput fuit.
India orientālis pavōnis patria est.
Inopia est artium inventrix.
Plato Socrātis auditor fuit.
Effigies deōrum erant sacræ.
Sapientia est rerum divinārum et humanārum scientia.
Caput est omnium sensuum sedes.

II. The punishment of a murderer is just.	Supplicium homicīda justus sum.
The mind of the wise man will be tranquil.	Anīmus sapiens sum serēnus.
Apollo was the god of medicine.	Apollo sum medicīna deus.
Mercury was the messenger of the gods.	Mercurius sum deus nuntius.
The temples of the Greeks and Romans were sacred.	Templum Græcus et Romānus sum (*imperf.*) sacer.
Greece was the native-country of many illustrious men.	Græcia sum patria multus homo illustris.
Philosophy is the love of wisdom.	Philosophia sum sapientia amor.
Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar, a general of the Carthaginians.	Hannĭbal sum filius Hamilcar, dux Carthaginiensis.
Romulus was the grandson of Numitor and the son of Rhea Silvia.	Romŭlus sum Numĭtor nepos, et Rhea Silvia filius.

EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

Honor est præmium virtūtis, Honor is the reward of virtue.

ANALYSIS.—This is a simple sentence, having a grammatical subject and a logical predicate. Its subject is *honor*, its grammatical predicate is *est præmium*; Less. 84, 3: *præmium*, which by itself denotes a reward of any kind, is limited by *virtūtis* to a particular kind of reward, viz. that bestowed on account of virtue.

PARSING.—*Honor* is an abstract noun, N. and V. *honor*, G. *honōris*: of the third declension, masculine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *est*; "The noun or pronoun," &c.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *honor* a noun? Why an abstract noun? Why of the third declension? Why of the masculine gender? A. "Nouns in *e r, o r, o*," &c. Less. 12. 1. Why singular number?

Est. See Less. 91.

Præmium is a common noun, N. Ac. and V. *præmium*, G. *præmii*; of the second declension, neuter gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative, after *est*; "A noun in the predicate," &c.

Virtūtis is an abstract noun, N. and V. *virtus*, G. *virtūtis*; of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, genitive case, limiting *præmium*; "A noun which limits the meaning of another noun," &c. Less. 100.

QUESTIONS.—Why is *virtus* a noun? Why an abstract noun? Why of the third declension? Why feminine gender? A. "Nouns, not increasing in *e s*," &c. Less. 15, 1. Why in the singular number?

LESSON 101.

GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

When a noun limiting the meaning of another noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative.

REMARKS.

1. With nouns of *time* or *number* the *genitive* of quality is always used.

2. When the quality is an *essential* one the genitive is commonly used; as, *Vir summæ prudentiæ*, A man of the greatest prudence.

3. In the predicate of a sentence after *sum* or *fio*, the ablative of quality is more common than the genitive.

NOTE.—With the ablative of quality *sum* is often translated to *have* or to *possess*.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the genitive or ablative of quality? With what nouns is the genitive always used? When the quality is an essential one, what case is commonly used? Which is commonly used in the predicate after *sum* or *fio*? How is *sum* often translated with the ablative of quality.

EXERCISES.

I. Homo maxĭmi ingenii.—Homĭnes summæ virtūtis.
Hæc est res magni labōris.—Fecit iter unĭus diēi.
Cato filium summo ingenio summâque virtūte amīsit.
Hector erat insigni virtūte.—Fossa pedum trium.
Incredibĭli sollicitudĭne sum de valetudĭne tuâ.
Vulgus ingenio mobĭli erat.

II. Lysander was (a man) of the greatest bravery.	Lysander sum summus virtus.
Catiline was (a man) of great inconstancy.	Catilīna sum magnus inconstantia.
An armistice of thirty days has been made.	Indutiæ triginta dies fio.
A thanksgiving of twenty-two days was decreed.	Supplicatio viginti duo dies decerno.
I have great hope.	Sum magnus spes.
Pompey and Cæsar had not the same mind.	Pompeius et Cæsar non sum idem mens.
All (men) have peculiar good will towards you.	Omnis sum singulāris benevolentia in tu.
The pyramid was of eight hundred feet (i. e. was eight hundred feet high.)	Pyrămis sum octingenti pes.
Be of good courage.	Sum bonus animus.
Cato possessed singular sagacity and industry.	Cato singulāris sum prudentia et industria.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

***Incredibĭli sollicitudĭne sum de valetudĭne tuâ*, I have incredible anxiety concerning your health.**

ANALYSIS.—This is a simple sentence. Its subject is *ego* understood, Less. 90, N. 2; its grammatical predicate is *sum* with *homo* or the like understood, Less. 101; which is limited by *sollicitudĭne*, and this is limited both by the adjective *incredibĭli* and by *de valetudĭne*, and *valetudĭne* by *tuâ*.

PARSING.—*Sum* is the substantive verb, (conjugate it, &c.)

Incredibĭli is an adjective from *incredibĭlis, incredibĭle,*—of the third declension, and two terminations; it is found in the feminine gender, singular number, N. and V. *incredibĭlis*, G. *incredibĭlis*, D. and Ab. *incredibĭli*, Ac. *incredibĭlem*, in the ablative case, agreeing with *sollicitudĭne;* "Adjectives, adjective pronouns," &c.

Sollicitudĭne is an abstract noun, N. and V. *sollicitūdo*, G. *sollicitudĭnis*, &c.; it is found in the singular number, ablative case; "When a noun limiting," &c. Less. 101.

De is a preposition followed by the ablative.

Valetudĭne is an abstract noun, from *valetūdo*, N. and V. *valetūdo*, G. *valetudĭnis*, &c.; of the third declension, feminine gender, singular number; it is found in the ablative case; "Eleven prepositions," &c.

Tuâ is a possessive adjective pronoun, from *tuus, tua, tuum*, of the first and second declensions; it is found in the feminine gender, N. and V. *tua*, G. and D. *tuæ*, Ac. *tuam*, Abl. *tuâ*, singular number, ablative case, agreeing with *valetudĭne;* "Adjectives," &c.

LESSON 102.

GENITIVE WITH *SUM*.

1. The noun on which the genitive depends is often wanting in the predicate after *sum*.

REMARK 1.—In translating the genitive after *sum*, the word *man*, *person*, or *animal*, is sometimes to be supplied, and sometimes *part*, *property*, *nature*, *characteristic*, *duty*, *mark*, *sign*, *proof*, *custom*, or the like.

REMARK 2. —In this construction, when *part*, *property*, &c., are to be supplied, an infinitive is often the subject of the verb.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the genitive with *sum*? In translating the genitive after *sum*, what is to be supplied? What is often the subject of the verb, when *part*, *property*, &c., are to be supplied?

EXERCISES.

I. Prudentia est senectūtis.
Paupĕris[a] est[b] numerāre pecus.
Cujusvis hominis est errāre.
Insipientis[a] est[c] in errōre perseverāre.
Est[c] sapientis rustĭci supervacuas frondes vitis decerpĕre.
Est[c] magistrātûs malōrum hominum temeritāti[d] resistĕre.
Est[c] nobĭlis natūræ semper sperāre.
Claudius somni brevissīmi erat.
Formĭca est magni labōris.

II. It is a mark of avarice to desire too much. — Sum avaritia nimius (*neut.*) desidĕro.
It is the duty of men to pity the unfortunate. — Sum homo misereor infelix.[a–c]
To strive in vain is a proof of the greatest folly. — Frustrà nitor extrēmus dementia sum.[c]
It is a mark of a temperate man not to desire too much. — Sum contĭnens[a] non nimius (*neut.*) desidĕro.

(*a*) Less. 91, 4. (*b*) *Numerare* is the grammatical subject, and *numerare pecus* the logical subject. (*c*) What is the grammatical, and what the logical subject of this verb? (*d*) What is the rule for this dative? (*e*) Less. 107.

LESSON 103.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

1. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole.

2. ***Nihil***, a neuter adjective of quantity, or a neuter pronoun, followed by a partitive genitive, is often to be translated by an adjective agreeing with its noun ; as,

Nihil præmii, No reward. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id tempŏris*, That time.

3. The partitive genitive after ***nihil*** and neuter adjectives and pronouns, is sometimes a neuter adjective of the second declension, used as a noun ; as,

Nihil sincēri, No sincerity. *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new.

NOTE 1.—The English signs of the partitive genitive are *of* or *among*.

NOTE 2.—Instead of a genitive after partitives, the ablative or the accusative with a preposition often occurs ; as, *Unus ex multis*, One of many.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the partitive genitive?—for the translation of *nihil*, &c., when followed by a partitive genitive? What sometimes supplies the place of a noun in the partitive genitive after *nihil*, &c.? What are the English signs of the partitive genitive? What other construction may follow partitives?

EXERCISES.

I. Vulpes omnium bestiārum callidissīma est.
Tarquinius omnium regum Romanōrum postrēmus fuit.
Indus est omnium fluminum maxĭmus.
Cicĕro erat oratōrum Romanōrum eloquentissĭmus.
Socrātes fuit philosophōrum Græcōrum sapientissĭmus.
Catilīna satis[a] eloquentiæ, parum[a] sapientiæ habuit.
In eo[b] plus mali quàm boni fuit.

(*a*) An indeclinable neuter adjective of quantity, used substantively, the object of *habuit*. (*b*) *In eo*, "in him." Less. 42, 2.

II. The Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.	Gallus omnis fortis sum Belgæ.
Syracuse was the largest of the Grecian cities.	Syracūsæ (*plur.*) sum magnus Græcus urbs.
This was the most grateful of all triumphs.	Hic sum omnis triumphus gratus.
There is no one of the sisters.	Nullus sum soror.
I have this consolation. (2.)	Hic consolatio habeo.
I give the same advice. (2.)	Idem consilium do.
No news has been brought to us. (3.)	Nihil novus ad ego affĕro.
There is much evil in example.	Sum multus malum in exemplum.
Crassus had sufficient severity.	Crassus habeo severĭtas satis.

LESSON 104.

GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which in English are followed by *of* or *in respect of*, are in Latin followed by a genitive.

REMARK 1.—This rule includes especially verbals in *ax*, participials in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, and adjectives denoting an affection of the mind.

REMARK 2.—Many adjectives included in this rule, instead of the genitive, are sometimes construed with the infinitive or a clause, or with the accusative or the ablative, either with or without a preposition.

REMARK 3.—Adjectives of *plenty* or *want*, and some others, are followed by either the genitive or the ablative.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the genitive after adjectives? What does this rule include? What other constructions sometimes follow these adjectives? What is the rule for adjectives of plenty or want?

EXERCISES.

Vetĕres Romāni erant laudis avīdi, pecuniæ liberāles.
Italia plena erat Græcārum coloniārum.
Pisistrātus erat artium et litterārum amantissīmus.
Pompeius Magnus erat potestātis cupidissīmus.
Conon rei militāris prudens fuit.
Soli sunt cantāre perīti Arcādes.
Ille erat avīdus in pecuniis.
Amor et melle et felle est fecundissīmus.
Gallia frugum hominumque fertīlis fuit.
Pyrrhus belli perītus fuit, et perpetui imperii cupīdus.
Homo solus est particeps rationis.
Pompeius pæne omnium vitiōrum expers erat.

II. The ancient Germans were not fond of letters.	Priscus Germānus non sum (*imperf.*) amans littĕræ.
My mind is conscious of rectitude.	Meus mens sum rectum conscius.
Caius was unmindful of a favor.	Caius sum immĕmor beneficium.
I am full of fear.	Sum timor plenus.
Wild beasts are destitute of reason and speech.	Fera sum expers ratio et sermo.
The harbor is full of ships.	Portus sum navis plenus.
Cato was very patient of injuries.	Cato sum patiens injuria.
The ancient Germans were patient of thirst, cold, and labor.	Antīquus Germānus sum patiens sitis, frigus, et labor. (*plur.*)

LESSON 105.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. The *person* or *thing* which one *remembers* or *forgets*, is put either in the genitive or the accusative.

2. The *thing* of which one is *admonished*, is put in the genitive, or in the ablative with *de*.

3. The *crime* of which one is *accused*, *convicted*, *condemned*, or *acquitted*, is put in the genitive, and sometimes in the ablative with or without a preposition.

4. The *punishment* to which one is *condemned* is put in the genitive, the ablative, or the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

NOTE.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting are, *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor* and *obliviscor*:—of admonishing, *moneo*, and its compounds.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for verbs of remembering and forgetting?—of admonishing?—of accusing, &c.? In what case is the word denoting the punishment, after verbs of condemning? Name the verbs of remembering, &c.—of admonishing.

EXERCISES.

I. Recordāmur præteritōrum.[a]
Tua merīta recordor.
Injuriārum obliviscāmur.
Caius injurias oblītus est.
Caius me egestātis[b] admonuit.
Memīni constantiæ tuæ.
Ille damnātus est longi labōris.
Cæsar pristīnæ virtūtis Helvetiōrum reminiscītur.
Amīcos nostros reminiscor.
Caius ad metalla condemnātus est.
Judīces Caium capītis damnavērunt.

(*a*) Less. 91, 5. (*b*) sc. *meæ*. Less. 91, 6.

II. I call to mind that day.
Thou forgettest injuries, but remeberest favors.
Thou remindest me of (my) promise.
I remember your friend.
I am reminded of your constancy.
Caius was condemned to death.[a]
Thou hast accused me of theft.
Thou hast been convicted of treachery.
Recordor ille dies.
Obliviscor injuria, sed recordor beneficium.
Ego promissum moneo.
Memīni amīcus tuus.
Moneo de tuus constantia.
Caius caput damno.
Ego furtum accūso.
Convinco proditio.

(*a*) *abl.*

LESSON 106.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(Continued.)

1. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive denoting *degree* of estimation; as,

***Est magni*, It is of great value. *Virtūtem magni æstimat*, He values virtue highly, or at a high price.**

2. *Refert* and *intĕrest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing, whose concern or interest they denote.

REMARKS.

1. After *sum* and verbs of valuing, the degree of value is commonly expressed by the genitive of a neuter adjective of quantity.
2. After *refert* and *intĕrest*, the *degree* of interest or importance is expressed by the genitive of a neuter adjective, as *tanti, quanti*, &c., by a corresponding adverb, or a neuter noun or pronoun in the accusative.
3. The *subject* which interests or concerns one is expressed by an infinitive or a subjunctive clause.
4. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, after *refert* and *intĕrest*, the possessive adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra*, and *vestra*, are used.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for *sum* and verbs of *valuing*?—for *refert* and *intĕrest*? By what part of speech is the degree of value commonly expressed? How is degree of interest, &c., expressed after *refert* and *intĕrest*? How is the *subject* which interests, &c., expressed? Is the genitive of the substantive pronouns used after *refert* and *intĕrest*?

EXERCISES.

I. Caius virtūtem parvi æstīmat.	Mea multùm intĕrest hoc scire.
Quanti est æstimanda virtus?	Quid mea intĕrest?
Intĕrest omnium rectè facĕre.	Intĕrest nostra, ut vos hoc accurātè sciātis.
Humanitātis refert.	
Tua nihil refert.	Tua magni intĕrest hoc vidēre.
II. That you (*sing.*) live happily greatly concerns me.	Tu beātè vivo (R. 3) mea multùm intĕrest.
It is important for us, that I should be present.	Refert nostra, ego adsum. R. 3.
It more concerns the state than me.	Magis respublĭca intĕrest quàm ——.
Caius valued my labor very highly. (*sup.*)	Caius meus labor magnus æstīmo.
The field is of very-little value.	Ager est parvus.

LESSON 107.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(Continued.)

1. *Misereor* and *miseresco*, to pity, are followed by the genitive.

2. The impersonals *misĕret*, *pœnĭtet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, take a genitive of the object, and an accusative of the person whose feeling they denote.

Remark.—An infinitive or a clause sometimes supplies the place of the genitive.

Note.—The accusative after these impersonals is generally to be translated as if it were the subject; as, *Eōrum nos misĕret*, We pity them.

3. Verbs which usually take the ablative, including such as denote *an affection of the mind*, those which signify *to fill*, *to abound*, and *to want*, with *potior*, to gain possession, sometimes take the genitive.

Questions.—What is the rule for *misereor* and *miseresco*?—for the impersonals *misĕret*, &c.? How is the place of the genitive sometimes supplied? How is the accusative to be translated after these impersonals? What other verbs sometimes take the genitive?

EXERCISES.

I. Miseremĭni[a] sociōrum.
Eōrum nos misĕret.
Eos ineptiārum pœnĭtet.
Miserescite regis.
Tui me misĕret.
Eget æris Cappadŏcum rex.
Fratris me pudet pigetque.
Me civitātis morum piget tædetque.
Angor animi.
Ejus justitiæ miror.
Harum rerum abundāmus.

(a) Imperative.

II. I pity (my) countrymen.
We pity the unfortunate soldiers.
I pity you[a] and (your) friends.
You[b] repent of your negligence.
You[a] are weary of this labor.
I repent of having done this.[c]
I need counsel.
He obtains the kingdom.
He filled me with fear.
These things make me weary of life.
Misereor civis.
Miseresco infēlix miles.
Miseret ego tu et amicus.
Tu pœnĭtet negligentia.
Tu tædet hic labor.
Ego hic facio (*R.*) pœnĭtet.
Egeo consilium.
Potior regnum.
Ille ego formīdo compleo.
Hic res vita ego satŭro.

(a) *plur.* (b) *sing.* (c) *neut.*

LESSON 108.

GENITIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

1. The name of the town *at* or *in which* any thing is said to be or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; if of the third declension or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

2. After verbs of motion, the preposition is omitted before the name of the town *to* or *from which* the motion proceeds—the name of the former is put in the accusative—of the latter, in the ablative.

REMARK 1.—*Domus* and *rus*, and in the genitive *militiæ*, *belli*, and *humi*, are construed like names of towns.

REMARK 2.—The ablative of place, even when it is not the name of a town, is often used without a preposition.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the name of the town *at* or *in which*?—for the name of the town *to* or *from which*? What other words are construed like names of towns? What is said of the ablative of place when it is not the name of a town?

EXERCISES.

I. Dionysius Corinthi puĕros docēbat.
Quid Romæ faciem?
Hercŭles Tyri maxĭmè colebātur.
Olim Athēnis Alcibiādes potens fuit.
Cicĕro Syracūsis quæstor fuit.
Publius Ovidius[a] Sulmōne natus est.
Archias[b] poēta[a] Antiochīæ natus est.
Post Codrum nemo Athēnis regnāvit.

(*a*) Less. 89.
(*b*) A Greek noun of the first declension. See Less. 8, R. 2.

II. Hannĭbal tres modios annulōrum aureōrum Carthagĭnem misit.
Cæsar Romam profectus est.
Cæsar Tarracōne discēdit, et Narbōnem pervĕnit.
Dionysius Platōnem Athēnis arcessīvit.
Meus pater rure jam rediit.
Caius tenuit se domi.—Ite domum.
Ille domi nostræ vixit.—Rure huc advēnit.
Galli domos abiērant.—Rus ibo.
Consul Agrigentum legiōnes duxit.

III.

There was a very celebrated temple of Apollo at Delphi.	Delphi clarus Apollo fanum sum.
At Alexandria and Pergamus there were formerly very great libraries.	Alexandrīa et Pergămum olim magnus bibliothēca sum.
The fountain Arethusa was at Syracuse.	Fons Arethūsa Syracūsæ sum.
I seem to be at Rome.	Roma videor sum.
I was waiting for letters at Thessalonica.	Littĕræ exspecto Thessalonīca.
Demaratus fled from Tarquinii to Corinth.	Demarātus fugio Tarquinii Corinthus.
I am banished from home.	Domus exŭlo.

LESSON 109.

DATIVE.

Adjectives and verbs, (except verbs of motion,) when followed in English by *to* or *for*, take the dative in Latin.

REMARKS.

1. Nouns also and particles, when followed in English by *to* or *for*, sometimes take a dative.

2. The dative is sometimes used like a possessive genitive; as,

Cui corpus porrigitur, Whose body is extended.

3. Some adjectives compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis* are followed by a dative.

4. *Similis*, *dissimilis*, *par*, *proprius*, *superstes*, and some other adjectives, instead of a dative sometimes take the genitive.

5. Some adjectives having in English the sign *to* or *for*, are followed by the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, with the accusative.

6. Some adjectives and verbs which take the dative, are followed in English by *with* or some other preposition instead of *to* or *for*.

QUESTIONS.—What is the general rule for the dative in Latin after adjectives and verbs? What other parts of speech sometimes take a dative? For what other case is the dative sometimes used? What is the rule for adjectives compounded with *con* and verbals in *bilis*? What is said of *similis*, &c.? How are some adjectives having the sign *to* or *for* sometimes construed? What other preposition is sometimes used instead of *to* or *for*?

EXERCISES.

I. Hic labor nobis non est difficilis.	Hoc consilium reipublicæ est periculōsum.
Ille locus insidiis est aptus.	Atticus mihi est amicissĭmus.

Deus omnium salūti provĭdet.	Nox est somno opportūna.
Senātus popŭli salūti diligenter consuluit.	Laus virtūti debētur.
	Non nobis solùm nati sumus.
Nihil unquam mihi fuit jucundius.	Mea domus tibi patet.
II. These labors are easy for us.	Hic labor ego facĭlis sum.
These plans are dangerous to the state.	(*See above.*)
We have always been very friendly to you. (*plur.*)	Ego semper sum tu amīcus.
You will provide for our safety.	Tu noster salus provĭdeo.
The senate consulted for their own safety.	(Their own, *suus.*)
Thou sowest for thyself, thou wilt reap for thyself.	Tu sero, tu meto.
I am called a brother to you. (*sing.*)	Dico tu frater.
He will always be to me a god.	Sum ille ego semper deus.
We live agreebly to nature.	Vivo congruenter natūra.
It is unknown to me.	Ego clam sum.

LESSON 110.

THE DATIVE WITHOUT *TO* OR *FOR*.

1. Verbs signifying,

To favor, serve, command, assist,
Spare, trust, distrust, obey, resist,
To hurt, heal, marry,* envy, threaten,
Persuade, be angry, please, *and* pardon,

take the dative without the sign *to* or *for*.

* *Nubo*, which is used only of the bride.

2. After adjectives of *likeness*, which govern a dative, *to* is commonly omitted.

3. Many active verbs omit *to* before the dative of the person when it immediately follows the verb; as, Give *me* the book; otherwise they retain it; as, Give the book *to me*.

4. The adverb *obviàm* takes a dative without *to* or *for*.

QUESTIONS.—What do those verbs signify after which the dative is used without *to* or *for*? After what adjectives is the sign *to* commonly omitted? When do many active verbs omit *to* before the dative of the person? What adverb takes a dative without *to* or *for*?

EXERCISES.

I. Medĭci gravĭbus morbis medentur.
Homines parĭbus suis invĭdent.
Julia Pompeio nupsĕrat.
Mors nulli parcit.
Boni homĭnes aliis non invĭdent.
Non irascor amīcis meis.
Cui persuasisti? Nemo tibi credit.
Improbus homo patriæ legĭbus non parēbit.
Mihi ignosce. Illa mihi placet.
Reipublĭcæ semper favi, et dignitāti ac gloriæ tuæ.
Hæc civĭtas cetĕris gentĭbus impĕrat.

II. I envy no one.	Nemo invideo.
The soldiers spared the house of Pindar.	Miles Pindărus domus parco.
Portia will marry Caius.	Portia nubo Caius.
You will not persuade me.	Ego non persuadeo.
Nobody will trust bad men.	Nemo malus homo credo.
The poor envy the rich.	Pauper dives invideo.
Romulus was angry with his brother Remus.	Romŭlos irascor frater Remus.
Dost thou threaten us?	Ego minor?
My consulship does not please Antonius.	Meus consulātus Antonius non placeo.
Caius is like (his) father.	Caius pater similis sum.

LESSON 111.

DATIVE WITHOUT *TO* OR *FOR*—(CONTINUED.)

Verbs compounded with
Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob,
Post, præ, *and* super, pro, *and* sub,
commonly take the dative without the sign *to* or *for*.

NOTE 1.—The preposition in composition is often translated as it would be if separate, and standing immediately before the word which depends upon it; as, *Exercĭtum exercĭtui comparāvit*, He compared army with army; as if it had been, *Exercĭtum cum exercĭtu comparāvit.*

NOTE 2.—Some verbs of *repelling* and *taking away*, and compounds of *ab, de, ex, circum, dis*, and *contra*, sometimes take the dative.

NOTE 3.—Verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, often take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated before its case, or a preposition of similar import is employed.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the dative after verbs compounded with prepositions? How is the preposition often translated? What other compounds and classes of verbs sometimes take a dative without *to* or *for*?

EXERCISES.

I. Nihil semper floret; ætas ætāti succēdit.
Nobis bellum a te infertur.
Xerxes Græcis bellum intŭlit.
Omnĭbus his prœliis adfuit Dolabella.
Cæsar Galliæ Brutum præfēcit.
Demosthĕnes magnis oratorĭbus successit.
Quintus huic convivio non interfuit.
Milo Clodio mortem intŭlit.
Romānis equitĭbus littĕræ afferuntur.
Cæsări diadēma imponĕre voluit Antonius.
Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello.

II. The Romans made war upon the Carthaginians.	Romānus Carthaginiensis bellum infĕro.
Sloth is hurtful to the mind.	Inertia mens obsum.
Numa succeeded Romulus.	Numa Romŭlus succēdo.
Aristides was present at the naval battle.	Aristīdes intersum pugna navālis.
You (*sing.*) oppose my interests.	Meus commŏdum obsto.
(He) imposed laws on the state.	Lex civĭtas impōno.
(He) came suddenly upon the enemy.	Repentè supervenio hostis.
They shall not take thee from me.	Non ego tu eripio.
A frugal (man) differs from an avaricious (one.)	Parcus avārus discordo.

LESSON 112.

DATIVE WITHOUT *TO* OR *FOR*—(CONTINUED.)

1. Verbs compounded with *satĭs*, *bene*, and *malè* are followed by the dative.

2. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent.

REMARKS.

(*a*) The dative of the agent is sometimes wanting, when a general truth is intended to be expressed, or the application is obvious. In such cases, *tibi*, *vobis*, *nobis*, *hominĭbus*, or the like, is to be supplied.

(*b*) In English the preposition *by* is used before the word denoting the agent.

(*c*) The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum* is translated :—

(1) By the present infinitive passive either with or without *must* or *ought*.

(2) By the present infinitive active with *must* or *ought*, the dative being translated as the subject, and the subject, if any, as the object of the verb; as,

Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Diligence is to be used, or must be used by us: —or, We must use diligence.

3. Verbs of *motion*, and of *calling*, *inciting*, &c., are followed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, and rarely by the dative.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for verbs compounded with *satis*, &c.?—for the participle in *dus*? When may the dative of the agent be omitted? What words may in such cases be supplied? What preposition is used in English before the word denoting the agent? How is the participle in *dus* with *sum* to be translated? What is the rule for verbs of *motion*, &c.?

EXERCISE.

Tibi dii benefaciant omnes.
Cetĕris satisfacio, mihi ipsi nunquam satisfacio.
Adhibenda est nobis diligentia.
Semel calcanda est via leti. *R.* (*c.*)
Hic, milites, vincendum aut moriendum est.
Si vis me flere, dolendum est primùm ipsi tibi. *R.* (*c*) (2.)
Legendus mihi sæpe est ille liber.
Moriendum certè est. *R.* (*a*) and (*c*)
Illæ ad templum Pallădis ibant.
Ille ad prætōrem homines traxit.
Clamor it cœlo.

LESSON 113.

DATIVE WITH *EST*.

Est is followed by a dative denoting *a possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

NOTE.—*Est*, when thus used, may generally be translated by the verb *to have*, with the dative as its subject, and the nominative as its object; as, *Est mihi liber* :—*mihi*, I, *est*, have, *liber*, a book.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for *est* with the dative? How is *est* with its dative and subject to be translated?

EXERCISES.

I. Leōni est præcipua generositas.
Castōri pilus est mollissimus.
Elephanto est proboscis eximiæ longitudinis.
Multis serpentibus exitiāle virus est.
Chameleonti figūra est lacertæ.
Branchiæ non sunt balænis nec delphīnis.
Insectis omnibus sunt seni pedes.
Longæ regibus sunt manus.
Est hominī similitūdo quædam cum Deo.

II. Each has his own way. — Suus quisque mos sum.
I also have friends. — Sum et ego amīcus.
I have a father at home. — Sum ego domus pater.
We have mellow apples. — Sum ego mitis pomum.
Spiders and scorpions have eight feet. — Aranea et scorpio octo pes sum.
The fig, the vine, and the plane-tree have very broad leaves. — Latus folium sum ficus, vitis, et platānus.
The myrtle, the pomegranate, and the olive have narrow leaves. — Angustus folium sum myrtus, punica, et olea.

LESSON 114.

TWO DATIVES.

Sum, and many other verbs, take two datives, denoting respectively *the object to which*, and *the end for which* any thing is, or is done.

NOTE 1.—In this connection *sum* may be translated *is*, *brings*, *gives*, *affords*, *causes*, *serves as* or *for*, *conduces* or *contributes to*, &c.

NOTE 2.—The dative of *the end* is often found without the dative of the object.

NOTE 3.—The dative of the end with *sum*, &c., may often be translated like a predicate nominative; as, *Est voluptāti*, It is a pleasure.

NOTE 4.—The dative of the person is often expressed in English by a possessive adjective, agreeing with the dative of the end, or by a possessive case.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for two datives? How may *sum* in this connection be translated? Which of these datives is found without the other? How may the dative of the end with *sum* often be translated? How is the dative of the person often expressed in English?

EXERCISES.

I. Hoc nobis est honōri.
Tua valetūdo nobis est magnæ sollicitudīni.
Ampla domus sæpe domīno est dedecōri.
Id tibi honōri habētur. N. 3.
Mihi librum dono[a] pater dedit.
Maturāvit consŭli venīre auxilio. N. 4.
Divitiæ multis fuērunt exitio. N. 3 and 4.
Exitio est avīdis mare nautis.

(a) As a present.

II. Sedition almost caused ruin to the city.	Seditio prope urbs excidium sum.
This is thought an honor to us.	Hic honor duco ego.
This conduces to your[a] advantage.	Hic tu sum commŏdum.
This contributed to Cæsar's[a] honor.	Hic Cæsar honor sum.
It is a very great care to me.	Ego magnus sum cura.
The ant serves for an example.[b]	Exemplum sum formica.

(a) N. 4. (b) N. 3.

LESSON 115.

VOCATIVE.

The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

NOTE.—The vocative, like the interjection, forms no part of a proposition, but shows to whom the discourse is addressed.

INTERJECTIONS.

Most of the interjections may be followed by the vocative.
En, *ecce*, *O*, and *pro*, may be followed by the nominative, and *en*, *ecce*, *O*, *heu*, and *pro*, by the accusative.
Hei and *væ* are followed by the dative.

QUESTIONS.—How is the vocative used? What is the use of the vocative? What is an interjection? What case may follow most interjections? What interjections may be followed by a nominative?—by an accusative?—by a dative?

EXERCISES.

I. Mercŭri,[a] facunde nepos[b] Atlantis.
O navis, referent in mare te novi fluctus.
Diānam tenĕræ dicīte virgĭnes.

O diva, gratum quæ regis Antium.
Eheu! fugāces, Posthŭme, Posthŭme, labuntur anni.
O vir fortis atque amīcus.
En quatuor aras!—Heu me infelīcem!
O præclārum custōdem!
Hei mihi!—Væ victis!

II. Whither, Bacchus, dost thou hurry me?	Quŏ ego, Bacchus, rapio.
O happy thou (*acc.*) Bollanus! (*voc.*)	O tu, Bollānus, felix!
Septimius about-to-go with me to Cadiz.	Septimius[b] Gades[c] adeo[d] ego cum.
Friend, whence comest thou?	Amīcus, unde venio?
O immortal gods! (*nom.*)	Pro deus immortālis!
Ah me miserable! (*acc.*)	Heu ego miser!

(*a*) Less. 9, Exc. 2. (*b*) Less. 89. (*c*) Less. 97, 4. (*d*) Future active participle.

LESSON 116.

ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, &c.

1. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are usally limited by the ablative.

REMARK 1.—*Opus* and *usus* are sometimes construed with the nominative, the genitive, or the accusative.

2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *prædĭtus*, and *fretus*, are followed by the ablative.

REMARK 2.—These adjectives often take an infinitive, or a clause, and *dignus* and *indignus* sometimes take a genitive.

REMARK 3.—*Dignor* and *dignè* derivatives of *dignus*, are likewise construed with the ablative.

3. Perfect participles denoting *origin*, often take an ablative of the *source* without a preposition.

NOTE.—Participles denoting origin are *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *edĭtus*, *genĭtus*, and the like.

4. *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative.

REMARK 4.—*Utor*, &c., sometimes take an accusative, and *potior* is also found with the genitive. Less. 107, 3.

5. Verbs signifying to *rejoice, glory* or *confide in, rely* or *depend upon, exchange for, mingle with, feast* or *live upon, consist of*, and some others, often take an ablative without a preposition.

QUESTIONS.—What is the construction of *opus* and *usus*? What is the rule respecting *dignus*, &c.?—respecting perfect participles denoting origin? What words are included in this rule? What is the construction of *utor*, &c.?—of words signifying to rejoice in, &c.?

EXERCISES.

Corpŏri[a] cibo ac potiōne opus est.
Nunc anīmis opus est, nunc pectŏre firmo.
Nunc virĭbus usus est, nunc manĭbus rapĭdis.
Pauca memoriâ digna evenēre.
Romŭlus imperio potītus est.
Epicūrus confirmat deos[b] membris humānis esse prædĭtos.
Pisces pinnis velŭti remis[c] utuntur.
O puĕri, casŭlis et collĭbus vivīte contenti.
Numĭdæ plerùmque lacte et ferīnâ carne vescebantur.
Elephantus proboscĭde ceu rostro[d] longo utĭtur.
Curio vobis fretus hoc fecit.
Multæ bestiæ aliis vescuntur.
Orte Saturno, tibi cura magni Cæsăris data est.

(*a*) Less. 113. (*b*) Less. 95, 3.
(*c*) *Remis* is connected to *pinnis* by the adverb *velŭti*. Less. 93, 8.
(*d*) Connected to *proboscĭde* by *ceu*. Less. 93, 8.

II. There is need of magistrates.	Magistrātus opus sum.
There is need of examples.	Exemplum opus sum.
We enjoy the plains and mountains.	Ego campus et mons fruor.
We are not deserving of censure.	Non sum dignus reprehensĭo.
The life which we enjoy is short.	Vita, qui fruor, brevis sum.
With these(things) I am content.	Hic sum contentus.
Many men abuse their leisure.	Multus homo otium suum abūtor.
Curio is possessed of the highest talents.	Curio summus ingenium prædĭtus sum.
Exert (*sing.*) all (your) powers.	Utor vis totus.
Learn (*sing.*) to be content with little.	Disco parvus (*neut.*) sum contentus.
Augustus possessed alone the Roman government.	Augustus imperium Romanus solus potior.
Trusting to my own opinion I have erred.	Meus opinio fretus erro.
I rejoice in your dignity.	Lætor tuus dignĭtas.
He glories in his victory.	Suus victoria glorior.
I rely on his advice.	Is consilium nitor.
He exchanged sheep for horses.	Ovis muto equus.
They trusted in bodily strength.	Confĭdo corpus (*gen.*) firmĭtas.
They live upon flesh.	Caro vivo.

LESSON 117.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, &c.

1. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE 1.—The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice, is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. Less. 124.

2. Verbs which in English are followed by *with*, commonly take the ablative in Latin without a preposition.

NOTE 2.—With the ablative of *accompaniment*, *cum* is usually expressed; as, *Cæsar cum omnibus copiis sequitur*, Cæsar follows with all (his) forces.

NOTE 3.—The ablative without a preposition is often used to denote that *in accordance* with which any thing is, or is done; as, *Nostro more*, According to our custom.

3. Verbs signifying *to abound*, and *to be destitute*, take the ablative without a preposition. See L. 107, 3.

4. A noun denoting that of which any thing *is deprived*, or from which it *is freed*, *removed* or *separated*, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

5. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

Pietāte filius, A son in affection.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for nouns denoting the cause, &c. ?—for the voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice ?—for verbs which in English are followed by *with* ?—for the ablative of accompaniment ?—for that *in accordance* with which any thing is, or is done ?—for verbs signifying to *abound*, &c. ?—for a noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, &c. ?—for the noun denoting *in what respect* the signification of a noun, adjective, or verb is taken ?

EXERCISES.

I. Canis custodiæ causâ alītur.
Apollo imprūdens Narcissum disco perēmit.
Mortuum mare ventis non movētur.
Ancus Marcius Latīnos bello domuit.
Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen suum morībus[a] meruit.
Differunt rosæ multitudĭne foliōrum, colōre, et odōre.
Hirundĭnes nidos luto construunt.
Struthiocamēlus non a terrâ pennis tollĭtur.
Lepus aurĭbus longis et pedum celeritāte est notus.
Omnĭbus modis miser sum. haaaaw

(a) Less. 91, 6.

II. Terra se gramĭne vestit.
Terrōre implētur Africa.
Tyrii naves onĕrant auro.
Urbs redundat militĭbus.
Villa abundat lacte, caseo, et melle.
Nudantur arbŏres foliis.
Me possessionĭbus meis pepulisti.
Clodium diligo, et a Clodio diligor.
Cimbri et Teutŏni a C. Mario pulsi sunt.
Corōna a popŭlo data est.
Ille e concĭlio multis cum millĭbus ibat.
Cæsar cum omnĭbus copiis Helvetios sequi cœpit.

III. Some insects are armed with stings.	Alĭquis insectum aculeus armo.
The walnut is protected by a double covering.	Nux juglans gemĭnus operimentum protĕgo.
Magpies are distinguished by a long tail.	Pica longus insignis cauda sum.
The cock announces the coming day by crowing.	Gallus dies veniens cantus nuntio.
The house of Tullus Hostilius was struck by lightning.	Domus Tullus Hostilĭus fulmen ĭco.
Men cannot do without air.	Aĕr homo careo non possum.
The king was vanquished in war.	Rex bellum vinco.
Our garden abounds in flowers.	Hortus noster flos abundo.
Themistocles was banished from Athens by the votes of the people.	Themistŏcles popŭlus suffragium Athēnæ[a] ejĭcio.
Carthage was destroyed by Scipio.	Carthāgo a Scipio deleo.
Agrigentum a city of Sicily, was destroyed by the Carthaginians.	Agrigentum, Sicilia urbs, a Carthaginiensis diruo.
Deiotarus was called king by the senate.	Deiotārus rex a senātus appello.

(a) Less. 108, 2.

LESSON 118.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE AND TIME.

1. The price of a thing is put in the ablative.

Exc.—The genitives *tanti, quanti,* and their compounds, and also *pluris* and *minōris,* are used to denote a price.

Remark 1.—The ablative of price is often an adjective of quantity or value without a noun; as, *magno, parvo, vili,* &c.

2. A noun denoting the time *at* or *within which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

REMARK 2.—A precise time is often denoted by *ante*, *post*, or *abhinc* with the accusative or the ablative; as, *Paucos post dies. Paucis ante diebus. Abhinc annos* or *annis decem*:—or by the neuter accusative *id* with the genitive.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the price of a thing? What words are excepted? How is the ablative of price often expressed without a noun? What is the rule for the ablative of time? How is a precise time often denoted?

EXERCISES.

I. Vendĭdit hic[a] auro patriam.
Magno pretio virtus æstimātur.
Reges pacem ingenti pretio mercabantur.
Isocrătes unam oratiōnem viginti talentis vendĭdit.
Vendĭdi meam domum pluris.
Parvo pretio ea[b] vendĭdi.
Hiĕme ursi in antris dormiunt.
Postĕro die Helvetii castra[c] ex eo loco movent.
Nemo mortalium omnĭbus horis sapit.
Proxĭmo triennio omnes gentes subēgit.
Consul fuit abhinc annos quindĕcim.
Mortuus est alĭquot ante annos.
Vēnit id tempŏris.—Veniet ad id diēi.

(*a*) *Hic*, this (man). Less. 91, 4. (*b*) *Ea*, those (things). Less. 91, 5. (*c*) Less. 91, 6.

II. The book cost me (i. e. was or stood to me at) ten asses.	Liber ego[a] consto decussis.
The house is of great value.	Domus consto ingens merces.
He sold his house for a large sum.	Vendo suus domus grandis pecunia.
The same day ambassadors came to Cæsar.	Idem dies legātus ad Cæsar venio.
We sailed in the winter.	Hiems navĭgo.
He sold the farm for less.	Ager parvus vendo.

(*a*) Less. 109.

LESSON 119.

CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

1. The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quàm* is omitted.

2. When *quàm* is expressed after a comparative, the things compared are put in the same case. Less. 88, 2.

NOTE 1.—***Quàm*** is sometimes understood after ***plus***, ***minus***, and ***amplius***.

3. The *degree* of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative after comparatives, and words implying comparison.

NOTE 2.—***By*** may commonly be used in English before the ablative denoting degree of difference; as, *Dimidio minor*, Less by half.

NOTE 3.—The comparative degree may sometimes be translated by the positive with *too* or *rather*; as *tristior*, rather sad.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the construction of the comparative when *quàm* is omitted?—when *quàm* is expressed? With what words is *quàm* sometimes understood? What is the rule for the degree of difference between objects compared? What preposition may be used in English before the ablative denoting degree of difference? How may the comparative sometimes be translated?

EXERCISES.

I. Nihil est optabilius sapientiâ.
Nulla bellua prudentior est elephanto.
Argentum vilius est auro.
Nihil est dulcius verâ gloriâ.
Græca lingua est difficilior quàm Romana.
Senectus imbecillior est quàm adolescentia.
Quo[a] plus habent, eo[a] plus cupiunt.
Quo quis[b] indoctior est, eo impudentior.
Hibernia dimidio (N. 2) minor est, quàm Britannia.
Vēnit multo ante lucis adventum.—Post paulo discessit.
Multo præstat.—Liberius vivēbat. (N. 3.)

(*a*) *Quo—eo*, "by how much—by so much," *or* "the more—the more."
(*b*) *Quis* for *aliquis*, any one.

II. Nothing is more amiable than virtue.	Nihil sum amabĭlis virtus.
Nothing is more laudable than clemency.	Nihil sum laudabĭlis clementia.
A disgraceful retreat is worse than death.	Turpis fuga mors sum malus.[a]
The swan is larger than the goose.	Cygnus sum anser magnus.[a]
The swan is much larger than the goose.	Cygnus sum multus anser magnus.
The wild goat is a little less than the stag.	Caprea cervus paulus parvus sum.
Good examples are more useful than precepts.	Bonus exemplum utĭlis sum quàm præceptum.
I say that the swan is larger than the goose.	Dico cygnus[b] sum[c] anser magnus.

(*a*) Less. 40, 3. (*b*) Less. 94, 3. (*c*) Less. 94, 1.

LESSON 120.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

A noun and a participle are put in the ablative absolute, to supply the place of a dependent clause.

REMARK 1.—Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may be put in the ablative absolute, when in English the participle *being* is to be supplied between them; as,

Romam venit Mario consŭle, He came to Rome, Marius being consul, *i. e.* in the consulship of Marius.

NOTE 1.—The ablative absolute in Latin may commonly be translated by the nominative absolute in English.

NOTE 2.—When it denotes time, it is sometimes translated by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, *after*, &c., and sometimes the participle or adjective is turned into a corresponding noun limited by the other noun; as,

Romŭlo regnante, while Romulus reigned, or, in the reign of Romulus. *Hannĭbāle vivo*, while Hannibal was alive, or, during the life of Hannibal.

So also the latter noun is sometimes changed; as,

Mario consŭle, while Marius was consul, or, in the consulship of Marius.

REMARK 2.—The tense of a participle is present, past, or future in reference to that of the verb with which it is connected. Hence,

REMARK 3.—When in translating a participle, it is changed to a verb, the tense of that verb will be determined by the tense of the leading verb.

NOTE 3.—When the act denoted by a perfect passive participle was performed by the subject of the leading clause, it can be translated by a perfect active participle agreeing with such subject, or by a clause having its verb in the active voice; as,

Galli, re cognĭta, obsidiōnem relinquunt, The Gauls, *having learned* the fact, abandon the siege; or, When the Gauls had learned the fact, &c. See also Less. 122.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the ablative absolute? When may two nouns or a noun and an adjective be put in the ablative absolute? How may the ablative absolute be translated? How, when it denotes time? To what does the time of a participle refer? When a participle is translated by a verb, how is its tense to be determined? When may the perfect passive participle be translated by the perfect active participle, or the present or pluperfect active?

EXERCISES.

I. Bacchus, debellātâ Indiâ, Cretam[a] vēnit.
Græci Thermopўlas, advenientĭbus Persis, occupavēre.
Maxĭmus terræ motus, regnante Romæ[b] Tiberio, accĭdit.
Crescente periclŭlo, crescunt vires.
Virtūte exceptâ, nihil amicitiâ præstabĭlius est.
Xerxes, Thermopўlis expugnātis, protĭnus Athēnas accessit.

(*a*) Less. 108, 2. (*b*) Less. 108, 1.

Hac oratiōne habīta, concilium dimīsit.
Natus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerōne et Antonio consulĭbus.
Romāni tuti non videbantur, Hannibāle vivo.

11. The sun rising, the stars flee.
When autumn approaches, storks desert cold countries.
After Troy had been taken and sacked by the Greeks, Æneas came into Italy.
Archilochus lived in the reign of Romulus.
When the sun rises, the stars flee.

Sol oriens, stella fugio.
Adventans autumnus, ciconia frigĭdus terra desĕro.
Troja a Græcus expugnātus et vastātus, Ænēas in Italia venio.
Archilŏchus vivo, regnans Romŭlus.

LESSON 121.

PARTICIPLES.

1. Active and deponent verbs have four participles, two in the active voice and two in the passive; the active ending in *ns* and *rus*, the passive in *tus*, (rarely *sus* or *xus*,) and in *dus*.

Note 1.—The future passive participle of neuter deponents is only used impersonally.

2. Neuter verbs have the participles of the active voice.

Note 2.—Some neuter verbs have the participles of the passive voice, but used impersonally.

3. The present in *ns* is translated by the English participle in *ing*; as,

Scribens, writing.

4. (*a*) The future in *rus* is commonly translated *about* or *going*, with the present infinitive; as,

Scriptūrus, about to write, or going to write.

(*b*) The participle in *rus* joined to the tenses of the verb *sum* through its various moods, forms the first periphrastic conjugation, denoting *intention* or *being upon the point of doing* a thing. In this connection also, the participle is translated by the infinitive active.

5. (*a*) The perfect in *tus* is translated by the English participles of the passive voice; as,

Amātus, loved, being loved, *or* having been loved.

(*b*) The perfect passive participle sometimes supplies the place of a verbal noun; as,

Ante Romam conditam, Before the building of Rome.

6. (*a*) The future in *dus* is commonly translated by the present infinitive passive; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

(*b*) The participle in *dus* joined to the tenses of the verb *sum* through its various moods, forms the second periphrastic conjugation, denoting *necessity* or *propriety*. In this connection it is translated *must* be or *ought* to be; as,

Delenda est Carthāgo, Carthage must be, or ought to be destroyed.

7. The perfect participles of deponent verbs have an active signification; as,

Mirātus, having admired.

8. The perfect active participles of English verbs, when no corresponding deponent verb is found in Latin, are translated into Latin by means of the ablative absolute or the subjunctive mood; thus,

"Cæsar having conquered the Gauls," may be translated:
Cæsar, victis Gallis, (literally, Cæsar, the Gauls being conquered,) or *Cæsar quum Gallos vicisset*, When Cæsar had conquered the Gauls.

REMARK.—In the former case the Latin passive participle is substituted for the English active, and that, together with the object of the English participle, is put in the ablative.

9. Participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs.

NOTE 3.—When the participle is intended to denote the same time as the verb with which it is connected, it is put in the present; to denote an earlier time it is put in the perfect, to denote a later time it is put in the future.

QUESTIONS.—How many participles have active and deponent verbs? How is the future passive participle of deponent verbs used? What participles have neuter verbs? How are the passive participles of neuter verbs, when found, used? How is the present in *ns* translated?—the future in *rus*? How is the first periphrastic conjugation formed? How is the perfect in *tus* translated? Of what does it sometimes supply the place?—the future in *dus*? How is the second periphrastic conjugation formed? What signification have the perfect participles of deponent verbs? How are the perfect active participles of English verbs trans-

lated into Latin? When the ablative absolute is employed, what Latin participle is used? What cases follow participles? What participle is used for the purpose of denoting the same time as the verb with which it is connected?—to denote an earlier time?—a later time?

EXERCISES.

I. Epistŏlam scriptūrus sum.	Parentes venerandi sunt a lĭbĕris.
Hoc dicens ille telum mittit.	Scipio, Carthagĭne delētâ, in Italĭam rediit.
Accusātus rei capitālis.	Scipio quum Carthagĭnem delevisset, ĭn Italiam rediit.
Catulōrum oblīta leæna.	
Deus a nobis est colendus.	
II. I am about to read this book.	Sum hic liber lego.
Caius ought to be advised.	Caius moneo.
I have seen Turnus fleeing.	Video Turnus fugio.
Cæsar having said this (literally these things,) dismissed the assembly.	Cæsar hic dico concilium dimitto.
He having forgotten his promises.	Ille promissum obliviscor.
Cicero having been elected consul.	Cicĕro creo consul.
The tree being stript of its leaves.	Arbor folium nudo.
The sea abounding in monsters.	Pontus bellua scateo.
Sempronia having married Caius.	Sempronia Caius nubo. Less. 110.

LESSON 122.

TRANSLATION OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles may be translated in various ways according to their connection.

1. Participles can be translated literally; as,

Mihi ad focum sedenti, To me sitting by the fire-side.

2. Literally, but with some particle prefixed; as,

Mihi ad focum sedenti, To me *while, when, because, though, if,* &c., sitting, &c.

3. By a relative clause; as,

Mihi ad focum sedenti, To me, who am sitting, or who was sitting, &c.

4. By the English gerundive with *by* or *from*; as,

Leo rugiens puĕrum terruit, The lion by roaring terrified the boy.

5. By a noun or pronoun and verb with some particle prefixed; as,

Mihi ad focum sedenti, To me *while, when, because, as, though, if, since*, &c., I sit, am sitting, sat, was sitting, &c.

6. The perfect participle may be translated in a similar manner and also with *after*; as,

Homo lapide ictus, A man having been struck, when struck, if struck, who was struck, or had been struck, by being struck, when he was or had been struck, after he was or had been struck, after being struck, &c.

7. *Non* or *haud*, not, with a participle may sometimes be translated by *without* with the English gerundive; as,

Ille non ridens sermōnem audīvit, He heard the speech without laughing.

8. The participle when the act denoted by it is performed by the subject of the verb, may often be translated by a verb, and the following verb be connected with it by *and*; as,

Ridens exclamāvit, He laughed and exclaimed.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first mode of translating a participle?—the second?—the third?—the fourth?—the fifth?—the sixth? How may *non* with a participle sometimes be translated? When may a participle be translated by a verb, and the following verb be connected by *and*?

EXERCISE.

Translate the following sentences in all the ways above mentioned which their connection will permit:

Pii homĭnes ad felicitātem perpetuò duratūram pervenient.
Leo esuriens rugit; satiātus innoxius est.
Xerxes a Græcis victus in Persiam refūgit.
Hæc poma sedens decerpsi.
Equum emptūrus cave ne decipiāris.[a]
Victi hostes in Persiam refugient.
Ocŭlus, se non videns, alia videt.
Ad cœnam vocātus, nondum vēnit.
Dionysius, a Syracūsis expulsus, Corinthi puĕros docēbat.
Tu quòque littorĭbus nostris æternam moriens famam dedisti.
Crœsus a Cyro victus, regno spoliātus est.
Comprehensum homĭnem illi Romam duxērunt.
Haud plura locūta Dea fugit.
Cn. Pompeius ex urbe profectus iter ad legiōnes habēbat.
Omne malum nascens[b] facile opprimĭtur.

(*a*) Lesson 133, 1. (*b*) *when it is springing up*, i. e., *at its birth*.

LESSON 123.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

1. Gerunds, and supines in *um* partake of the nature both of verbs and nouns. As verbs they govern the cases of nouns following them and are limited by adverbs, and as nouns they are governed by other words.

2. Gerunds, and supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs.

3. Gerunds are governed like other nouns in the same situation.

4. Participles in *dus* of active verbs may be used instead of their gerunds, and when so used are called *gerundives*.

5. After *ad* the gerund or gerundive may be translated by the infinitive active.

6. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and denote the purpose.

7. Supines in *um* are translated by the present infinitive active.

8. The supine in *u* is a verbal noun in the ablative.

9. Supines in *u* follow adjectives signifying *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, &c., limiting their meaning to a particular thing. Less. 117, 5.

10. Supines in *u* are translated by the present infinitive, either active or passive.

QUESTIONS.—With what two parts of speech may gerunds and supines in *um* be classed? What cases follow gerunds and supines in *um*? How are gerunds governed? What are gerundives? How may the gerund or gerundive after *ad* be translated? What do supines in *um* follow? What do they denote? How are they translated? In what case are supines in *u*? What do they follow? How are they translated?

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.

Videndi depends on *studio* (Less. 100), and its object is *patres*.—*Studio*, with the desire. Less. 117.

Hæc charta inutilis est scribendo.

Scribendo, for writing. Less. 109.

Locum oppĭdo condendo cepit.

Condendo oppĭdo, for building a town,—the gerundive agreeing with *oppĭdo*, instead of the gerund. Less. 123, 4.—*oppĭdo* depends on *cepit*. Less. 109.

Consilium urbis delendæ cepit.

Delendæ, of destroying;—a gerundive: *urbis* depends on *consilium*. Less. 100.

Consilium urbem delendi cepit.

Translated like the preceding, but *urbem* is the object of the gerund *delendi*, which depends on *consilium*. Less. 100.

Ad pœnitendum propĕrat, qui citŏ judĭcat.

Ad pœnitendum, to repent. Less. 123, 5. Before *propĕrat* supply *is*, he.

Fama crescit eundo. Less. 117, 1.

Eurypўlum scitātum oracŭla Phœbi mittĭmus.

On what does *scitātum* depend? Less. 123, 6. On what does *oracŭla* depend? Less. 123, 2.

Phillippus ludos spectātum ibat.

Mirabĭle dictu.

Wonderful to tell, or to be told. *Dictu* limits *mirabĭle*, which is used substantively, Less. 91, 5; *est* being understood.

Res factu facĭlis.

Locus erat adĭtu difficĭlis.

II. Translate into Latin—

I have a hope of seeing (my) country.

Express this first by a gerund, and secondly by a gerundive.

Pure water is useful for drinking

He was recalled for the purpose of defending (his) country.

Express the purpose first by a gerund, and secondly by a gerundive with *gratiâ*. Express the same by *ad* with first a gerund, secondly a gerundive. Express the same by a supine.

VOCABULARY.

I have, *habeo* or *est mihi*.
Hope, *spes, ei, f.*
Pure, *purus, a, um.*
One's country, *patria, æ, f.*
To recal, *revŏco, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To defend, *defendo, ĕre, di, sum.*
To see, *video, ēre, di, sum.*
To drink, *bibo, ĕre, bibi, bibĭtum.*
Water, *aqua, æ, f.*
Useful, *utĭlis, e.*
For the purpose, *gratiâ.*

LESSON 124.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

As the active and passive voices are only different modes of expressing the same action, they may be interchanged without affecting the sense. In doing this the following rules are to be observed:—

1. The subject of the active voice, if a person, is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *a* or *ab*, otherwise by the ablative without a preposition.

2. The object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive.

3. If the active voice has two accusatives, the passive retains that of the thing.

4. All the cases which follow a verb in the active voice, except the accusative of the object, are retained in the passive.

REMARK.—When the object of the active voice, or the agent of the passive, is omitted, being indefinite, the voices cannot be interchanged; as, 'He eats and drinks.' 'The house was consumed.' In each of these cases, if a change of the voice is attempted, the verb will be found to have no subject.

QUESTIONS.—How is the subject of the active voice expressed in the passive?—the object of the active? What is the rule when the active voice has two accusatives? What is the rule for the cases, other than the accusative, which follow a verb in the active voice? When is it impossible to change the active into the passive voice? When, to change the passive into the active?

EXAMPLES.

Active. *Scipio Carthāginem delēvit*, Scipio destroyed Carthage. Less. 96, 1.

Agent, *Scipio*. Action, that of *destroying*. Object, *Carthage*.

Passive. *Carthāgo a Scipiōne delēta est*, Carthage was destroyed by Scipio.

Here the action is still that of *destroying*, the agent is still *Scipio*, and the object, *Carthage*.

Act. *Rogo te nummos*, I ask you for money. Less. 96, 3.

Agent, (Ego,) *I*. Action, *asking*. Object, *money*.

Pass. *A me rogātus es nummos*, You are asked for money by me.

Here the agent, the action, and the object remain the same as before.

Act. *Caius hunc librum mihi dedit*, Caius gave this book to me. Less. 109.

Pass. *Hic liber mihi a Caio datus est*, This book was given to me by Caius.

In this sentence the same changes are made as before in the agent, the verb, and the object, but the dative after the verb remains unchanged.

Act. *Scipio terrōre Africam implet*, Scipio fills Africa with terror. Less. 117, 2.

Pass. *Terrōre Africa a Scipiōne implētur*, Africa is filled with terror by Scipio.

In the following exercise the voice of the verbs is to be changed according to the preceding rules.

EXERCISE.

Fures merent pœnam, Thieves deserve punishment.
Ventus arbŏres agĭtat, The wind shakes the trees.
Vento nudantur arbŏres foliis, The trees are stripped of their leaves by the wind. Less. 117, 4.
Tibi hoc promitto, I promise you this.
Roma a Romŭlo et Remo condĭta est, Rome was founded by Romulus and Remus.
Tu ad pugnam me provŏcas, You challenge me to the contest. Less. 112, 3.

LESSON 125.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. A question is sometimes indicated by an interrogative pronoun or adjective, or by an adverb of place, time, or manner. When neither of these occurs, the interrogative particles *ne*, *num*, or *an*, are commonly employed.

2. *Ne* is always annexed to some word, and if there is a *non* in the sentence, it is annexed to that.

3. *Num* and *an* in direct questions are commonly used when a negative answer is expected, and *an* commonly indicates *impatience* or *indignation*.

4. *Nonne* commonly indicates that an affirmative answer is expected.

NOTE 1.—In translating a question, *did* is used in the perfect indefinite, *have* in the perfect definite.

NOTE 2.—In translating a single direct question the interrogative particle is omitted.

QUESTIONS.—By what means may a question be indicated? How is the interrogative *ne* always used? What kind of answer is expected when *num* or *an* is used? What does *nonne* indicate? What is the distinction in the use of *did* and *have* in translating the perfect? When are the interrogative particles omitted in translating?

EXERCISE.

Quis non paupertātem extimescit?
Unde lucem suam habet luna?
Quid feret crastīnus dies?
Quare vitia sua nemo confitētur?
Ubi aut qualis est tua mens?

Num scimus, quò se conferant[a] aves peregrinantes?
An tu me tristem esse putas?
Nonne putas me verè felicem esse?

(*a*) Less. 129.

Name the interrogative word in each of the preceding sentences.

LESSON 126.

IMPERATIVE, AND SUBJUNCTIVE FOR THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The imperative in the *second person* expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or an *entreaty;* in the *third person* it expresses a *command* only.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used to express a *wish*, an *exhortation*, a *request*, a *command*, a *permission*, or a *concession*.

3. With the imperative or the subjunctive used for the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*.

4. *Fac* or *cave* with the subjunctive, or *noli*, *nolito*, &c, with the infinitive, is often used instead of the simple imperative; as,

Fac erudias, Instruct. *Cave existimes*, Do not think.
Noli putāre, Do not suppose.

5. The subjunctive denoting a wish often follows *utĭnam*, *uti*, or *O si*.

QUESTIONS.—For what purposes is the imperative used in the second person?—in the third? For what purposes are the present and perfect subjunctive often used? How is *not* expressed with imperatives? What compound forms are often used instead of the simple imperative? What particles does the subjunctive of wishing often follow?

EXERCISE.

Ne reprehende errōres aliōrum, sed emendes potiùs tuos.
Ne tentes, quod effĭci non possit.[a]
Cave ne quid temĕre dicas,[a] aut facias.
Æquam memento servāre mentem.
Virgĭnes vestāles in urbe custodiunto ignem sempiternum.
Utĭnam lacrўmis minuerētur miseria.
Fac, ne quid aliud cures hoc tempŏre.
Nolīto, tibi[b] me[c] maledicĕre[d] posse,[d] putāre.[d]

(*a*) Less. 133. (*b*) Less. 112. (*c*) Less. 95, 3. (*d*) On what does this infinitive depend.

LESSON 127.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATION.

1. There are two modes of quoting the language of another—the *direct*, and the *indirect*.

2. When after a verb of *saying*, we use only the language of the person from whom we quote, without addition or alteration, the quotation is direct: (*oratio directa.*)

3. When in English, after the verb of saying, we introduce the quotation by the particle *that*, the quotation is indirect: (*oratio oblīqua.*)

Thus, if in quoting the language of Cæsar, we say, Cæsar said, "I came, saw, and conquered," this is a direct quotation. If we say, Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' this is an indirect quotation.

REMARK.—*Inquam* and usually *aio*, introducing a direct quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted.

In changing the direct into the indirect form in Latin, the following Rules are to be observed:—

I. In indirect quotation, the verb following the verb of saying is put in the infinitive, and its subject in the accusative; as,

Dixit se ventūrum esse, He said that he was about to come.

II. In indirect quotation, the verbs of dependent clauses connected by relatives and particles, are put in the subjunctive; as,

Alīquis dixit, qui nihil sciat, eum nihil timēre, Somebody has remarked, that he who knows nothing fears nothing.

III. In indirect quotation, pronouns of the first person are changed to the third; as,

(Direct,) *Caius dixit, Ego tibi librum dabo*, Caius said, I will give a book to you.
(Indirect,) *Caius dixit se tibi librum datūrum* (*esse*,) Caius said, that he would give a book to you.

IV. In indirect quotation, the reflexives *sui* and *suus* commonly refer to the person whose language is quoted; as,

Caius dicit se suos servos ad te citò missūrum (esse,) Caius says, that he will shortly send his servants to you.

NOTE 1.—The verb of saying is in Latin often omitted or implied in a verb of different signification, where in English *said* or *saying* must be supplied.

NOTE 2.—When the infinitive denotes the same time as the verb of saying on which it depends, it is put in the present; when it denotes an earlier time, it is put in the perfect; when it denotes a later time, it is put in the future.

QUESTIONS.—How many modes are there of quotation? When is a quotation said to be direct? When indirect? What is the rule for the position of *inquam* and *aio*? In indirect quotation what is the rule for the mood of the verb following the verb of saying?—for its subject?—for the verbs of dependent clauses connected by relatives or particles?—for pronouns which in the direct form are of the first person?—for the use of *sui* and *suus*? What is said of the omission of the verb of saying? What of the tense of the infinitive?

EXERCISE.

Change the form of the following quotations from the direct to the indirect or the reverse:

Caius dicit, "*Ego epistŏlam scribo,*" Caius says, "I am writing a letter."

DIRECTIONS.—For the changes of *ego*, see above Rules I., III., and IV., for that of *scribo*, see Rule I. and Note 2.

Caius dixit, "*Ego epistŏlam scribo,*" Caius said, "I am writing a letter."

Caius dicit, "*Ego epistŏlam ad te misi,*" Caius says, "I have sent a letter to you."

Caius dixit, '*se epistŏlam ad te misisse,*' Caius said, that 'he had sent a letter to you.'

Caius dixit '*se filios suos ad te missūrum (esse,)*' Caius said, that 'he would send his sons to you.'

Caius scribit '*se cras ventūrum (esse,)*' Caius writes, that 'he shall come to-morrow.'

Socrātes dicēre solēbat, '*omnes*[a] *in eo, quod scirent,*[b] *satis esse eloquentes,*' Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all are sufficiently eloquent in that which they understand.'

Allobrŏges demonstrant, '*sibi*[c] *præter agri solum nihil esse relīqui,*'[d] The Allobroges represent, that nothing is left for them except the bare soil, (literally, the soil of (their) land.)

Dumnŏrix dixit '*libĕrum se*[e] *liberæque civitātis*[e] *esse,*' Dumnorix declared that he was free and of a free state.

Caius dixit '*se plus daturum fuisse,*[f] *si plus habuisset,*'[f] ——that he would have given more, if he had had more.

(*a*) Less. 91, 4, and 95, 3. (*b*) Rule II. (*c*) Rule 3. (*d*) Less. 103, 3. (*e*) Less. 102, 1 and R. 1. (*f*) Subjunctive in *oratio directa*. Less. 131, 1 and (*a*.)

LESSON 128.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ESSENTIAL PART—INDIRECT ALLUSIONS.

I. A dependent clause has its verb in the subjunctive, when connected, *as an essential part*, with a proposition whose verb is in the infinitive or the subjunctive.

NOTE 1.—Such clauses may be connected by relatives, relative adverbs, or conjunctions.

REMARK.—The subjunctive in Latin expresses what is *contingent* or *hypothetical*; and is translated into English by the subjunctive or the potential, and sometimes by the indicative or the imperative.

II. 1. A dependent clause containing an indirect allusion to the thoughts or language of another, has its verb in the subjunctive.

NOTE 2.—Clauses containing an indirect allusion are often connected by a relative or by the conjunctions *quòd* or *quia*, and are commonly translated by the indicative.

2. The opinion entertained by the writer, that the sentiment or allegation, to which he alludes, is just and true, is sometimes indicated by the indicative mood.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the verb of a clause connected as an essential part with an infinitive or a subjunctive? How may such clauses be connected? What does the subjunctive in Latin express? How may it be translated? What is the rule for the subjunctive in Indirect Allusions? By what connectives are such clauses united with the leading clause? What does the indicative in such clauses denote?

EXERCISE.

Eo simus animo,[a] ut nihil in malo ducāmus,[b] *quod sit a natūra constitūtum.*

Let us be of such a mind, as to reckon nothing among evils, which has been appointed by nature.

Mos est Athēnis laudāri in conciōne eos, *qui sint in prœliis interfecti.*

Quid potest tam apertum,[c] quàm esse alĭquod numen, *quo hæc*[d] *regantur.*

Socrātes accusātus est, quòd corrumpĕret juventūtem.

Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) *he corrupted the youth.*

Nemo voluptātem, quia voluptas sit, aspernātur.

Plato escam voluptātem appellat, quòd eâ homĭnes capiantur.

Lysander accusātus est, quòd sacerdōtes fani corrumpĕre conātus esset.

Phrygii ostendunt platānum, ex quâ pependĕrit Marsyas.

Quĕrĭtur genus humānum, quòd forte regātur.
Aulo omnes infesti erant, quòd armātus dedecŏre salūtem quæsivĕrat?

(a) Less. 101, 3. (b) Less. 133, 1 and 2. (c) sc. *esse*. (d) Less. 91, 5. (e) Why is the indicative used.

LESSON 129.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Dependent clauses containing an indirect question take the subjunctive.

NOTE.—A question is indirect when its purport is stated without the interrogative form.

2. The subjunctive in indirect questions is commonly translated by the indicative.

3. The clause containing the indirect question may be either the subject or the object of the leading verb.

QUESTIONS.—In what mood is the verb of an indirect question? When is a question indirect? How is the subjunctive in indirect questions translated? What relations may the clause containing the indirect question have to the principal verb?

EXERCISES.

I. Qualis sit anĭmus, ipse anĭmus nescit.
Quis ego sim, me[a] rogĭtas?—Vita, quàm sit brevis, cogĭta.
Non refert,[b] quàm multos sed quàm bonos libros habeas ac legas.
Incertum[c] est,[b] quàm longa cujusque vita futūra sit.[d]
Dici vix potest,[b] quanta sit vis musicæ.
Cato, quid quoque die dixisset, audisset, egisset, commemorābat[e] vespĕri.—Haud scio, an mutet[g] anĭmum.
Non intelligunt[b] homĭnes, quàm magnum vectīgal sit parsimonia.
Nescio[b] unde sol ignem habeat.
Ratio docet, quid faciendum[f] fugiendumve sit.
Quærĭtur, cur doctissĭmi homĭnes de maxĭmis rebus dissentiant.
Quid quæque nox aut dies ferat, incertum est.
Haud scio, an hæc omnia vera sint.
Tempŏris fuga quàm sit irreparabĭlis, quis dubĭtat?
Vide, quàm sit vaga volubilisque fortūna.

(a) Less. 96, N. 6. (b) Is the indirect question in this sentence the *subject* or the *object* of the leading verb? (c) With what does this adjective agree? Less. 91, 7. (d) *Futura sit*, will be. (e) "Used to call to mind." Less. 47, N. 2. (f) Less. 121, 6. (g) "Will change."

II. Inform me where the gods are.	Doceo ego, ubi sum deus.
He knows-not what he has read.	Ille nescio, quis lego.
Whether we shall live till evening, God only knows.	An ad vespĕra victūrus sum, Deus solus scio.
It is asked, whether there is one world or more.	Quæro, unusne mundus sum, an plus, (*plur.*)
Tell me[b] how many wars the Romans carried on with the Carthaginians.	Dico[a] ego[b] quot bellum Romānus cum Carthaginiensis gero.
I know-not what to say.	Quis dico, nescio.
Learn what it is to live.	Disco (*sing.*) quis sum vivo.

(*a*) *Dico, duco,* and *facio,* drop the final *e* in the second person singular of the imperative, making *dic, duc,* and *fac.*
(*b*) Less. 110, 3.

ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

Qualis sit anĭmus, ipse anĭmus nescit, The mind itself knows not, what the mind is.

This is a compound sentence consisting of a leading clause, *ipse anĭmus nescit,* and a dependent clause, *qualis sit anĭmus.*

ANALYSIS.—*Anĭmus* is the grammatical subject of the leading clause, and *ipse anĭmus* the logical subject. *Nescit* is the grammatical predicate, and *nescit* with the dependent clause is the logical predicate.

In the dependent clause, *anĭmus* is the subject and *qualis sit* the predicate, both of which are grammatical.

PARSING.—*Ipse* is an intensive (i. e. an emphatic) pronoun, (Less. 41,) from *ipse, ipsa, ipsum;* N. *ipse,* G. *ipsĭus;* it is found in the masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *anĭmus;* "Adjectives, adjective pronouns," &c.

Anĭmus is a common noun, &c. &c., nominative to *nescit.* Less. 90, 1.

Nescit is an active verb, &c. &c., agreeing with its subject-nominative *anĭmus,* Less. 90, 2: its object is the dependent clause. Less. 96, R. 2.

Qualis is an adjective of the third declension and two terminations, from *qualis, quale;* N. and V. *qualis,* G. *qualis;* it is found in the masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *anĭmus.* Less. 91, 1.

Anĭmus, parsed as in the leading clause; nominative to *sit.*

Sit is the substantive verb, from *sum, esse, fui, fulūrus;* it is found in the subjunctive mood, present tense, (*sim, sis, sit,*) third person singular, agreeing with *anĭmus.* Less. 90, 2.

QUESTION.—Why is *sit* in the subjunctive mood? A. Because "Dependent clauses," &c. Less. 129, 1.

LESSON 130.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

In double questions, whether direct or indirect, the first is either introduced by *utrùm*, *num*, or the enclitic *ne*, and the second by *an*; or the first has no interrogative particle, and the second is introduced by *an* or *ne*.

NOTE.—In indirect questions the interrogative particle in the first question is translated *whether*, in the second *or*. *Necne* in the second question is translated *or not*. In direct questions the first particle is not translated, the second is *or*.

QUESTIONS.—In double questions how may each question be introduced? In indirect questions how is the interrogative particle in the first question translated?—in the second? What is the rule for translating these particles in direct questions?

EXERCISE.

Utrùm major est sol, an minor, quàm terra?
Casune mundus est effectus, an vi divīnâ?
Num sol mobĭlis est, an immobĭlis?
Sumusne mortāles, an immortāles?
Quæritur, unusne sit mundus, an plures.
Nihil[a] refert, utrùm sit aureum[b] pocŭlum, an vitreum.[b]

(*a*) Less. 106, R. 2. (*b*) A predicate adjective.

LESSON 131.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

CONDITION AND CONCLUSION.

1. A condition or supposition, when represented either as unfounded, or as merely assumed without reference to its reality, has its verb in the subjunctive.

2. When the writer would represent the thing supposed as really true, the verb of the conditional clause is put in the indicative.

NOTE.—The principal particles connecting conditional clauses are:—

Si, *if*.	etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, *and* licet,	*although*.
ni *or* nisi, *unless, if not*.		

tamquam, quasi, ac sī, ut sī, velut sī, velūti, *and* ceu,	*as if.*	quamvis, *however.* modŏ, dum, *and* dummŏdo,	*provided.*

(*a*) After *sī* and its compounds the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply that the supposition is unfounded, and the same mood and tenses in the conclusion imply, that the latter is invalid because the former is so.

(*b*) The pluperfect subjunctive after *sī* is translated by the English indicative.

(*c*) The conditional clause with *sī* is frequently not expressed but implied.

(*d*) The present and perfect in a conditional clause imply that the thing supposed may or may not exist or have existed, and the same tenses in the conclusion imply a similar uncertainty.

QUESTIONS.—When is the verb of a conditional clause put in the subjunctive? When in the indicative? What are the principal particles connecting conditional clauses? What is implied by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive after *sī* and its compounds? When are verbs in the subjunctive in conditional clauses translated by the indicative? What clause is frequently not expressed? What is implied by the present and perfect in conditions and conclusions?

EXERCISE.

Nisi Alexander essem, essem libenter Diogĕnes, *If I were not Alexander, I would gladly be Diogenes.*

The imperfect subjunctive in the conditional clause, *Nisi Alexander essem*, implies that the supposition that the speaker was not Alexander is false, or in other words, that he is Alexander; the same mood and tense in the conclusion, *Essem libenter Diogĕnes*, imply that he would not gladly be Diogenes, because the supposition, on which depended his willingness to be so, is not true. Rem. (*a*).

Hæc si vidēres, lacrўmas non tenēres.

Vidēres, shouldst see. *Non tenēres*, wouldst not refrain from. *Hæc*, see Less. 91, 5.

Si hæc civĭtas est, civis sum ego.

What does the indicative *est* here imply? Less. 131, 2.

Socrătes servo aiēbat, "Cædĕrem te, nisi irascĕrer."

Is this sentence, quoted from Socrates, a direct or an indirect quotation? Less. 127. Which is the conditional clause? What does it imply? Why is *servo* in the dative? What is the object of *aiēbat*? Less. 96, R. 2.

Non est magnus pumĭlio, licèt in monte constitĕrit.

Constitĕrit, may have placed himself, i. e. though he stand. The condition is here assumed without reference to its reality, that is, it is not implied that he does, or that he does not stand upon a mountain. Less. 131, 1.

Si diutiùs vixisset, nemīnem habuisset parem.

Magno me metu[a] liberābis, Catilīna,[b] dummŏdo inter me atque te murus intersit.

Vita brevis est, etiamsi supra centum annos duret.

Si vis amāri, priùs ama.

Si voluisses amāri, priùs amavisses.

(*a*) Less. 117, 4. (*b*) Less. 115.

LESSON 132.

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ADVERBS OF TIME.

1. *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, until, and *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, before, are commonly followed by the subjunctive.

2. *Cùm* or *quum* is commonly followed by the subjunctive; but when it denotes time merely, with no reference to a cause, the verb is put in the indicative, unless it be in the imperfect or pluperfect tense.

REMARK 1.—The subjunctive after adverbs of time is commonly translated by the indicative; as, *Quum sciret*, when he knew.

REMARK 2.—*Quum* introducing a second clause, is commonly to be translated at the beginning of the first clause.

QUESTIONS.—By what mood are *dum*, *donec*, &c., commonly followed? What is the rule respecting *cùm* or *quum*? How is the subjunctive commonly translated after adverbs of time? Where is *quum* to be translated when it introduces a second clause?

EXERCISE.

Rhenus servat nomen, donec oceăno misceātur.
Dum hic venīret, locum relinquĕre nolui.
Alexander cùm Gazam obsidēret, sagittâ ictus est.
Darius cùm Athenienses punīre vellet, classem in Græciam misit.
Saturnus cùm fugātus esset a filio, in Italiam venit.
Ino cùm in Ægyptum delāta esset, Isis est facta.
Alexander cùm Thebas vastāret Pindări domo pepercit.

LESSON 133.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PURPOSE, OBJECT, AND RESULT.

1. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, or a relative.

PURPOSE.

2. The subjunctive denoting a purpose or object is translated by the English potential or the infinitive; as, *Edo*, *ut vivam*, I eat to live, or that I may live.

3. ***Ut*** **is sometimes omitted after verbs signifying** ***to be willing*** **or** ***unwilling***, **to** ***permit***, ***ask***, ***advise***, ***remind***, **&c.; as,**

Quid vis faciam? What do you wish me to do?

NOTE 1.—*That not* is usually expressed by *ne*.

4. After words denoting fear, ***ne*** **is rendered** ***that*** **or** ***lest***, **and** ***ut***, ***that not***; **and the subjunctive present is generally to be translated by the indicative future.**

5. ***That*** **before a comparative is expressed by** ***quò***; **as,**

Adjūta me, quò id fiat faciliùs, Aid me, that it may be done more easily.

6. ***That*** **or** ***but that***, **after negative propositions and questions implying a negative, is expressed by** ***quin***; **as,**

Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortālis sit anĭmus, A wise man will never doubt, that the mind is immortal.

7. ***That not***, **after verbs of hindering and refusing, is expressed by** ***quominus.***

NOTE 2.—*Quin* and *quominus* are often translated by *from* with the English *gerundive*; as, *Non me impedies, quominus id faciam*, You will not hinder me from doing that.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the mood of the verb in a clause denoting a *purpose*, &c.? How is the subjunctive denoting a purpose or object to be translated? After what verbs is *ut* sometimes omitted? How is *that not* usually expressed? How are *ne* and *ut* rendered after words denoting fear? How is the present subjunctive to be translated after words denoting fear? How is *that* expressed before a comparative? When is *that* or *but that* expressed by *quin*? How is *that not* expressed after verbs of hindering and refusing? How are *quin* and *quominus* often translated?

EXERCISES.

I. Quæso, ut me benignè attentēque audiātis.
Nunquam efficies, ut cancri rectà procēdant.
Si vis vidēri doctus, opĕram da, ut sis,[a]
Aqua marīna salsa est, ne putrescat.
Quid obstat, quominus nos beāti simus?
Negāri non potest, quin turpius[b] sit fallĕre quàm falli.
Oculi palpĕbris sunt munīti, ne quid incīdat.
Vereor, ut pax firma sit.
Vereor, ne fames in urbe sit.
Timeo, ne non impĕtrem.
Lacedæmonii legātos misērunt, qui eum accusārent.
Pyrrhus ad Romānos legātum misit, qui pacem petĕret.

(*a*) What is to be supplied? (*b*) What does this adjective qualify?

II. The body needs many things, that it may be well.	Corpus multus egeo res, ut valeo.
There was a law among the Tauri, that strangers should be sacrificed to Diana.	Sum (*imperf.*) lex apud Tauri, ut hospes Diāna immŏlo.
We eat to live; you (*plur.*) live to eat.	Ego edo, ut vivo; tu vivo, ut edo.

LESSON 134.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

RESULT OR CONSEQUENCE.

1. The Latin subjunctive denoting a result is commonly translated by the English indicative, but the imperfect by the perfect indefinite.

2. The relative, in clauses denoting a result, may often be translated *as*, and *quin*, *as not*, with an infinitive.

3. A dependent clause denotes a result after *tam*, *talis*, and other words denoting *such*, *so*, *so great*, &c., or *ille*, *is*, &c., in the sense of *such* or *so*.

4. After verbs signifying *to be*, *to be found*, &c., when their subject is indefinite, and likewise after general negatives, or interrogative clauses implying a negative, a relative clause denoting a result may follow without the sign *such* or *so*.

NOTE 1.—In all cases, however, the subjunctive denoting a result depends upon a clause implying a character, quality, or other circumstance, from which, as a cause, the result or consequence is supposed to follow.

NOTE 2.—In some interrogative sentences a verb and relative seem to be implied; as, *Quis dubĭtet?* i. e. *Quis est, qui dubĭtet?* Who can doubt?

QUESTIONS.—How is the Latin subjunctive denoting a result to be translated? How are the relative and *quin* often translated in clauses denoting a result? When does a dependent clause denote a result? When may a subjunctive denoting a result be used without the sign *such* or *so*? What is always implied in the clause on which the subjunctive denoting a result depends? What seem to be implied in some interrogative sentences?

EXERCISE.

Stellārum tanta multitūdo est, ut numerāri non possint.
In Alpĭbus tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.
Nemo est tam bonus ac provĭdus, quin interdum peccet.[a]
Nemo est tam stultus quin hæc fateātur.
Quis tam durus est, qui precĭbus non flectātur?[a]
Draco leges, quibus Athenienses uterentur, primus omnium tulit.
Caius non is erat, qui id dicĕret.
Non tu is es, qui, qui sis, nescias.
Fuĕrunt eā tempestāte, qui dicĕrent.
Nemo est, qui haud intellĭgat.
Quis est, qui hoc ignōret?
Pompeius idoneus non est, qui impĕtret.[b]

(*a*) Less. 134, 2. (*b*) *Qui impĕtret*, to obtain. So the relative with *dignus*, *indignus* and *aptus*, and the subjunctive.

LESSON 135.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

1. The present subjunctive or perfect definite is used in dependent clauses, when the verb on which it depends is in the present, the perfect definite, or a future.

2. The imperfect or pluperfect follows the imperfect, the perfect indefinite, or the pluperfect.

Present.	Vĕnit, *He comes* or *is coming*,	ut portas
Perf. Def.	Vēnit, *He has come* or *is come*,*	claudat,
Future.	Veniet, *He will come*,	*to shut*, or
Fut. Perf.	Venerit, *He will have come*,	*that he may shut, the gates.*

Imperf.	Veniēbat, *He was coming*,	ut portas
Perf. Indef.	Venit, *He came*,	claudĕret, *to*
Pluperf.	Venĕrat, *He had come* or *was come*,*	*shut*, or *that he might shut, the gates.*

* *Is* and *was* are sometimes used instead of *has* and *had* in forming the perfect and pluperfect tenses of neuter verbs of motion.

NOTE.—The imperfect may likewise follow the *historical present*; as, Legātos mittunt, ut pacem impetrārent.

QUESTIONS.—After what tenses may the present and perfect definite be used? —the imperfect or pluperfect? What tense may follow the historical present?

EXERCISE.

The porter is coming to open the gate.	Janĭtor venio, ut porta aperio.
The porter is come to open the gate.	
Let the porter come to open the gates.	
The porter will come to open the gates.	
I am not so stupid as to say that.	Non sum ita hebes, ut is dico.
I have not been so stupid as to say that.	
I had not been so stupid as to say that.	
I was not so stupid as to say that.	
I am not so stupid as to have said that.	
There were (some) who said.	Sum, qui dico.
The porter will have come to open the gates.	

APPENDIX.

LESSON A.

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

NOTE.—In the following rules, when liquids are mentioned, only *l* and *r* are intended, and even *l* is not here considered as a liquid when following *g* or *t*.

I.—SIMPLE WORDS.

A.—A single Consonant, or a Mute and a Liquid, between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, between the last two vowels, must be joined to the latter; as, *t* in *pa'-ter*, *cr* in *a'-cris*, and in *vol'-ŭ-cris*.

EXC.—*Tib'-i* and *sib'-i* are commonly excepted.

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, between the vowels of two unaccentod syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *r* in *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*, *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*.

3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel; as, *t* in *i-tin'-ĕ-ra*, *gr* in *a-gres'-tis*.

4. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel; as, *m* in *dom'-i-nus*.

5. *H* between two vowels is joined to the latter, unless it follows *c*, *p*, or *t*, with which it unites; as, *mi'-hi*, *tra'-hĕ-re*, *mach'-i-na*.

6. When *x* alone comes between two vowels, in writing syllables it is united to the former, but in pronouncing them it is divided; as, *sax'-um*, *ax-il'-la*; pronounced, *sac'-sum*, *ac-sil'-la*.

B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

7. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, between the last two vowels, must be separated; as, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *sc* in *ad''-o-les'-cens*.

8. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be separated; as, *rm* in *ger-mā'-nus*.

9. Two consonants coming after the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, must be separated; as, *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*, *ft* in *ref'-lu-o*.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE FOURTH AND NINTH RULES.

EXC. 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels, of which the first is *e* or *i*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent; as, *d* in *ra'-di-us* and *me'-*

di-us, *c* in *do'-ce-o*, *r* in *hæ'-re-o*, and *tr* in *pa'-tri-us*, *E-re'-tri-a*, and *Œ-no'-tri-a*.

Exc. 3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *r* in *lu'-rĭ-dus* and *au'-re-us*, and *pl* in *du'-plĭ-co*.

Exc.—*Pub'-lĭ-cus*, its compounds and derivatives, and a few other words, on account of English analogy, follow the 9th rule.

C.—*Three Consonants between two Vowels.*

10. When three consonants come between any two vowels, the two last, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel, otherwise the last only; as, *str*, in *fe-nes'-tra*, *mpt* in *emp-tō'-ris*.

II.—COMPOUND WORDS.

11. The members of a compound word are separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab* in *ab-es'-se*: *præter* in *præ-ter'-e-a*: but if the former part ends with a vowel, the compound is divided like a simple word; as, *dēf'-ĕ-ro* and *dĭl'-ĭ-go*, compounded of *de* and *fero*, *di* and *lego*.

LESSON B.

THIRD DECLENSION.

MASCULINES.

Exceptions in Gender.

er . . . . . Names of plants in *er* are neuter,
With *iter*, *spinther*, *ver*, and *tuber*,
Cadāver, *verber*, *laser*, *uber*.

or . . . . . *Marmor*, *æquor*, *ador*, *cor*,
Are neuter, though they end in *or*;
And one is feminine—*arbor*.

o . . . . . Make feminine Greek nouns in *o*,
And Latin noun for flesh—*caro*.

os . . . . . Call neuter *chaos*, *epos*, *melos*, *os*,
But feminine are *cos*, *eos*, and *dos*.

nis . . . . *Finis*, the end, with *amnis*, *cinis*, *clunis*,
Are sometimes feminine, and so is *funis*.

es . . . . . *Æs*, brass, is neuter; feminine are these,
Quies and compounds, to which add *seges*,
Merges and *merces*, *teges*, *tudes*, *compes*:
Common, *interpres*, *ales*, *miles*, *obses*,
Satelles, *heres*, *comes* too, and *hospes*.

ex . . . . . Neuter in *ex* the herb called *atrĭplex*,
And feminine *supellex*, *fæx*, and *nex*,
Precis from *prex* (supposed), *forfex* and *lex*.
So sometimes *cortex*, *imbrex*, *obex*, *rumex*,
With *silex*, flint, and rarely *grex* and *pumex*.

n . . . . . Four nouns are feminine in *on*,—
Ædon, halcyon, sindon, icon:
And neuter likewise four in *en*,—
Unguen, gluten, pollen, inguen.

LESSON C.

THIRD DECLENSION.

MASCULINES.

Exceptions in Declension.

n and r . *Pecten* and nouns in *cen* have *ĭnis.*
Some Greek nouns in *on* have *ontis.*
Cor, the heart, has *cordis.*

o . . . . . Patrials in *o* have *ōnis;* as, *Macĕdo, Macedŏnis.*
Anio and *Nerio*, proper names, have *ēnis.*
Caro, flesh, has *carnis. Apollo, homo, nemo*, and *turbo*, have *ĭnis.*
Some Greek nouns in *o* are either declined like *sermo*, or they have *ûs* in the genitive, and *o* in all their other cases singular; as, *Dido*, G. *Didûs*, D. *Dido*, &c.

es . . . . . *Quies* and its compounds, with a few Greek nouns make *ētis.*
Obses and *præses* have *ĭdis.*
Heres and *merces* have *ēdis; pes* and its compounds, *ĕdis.*
Ceres has *Cerĕris; bes, bessis; præs, prædis;* and *æs, æris.*

os . . . . . *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis; bos*, an ox, *bovis;* and *os*, a bone, *ossis.*
Some Greek nouns, as *heros, Minos, Tros*, have *ōis.*

ex . . . . . *Grex, lex*, and *rex* form their genitive in *ĕgis; remex*, in *ĭgis.*
Fenisex and *nesex* have *ĕcis; narthex* and *vervex* have *ēcis.*
Senex has *senis, and supellex, supellectilis.*

LESSON D.

THIRD DECLENSION.

FEMININES.

Exceptions in Gender.

x . . . . *Phœnix* and *calix, fornix, anthrax, corax,*
Are masculine; so *tradux, sorix, thorax,*
The parts of *as* in *unx*, Greek nouns in *ux* and *cordax,*
And sometimes *perdix, calx*, with *lynx*, and *limax.*

as . . . . . *As*, *ădămas*, and *ĕlephas*,
Are masculines that end in *as*;
Neuters, *vas* (*vasis*), *nefas*, *fas*.

is . . . . . Masculines that end in *is*
Without increase, are *mugĭlis*,
Orbis, compounds of *as*,* *aquālis*,
Vermis, *unguis*, and *annālis*,
Fascis, *axis* too, and *ensis*,
Fustis, *torris*, *vectis*, *mensis*,
Postis, *ventis*, *callis*, *collis*,
Colis or *caulis*, *piscis*, *follis*:
Common, *canālis*, *anguis*, *scrobis*, *torquis*, *corbis*.
Masculines that end in *is*
With an increase are, *cucŭmis*,
Cenchris, a serpent, *sanguis*, *glis*,
Vomis and *lapis* (*lapĭdis*):
Common, *tigris*, the tiger, *pulvis*, *pollis*.

s impure *Chalybs*, *hydrops*, *merops*, *epops*,
Confluens, *profluens*, and *ellops*,
Bidens, a hoe, the serpent *seps*,
With *orĭens*, *occĭdens*, and *grypс*,
And parts of *as*, as *quadrans*, *triens*,
Are masculine; so likewise *torrens*,
And sometimes *rudens*, *serpens*, *adeps*,
With *scrobs*, *stirps*, *animans*, and *forceps*.

do *and* go *Cupīdo*, *margo* too, as authors show,
Are sometimes masculine, and always so
Other dissyllables in *do* and *go*,
With *unēdo*, a fruit, and *harpāgo*.

lo . . . . . *Io*, in nouns corporeal, must go
With other masculines that end in *o*.

* sc. *contussis*, *decussis*, and *semissis*.

LESSON E.

THIRD DECLENSION.

FEMININES.

Exceptions in Declension.

as . . . . . The following are irregular: *as*, *assis*, a piece of money; *mas*, *maris*, a male; *vas*, *vadis*, a surety; *vas*, *vasis*, a vessel; and *anas*, *anătis*, a duck. Masculine Greek nouns have *antis*; feminines, *ădis*; and neuters, *ătis*. *Melas* has *Melănis*.

is ..... *Capis, cassis, cuspis, lapis,* and *promulsis* increase in *ĭdis.*
Dis, lis, Quiris, and *Samnis* increase in *ĭtis.*
Cinis, cucŭmis, pulvis, and *vomis* increase in *ĕris.*
Pollis and *sanguis* have *ĭnis, glis* has *gliris.*
Some Greek nouns have *is,* others have *ĭdis; tigris* has both *is* and *ĭdis. Charis* has *ĭtis, Salămis* has *ĭnis,* and *Simois* makes *Simoentis.*

us ..... *Tellus* has *tellūris.* Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis,* and Greek nouns in *pus* have *pŏdis;* as, *tripus, tripŏdis.*

x ..... Some Greek proper names in *ax* have *actis. Onyx* and *sardŏnyx* have *ychis.*

s impure Nouns in *eps* change *e* into *i;* as, *princeps, princĭpis;* but *seps* has *sepis,* and *auceps, aucŭpis. Gryps* has *gryphis.*
Frons, foliage, *glans, juglans, lens,* a nit, and *librĭpens* change *ns* to *dis. Tiryns* has *Tirynthis.*

do and go *Comĕdo, unĕdo,* and *harpăgo* have *ōnis.*

LESSON F.

THIRD DECLENSION.

NEUTERS.

Exceptions in Gender.

ur ..... Three nouns are masculine in *ur,*
Vultur, turtur and *furfur;*

l ..... And three are masculine in *l,*
Mugil, the mullet, *sal** and *sol.*

us and ur One noun is masculine in *us,*
The hare, in Latin called *lepus;*
While *fur,* a thief, and two in *us,*
Are common, to wit, *grus* and *mus.*

* *Sal* in the singular is sometimes neuter.

Exceptions in Declension.

ns ..... Monosyllables in *us* have *uris;* as, crus, *the leg;* jus, *right;* mus, *c., a mouse;* pus, *matter;* rus, *the country;* tus, *frankincense.*
Grus and *sus* make *gruis* and *suis.*

LESSON G.

REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

1. In the Augustan age, the genitive of proper names in *es,* derived from the Greek, is frequently *i* instead of *is;* as, *Isocrăti, Aristotĕli.*
2. The poets often make use of the Greek genitive in *os,* especially in

nouns in *is*, *as*, *ys*, and *eus*. So even in prose, *misy*, *misyos*, &c., and *Pan*, *Panos*.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

I. Some Latin nouns in *is* not increasing have *im*.

1. Many proper names in *is*
Have *im* or *in*, as *Tĭbĕris*;
And so the plant called *cappăris*.
2. These nouns have *im* alone; *sitis*,
Amussis, *buris*, *cannăbis*,
Mephitis, *pelvis*, *cucŭmis*,[a]
Ravis, *sināpis*, *tussis*, *vis*.
3. These *im* prefer; *secūris*, *puppis*,
Febris, a fever, *vestis*, *turris*:
4. But these choose *em*; *pars*, *messis*, *clavis*,
Bipennis, *crates*, *lens*, and *navis*.

(*a*) *Cucŭmis* increasing makes *cucumĕrem*.

5. The ancients occasionally formed the genitive of some other nouns in *im*.

II. Greek nouns sometimes retain the Greek accusative in *in* and *a*, but often end, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, *idis*, or *idos*, especially proper names, commonly have *im* or *in* rather than *idem*; as, *Paris*, *Părim*; but nouns in *tis*, especially in *itis*, more rarely have *im* or *in*; and feminine patronymics and gentile nouns in *is*, *idis*, have only *idem*.

2. Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and also in *ys*, (gen. *yis* or *yos*,) change *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *pŏtis*, *pŏtin*; *Tēthys*, *Tēthyn*.

3. The Greek accusative in *a* instead of the Latin in *em*, is often used by Latin writers, especially by the poets: as, *heros*, *herōa*; so, *aëra*, *aëthĕra*, *Pana*.

4. Nouns in *eus* often have an accusative in *ea*; as, *Tydeă*: so, *Pericles* from *Pericles*.

5. Some Greek proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, have both *em* and *en*; as, *Achillem* and *-en*. Some too which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive have *etem*, *em* or *en*: as, *Thalen*.

VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

Most Greek nouns, whose nominative ends in *s*, drop *s* in the vocative.

LESSON H.

REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative.

But neuters of towns in *e*, with *baccar*, *far*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *nectar*, *par*, and *sal*, have *e* in the ablative. *Rete* has either *e* or *i*, and the ablative *mare* is sometimes found in poetry.

2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative.

But *Arar* or *Arăris*, *Bætis*, *Sicŏris* and *cannăbis*, have *e* or *i*.

3. Nouns, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative.

But Greek nouns in *is*, *idis*, have *e* only.

4. Names of months in *er* or *is* have *i*. Adjectives in *is* used as nouns have *i* and sometimes *e*.

But when such adjectives become proper names they always have *e*, as does also *juvĕnis*, a youth, and *rudis*, a rod. *Ædīlis* has commonly *e*.

5. These, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but oftener *e*.

Amnis.	Civis.	Finis.[b]	Pars.	Strigĭlis.
Anguis.	Convallis.[a]	Fustis.	Postis.	Supellex.
Avis.[a]	Classis.	Ignis.	Rus.	Tridens.
Bilis.	Collis.	Imber.	Sordes.	Unguis.
Canālis.[a]	Corbis.	Orbis.	Sors.[b]	Vectis.

To these add *vesper*, and some Greek nouns in *es*, Gen. *is*; as, *Achille* or *Achilli*.

(*a*) Rarely *e*. (*b*) Rarely *i*.

6. Some names of towns denoting *the place where*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagĭni*, at Carthage. In the most ancient writers some other nouns have the ablative in *i*.

LESSON I.

REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. Neuters whose ablative singular ends in *a*, have *ia* in the nominative plural.

But *far* has *farra*, and *aplustre* has either *a* or *ia*.

2. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *e* in the nominative plural; as, *melos*, *mele*: so *Tempe*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Rule.—The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*, sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *sedīle*, (*i*), *sedilium*; *turris*, (*e* or *i*), *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing have *ium*; as, *rupes*, (*is*), *rupium*.

But *ambăges*, *canis*, *juvĕnis*, *mugĭlis*, *proles*, *strues*, and *vates*, have *um*; *apis*, *strigĭlis*, and *volŭcris*, commonly have *um*; and *cædes*, *clades*, *mensis*, and *sedes*, commonly have *ium*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium*; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

4. The following monosyllables also have *ium*: *as*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os*

(*assis*), *vis*, *faux* (obs.), *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, commonly *fraus* and *mus*, and sometimes *lar*.

5. (*a*) Nouns of two or more syllables in *ns* or *rs* have *ium*, and more rarely *um*; and names of nations in *as*, with *penātes* and *optimātes*, commonly have *ium*.

(*b*) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *atas*, *ætātum* or *ætatium*.

6. The following have *ium*: *caro*, *imber*, *linter*, *uter*, *venter*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, usually *Insŭber*, and sometimes *palus*. *Bos* has *bourn*.

7. A few Greek nouns, chiefly the titles of books, have sometimes *ŏn*.

8. Names of feasts in *alia* have *ium*, but sometimes *ōrum*, after the second declension. So sometimes *ancīle* and *vectīgal*.

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

1. *Bos* has *bubus* and less frequently *bobus*, by contraction for *bovĭbus*. *Sus* has either *suĭbus* or *subus*.

2. Greek nouns in *ma* have *is* more frequently than *ĭbus*.

3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural in *si*, and before a vowel in *sin*; as, *herŏĭs*, *herŏĭsin*.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

1. Masculines and feminines, having *ium* in the genitive plural, had anciently *is* or *eis* in the accusative plural; as, *civīs*, *montīs*. So likewise the Greek accusatives *Trallis* and *Sardis*.

2. The accusative plural of Greek nouns often ends in *as* instead of *es*; as, *Arcădas*: so in barbarian names of nations; as, *Allobrŏgas*.

LESSON J.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Irregular nouns are either *variable*, *defective*, or *redundant*.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

2. A variable noun is one which is found of different genders or in different declensions.

3. Those which vary in { gender / declension } are called { *heterogeneous* / *heteroclites*.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

4. Defective nouns are either *indeclinable*, *defective in case*, or *defective in number*.

5. Indeclinable nouns are called *aptotes*.

6. A noun found in one case only is called a *monop-*

tote,—in two only, a *diptote*,—in three only, a *triptote*, —in four only, a *tetraptote*,—in five only, a *pentaptote*.

7. A noun may want either the singular or the plural number.

8. Most *proper*, *abstract*, and *material* nouns want the plural.

Remark.—Abstract nouns in Latin are sometimes used in the plural to denote a repetition of the same thing, or its existence in different objects.

9. The names of festivals, of festive games, of certain days in the Roman Calendar, and several names of places and books, want the singular.

REDUNDANT NOUNS.

10. A redundant noun is one which, in some or all of its parts, has two or more forms differing in gender, number, termination, or declension.

LESSON K.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

A *patronymic* noun is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or the founder of his nation.

Masculine patronymics commonly end in *ides*, *ĕides*, *ădes*, and *iădes*; —feminine, in *is*, *ĕis*, *as*, and *ias*, rarely in *īne*.

A *patrial* noun is derived from the name of a country, and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as, *Macĕdo*, a Macedonian.

A *diminutive* denotes a small thing of the kind, or a small degree of the quality, denoted by the primitive. Diminutives generally end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*.

A *verbal* noun or adjective is one which is derived from a verb; as, *amor*, love, and *amator*, a lover, from *amo*, to love.

A *participial* adjective is one which is derived from a participle retaining its form; as, *amans*, fond; *dŏctus*, learned.

THE LIFE OF JOSEPH.

1. *Joseph's Childhood.*

Jacōbus habuit duodĕcim filios, inter quos erat Josēphus, quem pater diligēbat præ cetĕris filiis, et huic dedit togam versicolōrem.

Quam ob causam Josēphus erat invīsus suis fratrībus,[a] præsertim postquam narrāvit eis duplex somnium, quo[b] futūra ejus magnitūdo portendebātur.

Odĕrant[c] illum tantopĕre, ut non possent[d] cum eo amīcē loqui.

2. *His Dreams.*

Hæc porro erant Josēphi somnia. "Ligabāmus," inquit, "simul manipūlos in agro: ecce manipūlus meus surgēbat, et stabat rectus; vestri autem manipūli circumstantes venerabantur meum.

"Postea vidi in somnis solem, lunam, et undĕcim stellas adorantes me."[a]

Cui[b] fratres respondērunt, "Quorsum spectant ista somnia? Num tu eris rex noster? Num subjiciēmur ditiōni[c] tuæ?"

Fratres igĭtur invidēbant ei;[d] at pater rem tacĭtus considerābat.

---

1. (*a*) Less. 109. (*b*) Less. 117, 1. (*c*) Less. 81, 4. (*d*) Less. 133.
2. (*a*) Less. 121, 9. (*b*) Less. 94, 5. (*c*) Less. 111. (*d*) Less. 110, 1.

3. *His Brethren resolve to kill him.*

Quâdam die[a] quum fratres Josephi pascĕrent[b] greges procul, ipse remansĕrat domi. Jacōbus misit eum ad fratres, ut sciret,[c] quomŏdo se habĕrent.[d]

Qui videntes Josephum venientem consilium cepērunt illīus occidendi:[e] "Ecce," dicēbant, "somniātor venit: occidāmus[f] illum, et projiciāmus in puteum. Dicēmus patri, 'Fera devorāvit Josephum.' Tunc apparēbit,[g] quid sua illa[h] prosint[i] somnia."

4. *His Brother Reuben saves his life.*

Ruben, qui erat natu[a] maxĭmus, deterrēbat fratres a tanto scelĕre.

"Nolīte," inquiēbat, "interficĕre[b] puĕrum: est enim frater noster: demittīte eum potiùs in hanc foveam."

Habēbat in animo liberāre Josephum ex eōrum manĭbus, et illum extrahĕre e foveâ, atque ad patrem reducĕre.

Re ipsâ his verbis deducti sunt ad mitius consilium.

5. *He is sold by his Brethren.*

Ubi Josephus pervēnit ad fratres suos, detraxērunt ei[a] togam, quâ[b] indūtus erat, et detrusērunt eum in foveam.

Deinde quum consedissent[c] ad sumendum[d] cibum, conspexērunt mercatōres, qui petēbant Ægyptum cum camēlis portantĭbus varia aromăta.

Venit illis in mentem Josephum vendĕre illis mercatorĭbus.

Qui Josephum emērunt viginti nummis[e] argenteis, eumque duxērunt in Ægyptum.[f]

---

3. (*a*) Less. 118, 2. (*b*) Less. 132, 2. (*c*) Less. 133. (*d*) Less. 129, 1. (*e*) Less. 123, 4. (*f*) Less. 126, 2. (*g*) Less. 129, 3. (*h*) Less. 111.

4. (*a*) Less. 117, 5. (*b*) Less. 126, 4.

5. (*a*) Less. 111, N. 2. (*b*) Less. 117, 2. (*c*) Less. 132, 2. (*d*) Less. 123, 5. (*e*) Less. 118, 1. (*f*) Less. 97, 3.

6. *His Robe stained with Blood is sent to his Father.*

Tunc fratres Josēphi tinxērunt togam ejus in sanguĭne hædi, quem occidĕrant, et misērunt eam ad patrem[a] cum his verbis: "Invenīmus hanc togam: vide, an toga filii tui sit."[b]

Quam quum agnovisset,[b] pater exclamāvit: "Toga filii mei est: fera pessĭma devorāvit Josēphum." Deinde scĭdit vestem, et induit cilicium.

Omnes lĭbĕri ejus convenērunt, ut lenīrent[b] dolōrem patris;[a] sed Jacōbus noluit accipĕre consolatiōnem; dixĭtque, "Ego descendam mœrens cum filio meo in sepulcrum."

7. *He is sold to Potiphar.*

Putīphar Ægyptius emit Josēphum a mercatorĭbus.

Deus autem favit Putiphări[a] causâ[b] Josēphi: omnia ei[c] prospĕrè succedēbant.

Quamobrem Josēphus benignè habĭtus est ab hero, qui præfēcit eum domuĭ[c] suæ.

Josēphus ergo administrābat rem familiārem Putiphăris: omnia fiĕbant ad nutum ejus, nec Putīphar ullĭus negotii curam gerēbat.

8. *He is falsely accused and imprisoned.*

Josēphus erat insigni et pulchrâ facie:[a] uxor Putiphăris eum pelliciēbat ad flagitium: Josēphus autem improbæ muliĕri[b] assentīri nolēbat.

Quădam die mulier oram pallii ejus apprehendit; at Josēphus relīquit pallium in manĭbus ejus, et fugit.

Mulier irāta inclamāvit servas, et Josēphum accusāvit apud virum, qui nimiùm credŭlus Josēphum in carcĕrem conjēcit.

---

6. (*a*) Less. 91, 6. (*b*) Why in the subjunctive?
7. (*a*) Less. 110, 1. (*b*) Less. 117, 1. (*c*) Less. 111.
8. (*a*) Less. 101. (*b*) Less. 111.

9. *The Dreams of two of Pharaoh's Officers.*

Erant in eōdem carcĕre duo ministri regis Pharaōnis; alter præĕrat pincernis,[a] alter pistorĭbus.

Utrĭque obvĕnit divinĭtus somnium eâdem nocte.

Ad quos quum venisset[b] Josēphus manè, et animadvertisset[b] eos tristiōres solĭto, interrogāvit, quænam esset[b] mœstitiæ causa.

Qui respondērunt: "Obvĕnit nobis somnium, nec quisquam est, qui illud nobis interpretētur."[d]

"Nonne," inquit Josēphus, "Dei[e] solĭus est prænoscĕre[f] res futūras? Narrāte mihi somnia vestra."

10. *Joseph interprets the Chief Butler's Dream.*

Tum prior Josēpho somnium suum sic exposuit.

"Vidi in quiēte vitem, in quâ erant tres palmītes; ea paulātim protŭlit gemmas; deinde flores erupērunt, ac denĭque uvæ maturescēbant."

"Ego exprimēbam uvas in scyphum Pharaōnis, eīque porrigēbam."

"Esto bono anĭmo," inquit Josēphus, "post tres dies Pharao te restituet in gradum pristīnum: te rogo, ut meminĕris[a] mei."

11. *He interprets the Chief Baker's Dream.*

Alter quòque narrāvit somnium suum Josēpho.

"Gestābam in capīte tria canistra, in quibus erant cibi, quos pistōres confĭcĕre solent. Ecce autem aves circumvolitābant, et cibos illos comedēbant."

Cui Josēphus: "Hæc est interpretatio istĭus somnii. Tria canistra sunt tres dies, quibus[a] elapsis, Pharao te feriet secūri, et ad palum affīget, ubi aves carne[b] tuâ pascentur."

---

9. (*a*) Less. 111. (*b*) Why in the subjunctive? (*d*) "To interpret," or "who can interpret," Less. 134, 4. (*e*) Less. 102, 1, and R. 1. (*f*) Less. 102, R. 2.

10. (*a*) Perf. subj. Less. 81, 4.

11. (*a*) Less. 120. (*b*) Less. 117, 2.

12. *The Accomplishment of the two Dreams.*

Die tertio, qui dies natālis Pharaōnis erat, splendīdum convivium parandum[a] fuit.

Quare rex memīnit ministrōrum[b] suōrum, qui in carcĕrem conjecti erant.

Præfecto pincernārum ejus munus restituit; altĕrum verò secūri percussum suspendit ad palum. Ita res somnium comprobāvit.

Tamen præfectus pincernārum oblītus est Josēphi,[b] nec illius in se merīti[b] recordātus est.

13. *Pharaoh's Dreams.*

Post biennium rex ipse somnium habuit.

Nilo[a] flumīni[b] adstāre sibi videbātur; et ecce de flumīne emergēbant septem vaccæ pingues, quæ in palūde pascebantur. Deinde ex eōdem flumīne exiērunt aliæ vaccæ macilentæ, quæ priōres devorârunt.[c]

Pharao experrectus rursum dormīvit, et altĕrum habuit somnium.

Septem spicæ plenæ in uno culmo, enascebantur, aliæque totīdem exīles succrescēbant, et spicas plenas consumēbant.

14. *The Chief Butler speaks of Joseph to the King.*

Ubi illuxit, Pharao perturbātus convocāvit omnes Ægypti conjectōres, et illis somnium narrāvit; at nemo illud interpretāri potĕrat.

Tunc præfectus pincernārum regi dixit: "Confiteor peccātum meum. Quum ego et præfectus pistōrum essēmus in carcĕre, uterque[a] eâdem nocte somniavīmus.

Erat ibi puer Hebræus, qui nobis sapienter interpretātus est somnia; res enim interpretatiōnem comprobāvit."

---

12. (a) Less. 121, 6. (b) Less. 105, 1.
13. (a) Why in the dative? (b) Less. 89, 1. (c) Contracted from *devoravērunt*.
14. (a) i. e. nos uterque, we each.

15. *Joseph interprets the King's Dreams.*

Rex arcessīvit Josēphum, eīque utrumque somnium narrāvit. Tum Josēphus Pharaōni: "Duplex," inquit, "somnium unam atque eandem rem significat.

"Septem vaccæ pingues et septem spicæ plenæ sunt septem anni[a] ubertātis mox ventūri: septem verò vaccæ macilentæ et septem spicæ exīles sunt totīdem anni famis, quæ ubertātem secutūra est."

Itāque rex,[b] præfīce toti Ægypto virum sapientem et industrium, qui in horreis publīcis partem frugum recondat,[c] et diligenter in subsidium famis secutūræ servet.

16. *Joseph is made Governor of Egypt.*

Consilium regi[a] placuit; quare dixit Josēpho: "Num quisquam est in Ægypto te[b] sapientior? Nemo certè illo munĕre[c] meliùs fungētur.

"En tibi regni mei curam trado."

Tum e manu suâ annŭlum detraxit, et Josēphi digīto[d] inseruit; veste[e] byssīnâ induit illum, collo[f] torquem aureum circumdĕdit, eumque in curru suo secundum collocāvit.

Josēphus erat triginta annos natus, quum summam potestātem a rege accēpit.[g]

17. *He lays up Corn—the Famine begins.*

Josēphus perlustrāvit omnes Ægypti regiōnes, et per septem annos ubertātis maxīmam frumenti copiam congessit.

Secūta est inopia septem annōrum, et in orbe universo fames ingravescēbat.

Tunc Ægyptii, quos premēbat egestas, adiērunt regem[a] postulantes cibum.

---

15. (*a*) Less. 92. (*b*) Less. 115. (*c*) Less. 133.

16. (*a*) Less. 110, 1. (*b*) Less. 119, 1. (*c*) Less. 116, 4. (*d*) Why in the dative? (*e*) Less. 117, 2. (*f*) Less. 111, N. 2. (*g*) Less. 132, 2.

17. (*a*) Less. 97, 4.

Quos Pharao ad Josēphum remittēbat.

Hic autem aperuit horrea, et Ægyptiis frumenta vendĭdit.

18. *Jacob sends his Sons into Egypt to buy Corn.*

Ex aliis quòque regionĭbus conveniebātur[a] in Ægyptum ad emendam[b] annōnam.

Eâdem necessitāte compulsus Jacōbus illuc filios suos misit.

Itāque profecti sunt fratres Josēphi; sed pater domi[c] retinuit minĭmum natu, qui Benjamīnus[d] vocabātur.

Timēbat enim, ne quid mali in itinĕre ei accidĕret.[e]

Benjamīnus ex eâdem matre natus erat, quâ[f] Josēphus,[g] ideòque ei longè carior erat, quàm cetĕri fratres.[g]

19. *Joseph treats them as Spies.*

Decem fratres ubi in conspectum Josēphi venērunt, eum proni venerāti sunt.

Agnōvit eos Josēphus, nec ipse ab eis est cognītus.

Noluit indicāre[a] statim, quis esset,[b] sed eos interrogāvit tanquam aliēnos: "Unde venistis et quo consilio?"[c]

Qui respondērunt: "Profecti sumus e regiōne Chanaan, ut frumentum emāmus."[b]

"Non est ita," inquit Josephus, "sed animo hostīli huc venistis: nostras urbes et loca Ægypti parum munīta explorāre vultis.

At illi: "Minīme," inquiunt: "nihil mali meditāmur; duodĕcim fratres sumus; minīmus[d] a patre domi retentus est; alius verò non supĕrest."

20. *He detains Simeon.*

Illud Josēphum angēbat, quòd Benjamīnus cum cetĕris non adĕrat.

---

18. (*a*) Less. 81, 10 & 11. (*b*) Less. 123, 5. (*c*) Less. 108, 1 & R. (*d*) Less. 92, R. 1, *b*. (*e*) Why in the subjunctive? (*f*) Supply *ex*. (*g*) What is understood?

19. (*a*) What is the object of this verb? Less. 129, 3. (*b*) Why in the subjunctive? (*c*) Less. 117, 1. (*d*) Supply *natu*

Quare dixit eis: "Experiar, an verum dixeritis.[a] Manoat[a] unus ex vobis obses[b] apud me, dum huc frater vester minimus adducatur;[c] ceteri abite cum frumento."

Tunc inter se dicere cœperunt: "Merito hæc patimur: crudeles fuimus in fratrem nostrum; nunc pœnam hujus sceleris luimus."

Putabant hæc verba[d] non intelligi a Josepho, quia per interpretem cum eis loquebatur.

Ipse autem avertit se parumper, et flevit.

21. *His Brethren return home.*

Josephus jussit fratrum saccos[a] tritico implēri, et pecuniam, quam attulerant, in ore saccorum repōni: addidit insuper cibaria in viam.

Deinde eos omnes dimisit præter Simeonem, quem retinuit obsidem.[b]

Itaque profecti sunt fratres Josephi, et quum ad patrem venissent,[c] omnia, quæ sibi accidērant, ei narravērunt.

Quum saccos aperuissent,[c] ut frumenta effunderent,[a] mirantes reperērunt pecuniam.

22. *Jacob refuses to send Benjamin.*

Jacobus ut audivit Benjamīnum[a] arcessi a præfecto[b] Ægypti, cum gemitu questus est.

"Orbum me liberis[c] fecistis: Josephus mortuus est; Simeon retentus est in Ægypto; Benjamīnum abducēre vultis.

"Hæc omnia mala in me recidunt: non dimittam Benjamīnum; nam si quid adversi ei accidērit in viâ, non potero ei superstes vivere, sed dolore oppressus moriar."

23. *His Sons urge him to consent.*

Postquam consumpti sunt cibi, quos attulerant, Jacobus filiis suis dixit, "Proficiscimini[a] iterum in Ægyptum, ut cibos emātis."

---

20. (*a*) Why the subjunctive? (*b*) Less. 92. (*c*) Less. 132, 1. (*d*) Less. 95, 3.
21. (*a*) Less. 95, 3. (*b*) As a hostage. Less. 89, 1. (*c*) Why the subjunctive?
22. (*a*) Less. 95, N. 1. (*b*) Less. 117, N. 1. (*c*) Less. 104, R.
23. (*a*) In what mood?

Qui respondĕrunt: "Non possūmus sine Benjamīno adire præfectum[b] Ægypti; ipse enim jussit illum[b] ad se adduci."

"Cur," inquit pater, "mentiōnem fecistis de fratre vestro minīmo?"

"Ipse," inquiunt, "nos interrogāvit, 'an pater vivĕret,[d] an alium fratrem haberēmus.'[d] Respondīmus ad ea, quæ sciscitabātur; non potuīmus præscīre eum[b] dictūrum esse,[e] 'Adducīte huc fratrem vestrum.'"

24. *He yields to their entreaties.*

Tunc Judas, unus e filiis Jacōbi, dixit patri: "Committe mihi puĕrum: ego illum in fidem meam recipio, ego servābo, ego illum ad te redūcam; quod nisi fecĕro,[a] hujus rei culpa in me residēbit; si voluisses[b] eum statim dimittĕre, jam secundò huc rediissēmus."[b]

Tandem victus pater annuit: "Quoniam necesse est," inquit, "proficiscātur Benjamīnus vobiscum; deferte viro munĕra et duplum pretium, ne forte errōre factum sit,[c] ut vobis prior pecunia redderētur."[c]

25. *Joseph's Brethren return to Egypt.*

Nuntiātum est[a] Josēpho eosdem viros advenisse, et cum eis[b] parvŭlum fratrem.[c]

Josēphus eos in domum introdūci[d] jussit, et lautum parāri convivium.[c]

Illi metuēbant, ne arguerentur[e] de pecuniâ, quam in saccis reperĕrant: quare apud dispensatōrem Josēphi se purgavĕrunt.

"Jam semel," inquiunt,[f] "huc venīmus: reversi domum[g] pretium frumenti in saccis invenīmus: nescīmus, quonam casu id factum fuĕrit,[e] sed eandem pecuniam reportavīmus."

---

23. (*b*) Why in the accusative? (*c*) Less. 95, N. 3. (*d*) Why in the subjunctive? 24. (*a*) Less. 47, 11. (*b*) Less. 131, R. *a*. (*c*) Less. 133.

25. (*a*) What is the subject of this verb? Less. 95, 4. (*b*) Less. 117, N. 2. (*c*) Less. 88, 2. (*d*) Less. 95, 1. (*e*) Why in the subjunctive? (*f*) Less. 127, R. (*g*) Less. 108, 2 & R.

Quibus dispensātor ait: "Bono animo estōte." Deinde ad illos adduxit Simeōnem, qui retentus fuĕrat.

26. *They are admitted to his Presence.*

Deinde Josēphus ingressus est in conclāve, ubi fratres sui eum exspectābant, qui eum venerāti sunt offerentes munĕra.

Josēphus eos clementer salutāvit, interrogavitque: "Salvusne est senex ille, quem vos patrem[a] habētis?[b] Vivitne adhuc?"[b]

Qui respondērunt: "Salvus est pater noster, adhuc vivit."

Josēphus autem, conjectis in Benjamīnum ocūlis[c] dixit: "An iste est frater vester minīmus, qui domi[d] remansĕrat apud patrem?"[b] Et rursus: "Deus sit[e] tibi propitius, fili[f] mi;"[g] et abiit festīnans, quia commōtus erat animo, et lacrўmæ erumpēbant.

27. *Joseph's Cup is placed in Benjamin's Sack.*

Josēphus, lotâ[a] facie, regressus continuit se, et jussit cibos appōni. Tum unicuīque fratrum[b] suōrum escam distribuit, sed pars Benjamīni erat multo major quàm ceterōrum.[c]

Peracto convivio, Josēphus dispensatōri dat negotium, ut saccos eōrum frumento impleat, pecuniam[e] simul repōnat,[d] et insūper scyphum suum argenteum in sacco Benjamīni recondat.[d]

Ille fecit diligenter, quod[f] jussus fuĕrat.

28. *Joseph sends in pursuit of them.*

Fratres Josēphi sese in viam dedĕrant, necdum procul ab urbe abĕrant.

---

26. (*a*) Less. 89, 1. (*b*) Is this question direct, or indirect? Why? (*c*) Less. 120. (*d*) Why in the genitive? (*e*) What does this subjunctive express? Less. 126, 2. (*f*) Less. 9, Exc. 2. (*g*) Less. 29, N. 2.

27. (*a*) Less. 120, N. 3. (*b*) Less. 103, 1. (*c*) Less. 119, 3. (*d*) Less. 88, 2. (*e*) *Et* is understood before *pecuniam*. Less. 88, R. 3. (*f*) *Id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*.

Tunc Josēphus dispensatōrem domūs suæ vocāvit, eique dixit: "Persequēre viros, et quum eos assecūtus fuēris,[a] illis dicīto: 'Quare injuriam pro beneficio rependistis?

"'Subripuistis scyphum argenteum, quo[b] domīnus meus utītur: improbè fecistis.'"

Dispensātor mandāta Josēphi perfēcit; ad eos confestim advolāvit; furtum exprobrāvit; rei indignitatem exposuit.

29. *The Cup is found in Benjamin's Sack.*

Fratres Josēphi dispensatōri respondērunt: "Istud scelēris[a] longè a nobis aliēnum est: nos, ut tute scis, retulīmus bonâ fide[b] pecuniam in saccis repertam; tantum abest, ut scyphum domīni tui furāti simus: apud quem furtum deprehensum fuērit, is[c] morte mulctētur.[d]"

Continuò saccos depōnunt et aperiunt, quos ille scrutatus, invēnit scyphum in sacco Benjamīni.

30. *They return to the City.*

Tunc fratres Josēphi mœrōre oppressi in urbem revertuntur.

Adducti ad Josēphum ad pedes illīus sese abjecērunt. Quibus ille; "Quomŏdo," inquit, "potuistis hoc scelus admittĕre?"

Judas respondit: Fateor: res est manifesta; nullam possūmus excusatiōnem afferre, nec audēmus veniam petĕre aut sperāre: nos omnes erīmus servi tui."

"Nequāquam," ait[a] Josēphus: "sed ille, apud quem inventus est scyphus, erit mihi servus: vos autem abīte libĕri ad patrem vestrum."

---

28. (*a*) Less. 122, 2. (*b*) Less. 116, 4.

29. (*a*) Less. 103, 2. (*b*) Less. 117, 1. (*c*) *Is*, though placed after its relative, should be translated before it, "Let him, with whom," &c. (*d*) What does this subjunctive express?

30. (*a*) Less. 127, R.

31. *Judah intercedes for Benjamin.*

Tunc Judas accĕdens propiùs ad Josĕphum : " Te oro," inquit, " domĭne mi, ut bonâ cum veniâ me audias.

" Pater unĭcè dilĭgit puĕrum ; primò eum dimittĕre nolēbat ; id ab eo impetrāre non potui, nisi postquam spopondi eum tutum ab omni periculo fore : si ad patrem sine puĕro redierīmus, ille mœrōre confectus moriĕtur.

" Te oro atque obsĕcro ut puĕrum abīre sinas, meque, pro eo in servitūtem addĭcas : ego pœnam, quâ[a] dignus est, exsolvam."

32. *Joseph makes himself known to his Brethren.*

Interea Josĕphus se continēre vix potĕrat : quare Ægyptios adstantes[a] recedĕre jussit.

Tum flens dixit magnâ voce : " Ego sum Josĕphus ; vivitne adhuc pater meus ?"

Fratres ejus, nimio terrōre perturbāti, respondēre non potĕrant.

Quibus ille amĭcè : " Accedĭte," inquit, " ad me, ego sum Josĕphus, frater vester, quem vendidistis mercatorĭbus euntĭbus[b] in Ægyptum : nolīte timēre ; Dei providentiâ id factum est, ut ego salūti vestræ consulĕrem."

33. *Joseph invites his Father to come into Egypt.*

Josĕphus hæc locūtus[a] fratrem suum Benjamīnum complexus est, eumque lacrўmis[b] conspersit.

Deinde cetĕros quòque fratres collacrўmans osculātus est. Tum demum illi cum eo fidenter locūti sunt.

Quibus Josĕphus : " Ite," inquit, " properāte ad patrem meum, eīque nunciāte filium suum vivĕre, et apud Pharaōnem plurīmùm posse ; persuadēte illi,[c] ut in Ægyptum cum omni familiâ commīgret.

---

31. (*a*) Less. 116, 2.

32. (*a*) Less. 122, 1 & 3. (*b*) Less. 122, 1, 2, 3 & 4.

33. (*a*) Less. 121, 7. (*b*) Less. 117, 2. (*c*) Less. 110, 1.

34. *Pharaoh sends Presents and Chariots to Jacob.*

Fama de adventu fratrum Josēphi ad aures regis pervēnit; qui dedit eis munĕra perferenda ad patrem cum his mandātis:

"Adducīte huc patrem vestrum et omnem ejus familiam, nec multùm curāte supellectĭlem vestram, quia omnia, quæ opus erunt vobis,[a] præbitūrus sum, et omnes opes Ægypti vestræ erunt."

Misit quòque currus ad vehendum[b] senem et parvŭlos et mulĭeres.

35. *Jacob is informed that Joseph is still alive.*

Fratres Josēphi festinantes reversi sunt ad patrem suum, eīque nuntiavērunt Josēphum vivĕre, et princīpem esse totīus Ægypti.

Ad quem nuntium Jacōbus, quasi e gravi somno excitātus, obstupuit, nec primò filiis rem narrantĭbus fidem adhibēbat: sed, postquam vidit plaustra et dona sibi a Josēpho missa, recēpit anĭmum, et, "Mihi satis est," inquit, "si vivit adhuc Josēphus meus: ibo et vidēbo eum, antĕquam moriar."[a]

36. *Jacob goes into Egypt with all his Family.*

Jacōbus, profectus cum filiis et nepotĭbus, pervēnit in Ægyptum, et præmīsit Judam ad Josēphum, ut eum facĕret certiōrem de adventu suo.

Confestim Josēphus processit obviàm patri,[a] quem ut vidit, in collum ejus se conjēcit, et flens flentem complexus est.

Tum Jacōbus: "Satis diu vixi," inquit, "nunc æquo anĭmo moriar, quoniam conspectu[b] tuo frui mihi licuit, et te mihi superstĭtem relinquo."

---

34. (a) Lxx. 109. (b) Lxx. 128, 5.
35. (a) Lxx. 132, 1.
36. (a) Lxx. 110, 4. (b) Lxx. 116, 4.

37. *His Arrival is made known to the King.*

Josēphus adiit Pharaōnem, eīque nuntiāvit patrem[a] suum advenisse:[b] constituit etiam quinque e fratrĭbus suis coram rege.

Qui eos interrogāvit, quidnam opĕris[c] habērent: illi respondērunt se[a] esse pastōres.

Tum rex dixit Josēpho: "Ægyptus in potestāte tuâ est, cura, ut pater et fratres tui in optĭmo loco habĭtent; et si qui sint inter eos gnavi et industrii, trade eis curam pecōrum meōrum."

38. *Joseph introduces his Father to Pharaoh.*

Josēphus adduxit quòque patrem suum ad Pharaōnem, qui salutatus a Jacōbo percontātus est ab eo, quâ esset ætāte?[a]

Jacōbus regi respondit: "Vixi centum et triginta annos,[b] nec adeptus sum senectūtem beātam avōrum meōrum:" tum, bene precātus regi, dicessit ab eo.

Josēphus autem patrem et fratres suos collocāvit in optĭmâ parte Ægypti, eisque omnium rerum abundantiam suppeditāvit.

39. *Jacob requests to be buried with his Fathers.*

Jacōbus vixit septem et decem annos, postquam commigrārat[a] in Ægyptum.

Ubi sensit mortem[b] sibi[c] imminēre, arcessīto[d] Josēpho dixit: "Si me ames, jura te id factūrum esse, quod a te petam, scilĭcet ut ne me sepelias in Ægypto, sed corpus meum transfĕras ex hac regiōne, et condas in sepulcro majōrum meōrum."

Josēphus autem: "Faciam," inquit, "quod jubes pater."

"Jura ergo mihi," ait Jacōbus, "te certò id factūrum esse."

Josēphus jurāvit in verba patris.

---

37. (*a*) Less. 95, 3. (*b*) Less. 95, 1. (*c*) Less. 103, 1 & 2.

38. (*a*) Less. 101, R. 3. (*b*) Why in the accusative?

39. (*a*) Less. 49, R. 2. (*b*) Less. 95, 1. (*c*) Less. 111. (*d*) Less. 120, N. 3.

40. *Joseph pays his last Duties to his Father.*

Ut vidit Josēphus extinctum patrem, flens eum osculatus est, diūque luxit.

Deinde præcēpit medīcis,[a] ut condīrent corpus, et ipse cum fratrĭbus multisque Ægyptiis patrem deportāvit in regiōnem Chanaan.

Ibi funus fecērunt cum magno planctu, et sepeliērunt[b] corpus in speluncâ, ubi jacēbant Abrahāmus et Isaăcus, reversīque sunt in Ægyptum.

41. *Joseph consoles his Brothers.*

Post mortem patris timēbant fratres Josēphi, ne ulciscerētur injuriam, quam accepĕrat: misērunt igĭtur ad illum rogantes nomĭne patris, ut eam obliviscerētur, sibĭque condonāret.

Quibus Josēphus respondit: "Non est,[a] quod timeātis;[b] vos quidem malo in me animo fecistis; sed Deus convertit illud in bonum: ego vos alam et familias vestras."

Consolatus est eos plurĭmis verbis, et lenĭter cum illis locūtus est.

42. *The Death of Joseph.*

Josēphus vixit annos centum et decem; quumque esset morti proxĭmus, convocāvit fratres suos, et illos admonuit se brevi moritūrum esse.

"Ego," inquit, "jam morior: Deus vos non desĕret, sed erit vobis[a] præsidio, et dedūcet vos aliquando ex Ægypto in regiōnem, quam patrĭbus nostris promīsit: oro vos, atque obtestor, ut illuc ossa mea deportētis."

Deinde placĭdè obiit: corpus ejus condītum est, et in ferētro posĭtum.

---

40. (*a*) Less. 110, 1. (*b*) Less. 49, R. 2.

41. (*a*) The subject of *est* in such negative expressions is often wanting. (*b*) Less. 134, 4.

42. (*a*) Less. 114.

FABLES.

1. *The Gnat and the Bull.*

In cornu tauri culex sedens, "Si te," ait,[a] "mole meâ gravo, protĭnus avolabo." At ille: "Te," inquit,[a] "prorsus non sensi."

2. *The Lion and the Goat.*

Leo quum[b] capram in altâ rupe stantem vidēret,[c] mŏnuit, ut potiùs in virĭde pratum descendĕret.[d] Cui respondet capra: "Nŏn ea sum,[e] quæ dulcia[f] tutis[g] præpōnam."[h]

3. *The Magpie and the Dove.*

Pica et columba pavōnem convenĕrant, ut eum salutārent.[d] Dum redeunt, maledĭca pica ait: "Quàm[i] mihi displĭcet pavo! quàm[i] insuāves edit sonos! cur[i] non silet? cur[i] non turpes pedes tegit?" At innŏcens columba sic[i] refert: "Vĭtia ejus non observāvi, verùm formositātem corpŏris et caudæ nitōrem adeò mirāta sum, ut non satĭs laudāre possim."

Boni bona[j] mali mala exquīrunt; illi, ut laudāre, hi, ut carpĕre possint.

4. *The Blackbird.*

Merŭla ante fenestram in caveâ suspensa noctu canta-

(*a*) Less. 127, R. (*b*) Translate *quum* before *leo*. (*c*) Less. 132, R. (*d*) Less. 135, 2. (*e*) *Non ea sum*, "I am not one." (*f*) Less. 91, 5. (*g*) Less. 91, 5, and Less. 111. (*h*) Less. 135, 1. (*i*) What does it modify or limit? Less. 88, 1. (*j*) *Boni bona*. Less. 91, 4 & 5.

bat. Advŏlat vespertīlio, et rogat: "Cur non interdiu potiùs cantas, et noctu acquiescis?" "Ego," inquit illa, "interdiu cantans capta sum; ităque malo prudentior facta sum, et interdiu quiesco." Tum vespertīlio: "At tu," inquit, "serò caves; tacēre debuisti prius, quàm caperēris."[k]

5. *The Husbandman and his Sons.*

Agricŏla vicīnus morti, quum filiis divĭtias relinquĕre non posset, voluit animos eōrum ad diligentem agricultūram excitāre. Igĭtur eos ad se vocat, et sic alloquĭtur: "Mei filii, quo in loco res meæ sint,[l] vidētis. Vobis[m] autem, quidquid potui, in vitâ meâ collēgi, idque totum[n] in vineâ nostrâ quærĕre poterītis." Hæc quum dixisset, paulo pòst morĭtur senex. At filii, quòd credēbant, patrem in vineâ alicŭbi thesaurum abscondisse, arreptis ligonĭbus, solum vineæ universæ effodiunt, ac thesaurum quidem reperērunt nullum, sed terrâ fodiendo[o] percultâ, uberrīmos fructus e vitĭbus percepērunt.

6. *The Lion and the Fox.*

Leo senio confectus, quum vires non suppetĕrent ad victum parandum, callĭdum cepit consilium sustentandi vitam. In antro enim, quasi periculōso morbo correptus, decubuit, et quum ad ipsum visendum relĭquæ animantes advenīrent, prehensas[p] illas devorāvit. Atque ita magnâ bestiārum multitudĭne a leōne absumptâ, accēdit tandem etiam vulpecŭla ad antrum, et ante illud substĭtit hæsĭtans et circumspectans. Tum leo rogat: "Cur me adīre dubĭtas?" At illa respondit: "Quia vestigia me terrent, omnia te adversùm spectantia, nulla retrorsùm."

(*k*) Less. 132, 1, & Less. 135, 2. (*l*) Less. 129, 1. *Sint* depends on *vidētis*. Less. 135, 1. (*m*) Why is *vobis* in the dative? (*n*) *Idque totum*, "and the whole of it." (*o*) Less. 117, 1, & Less. 123, 3. (*p*) *Prehensas illas devorāvit*, "he caught and devoured them." Less. 122, 8.

7. *The Fly.*

Quadrīgæ alīquot in stadio currēbant,[a] quibus[b] musca insidēbat.[a] Maxīmo autem pulvĕre[c] ab equis et currĭbus excitato, musca dixit: "Quantam vim pulvĕris[d] excitavi!"

8. *The Hawk and the Countryman.*

Accipĭter cùm columbam[f] præcipĭti insequerētur[g] volatu,[g] villam[h] quandam ingressus a rustĭco[i] captus est, quem blandè, ut se dimittĕret,[j] obsecrābat: "Non enim te læsi," dicens.[k] Cui rustĭcus: "Nec hæc," respondit, "te læsĕrat."

9. *The Reed and the Oak.*

Disceptābant de robŏre quercus et arundo. Quercus exprobrābat arundĭni mobilĭtatem, et quòd ea ad quamvis exiguam auram treměret.[l] Arundo tacēbat. Paulo pòst procella furit, et quercum, quæ ei resistēret,[m] radicĭtus evellit; arundo autem, quæ cedĕret[m] vento, locum servat.

10. *The dying Wolf and the Fox.*

Lupus moribundus vitam antè actam perpendēbat. "Malus quidem fui," inquit, "neque tamen pessĭmus. Multa malè feci, fateor, sed multum etiam boni perpetrāvi. Agnus aliquando balans, qui a grege aberravĕrat, tam propè ad me accedēbat, ut illum facĭle devorāre possem, sed parcēbam illi. Eōdem tempŏre convicĭa ab ove quâdam in me jactāta æquissĭmo ferēbam anĭmo, licèt a canĭbus nihil mihi[n] metuendum esset."[o] "Atque hæc omnia ego testāri possum," inquit vulpes, "probè enim rem memĭni. Nimĭrum tum tempŏris[p] accĭdit, cùm os illud devorātum fauce hærēret, ad quod[q] extrahendum gruis opem implorāre cogebāris."

(a) Less. 47, 7. (b) Less. 111. (c) Less. 120. (d) Less. 100. (e) Less. 122, 2. (f) Less. 96, N. 2. (g) Less. 117, 1. (h) Less. 121, 9. (i) Less. 117, N. 1. (j) Less. 133, 1. (k) Less. 96, R. 2. (l) Less. 198, 1. (m) Less. 123, 1. (n) Less. 112, 2. (o) Less. 131, N. (p) Less. 103, 1. (q) Less. 123, 5.

ANECDOTES.

1. Thales rogātus, quid esset[a] difficīle, "Se ipsum," inquit, "nōsse."[b] Idem rogātus, quid esset facīle, "Altērum," ait, "admonēre."

2. Epictētus interrogātus quis esset dives, respondit, "Cui id satis est, quod habet."

3. Alexander interrogātus, ubi thesauros suos condēret;[a] "Apud amīcos,"[c] inquit.

4. Thales quum quærerētur, quid maxīmè commūne esset hominībus, "Spes,"[d] respondit; "hanc enim etiam illi habent, qui aliud nihil habent."

5. Imperātor Tiberius dixisse fertur: "Boni pastōris est tondēre pecus, non deglubēre."

6. Agis, rex Lacedæmoniōrum, audiens quosdam horrēre hostium multitudīnem, ait: "Non percontandum est,[e] quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint. Idem interrogātus, quot milītes habēret: "Quot[f] sufficiunt," inquit, "ad fugandos hostes."

7. Samiōrum legāti auxilium orantes[g] longâ oratiōne[i] usi erant. Respondērunt Lacedæmonii: "Prima[j] sumus oblīti, postrēma[j] non intellexīmus, quia prima non meminīmus."

8. Demōnax quum[k] vidēret homīnem veste magnifica gloriantem, vestem manu prehendit, et dixit: "Atqui hanc ante te ovis gestābat, et tamen ovis erat."

9. Alexander olim comprehensum[l] pīrātam interrogāvit, quo jure maria infestāret. Ille, "Eōdem,"[d] inquit, "quo tu[m] orbem terrārum. Sed quia id ego[n] parvo navigio facio, latro[o] vocor; tu,[n] quia magnâ classe et exercītu, imperātor."[d]

10. Cornelia, Gracchōrum mater, quum Campana matrōna pulcherrĭma sua ornamenta ostendĕret, traxit eam sermōne, quoad e scholâ rediērunt libĕri sui, et: "Hæc," inquit, "ornamenta mea."[d]

11. Persa cum Græcis collōquens jactabundus dixit: "Solem præ jaculōrum nostrōrum multitudĭne non videbītis." Respondit Lacedæmonius: "In umbrâ igĭtur pugnabĭmus."

12. Philippus, rex Macedoniæ, "omnia castella expugnāri posse" dicēbat,[p] "in quæ modò asellus onustus auro posset[q] ascendĕre."

13. Socrātes interrogātus, quinam homĭnes tranquillè vivĕrent, "Qui,"[r] inquit, "nullĭus turpitudĭnis sibi conscii sunt."

14. Bias navigābat aliquando cum impiis.[s] Quum verò, tempestāte exortâ, navis quaterētur[t] fluctĭbus, illĭque invocārent[t] deos, "Silēte," inquit, ne illi sentiant vos hĭc navigāre.

15. Versificator quidam legĕrat Theocrĭto versus suos. Tum interrogābat, quosnam maxĭmè probāret. Hic "Quos[r] omisisti," respondit.

16. Aristippus percontanti,[u] quæ potissĭmùm adolescentĭbus[v] essent discenda,[w] "Quæ viris,"[x] inquit, "usui futūra sint."

17. Titus Cæsar, recordātus quondam super cœnam, nihil se toto die cuiquam præstitisse, dixit: "Amīci, diem perdĭdi."

18. Solon quum interrogarētur, cur nullum supplicium constituisset in eum, qui parentem necâsset,[y] respondit se nemīnem[z] id factūrum putâsse.

19. Zeno inepta loquenti adolescentūlo, "Idcirco," inquit, "aures habēmus duas et os unum, ut plura audiāmus, loquāmur pauciōra."

20. Diogēnes animadvertens quendam imperītè jaculantem, proxīmè scopum consēdit. Quum ex eo quærerētur, cur id facēret, "Ne forte," inquit, "ille me feriat."

(a) Many examples of the indirect question occur in these anecdotes. (b) *Se ipsum* is the subject of *nōsse*, and *se ipsum nōsse* is the subject of a sentence of which *est difficĭle* understood is the predicate: *nōsse* for *novisse*. Less. 49, R. 2. (c) *Sc. meos;* Less. 91, 6. (d) What is understood? (e) Less. 101, 1 & R. 1. (f) *Percontandum est* is used impersonally, and the dative of the agent, *mŏbis* or *homĭnĭbus*, is wanting; "we ought not to ask." Less. 112, R. *a* & *c*. (g) *Tot* is understood. (h) "When asking for." Less. 122, 2. (i) Why in the ablative? (j) "The first part—the last part." Less. 91, 5. (k) Begin with *quum*. (l) "Who had been captured." Less. 122, 3. (m) Supply *infestas*. (n) *Ego*, *nos*, *tu*, and *vos*, are expressed when emphasis or distinction is required. Less. 51, R. 4. (o) Less. 92, *b*. (p) Less. 47, N. 2. (q) Less. 127, 2. (r) *Is*, as the antecedent of *qui*, is often understood. (s) Less. 91, 4. (t) Less. 132, R. (u) "To one inquiring." Less. 91, 4. (v) Less. 112, 2. (w) "Ought to be learned." Less. 112, R. *c*. (x) "Being men," or "when they are men:" *viris* is in apposition with *illis* understood, and *illis* and *usui* depend on *futūra sĭnt*. Less. 114. (y) For *necavisset*. (z) Translate the negative with the verb, "that he had *not* supposed that *any one*."

VOCABULARY.

EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

a.....active.	*fr*.....from.	*num*.....numeral.
adj.....adjective.	*freq*.....frequentative.	*part*.....participle.
adv..... adverb.	*h*..... hence.	*pass*.....passive.
comp....comparative.	*impers*....impersonal.	*plur*..... plural.
conj.....conjunction.	*ind*..... indeclinable.	*p. n*.....proper name.
def..... defective.	*int*.....interjection.	*prep*..... preposition.
dep.....deponent.	*irr*.....irregular.	*pron*..... pronoun.
dim..... diminutive.	*m*.....masculine.	*subst*.....substantive.
f.....feminine.	*n*..... neuter.	*sup*..... superlative.

A, ab, *or* abs, prep. with abl., *from:* with the agent of a passive verb, *by.*

Ab-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to take away.*

Ab-eo, īre, ii, ĭtum, irr. n., *to go away, depart.*

Abĕram, &c., see Absum.

Ab-erro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to stray.*

Ab-hinc, adv., *ago, since.*

Abii, &c., see Abeo.

Ab-jicio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, a., (jacio), *to throw away, throw, cast.*

Abrahāmus, i, m., *Abraham.*

Abs-condo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to hide, conceal.*

Abs-tineo, ēre, ui, a., (teneo), *to abstain from.*

Ab-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., *to be absent* or *distant; to be out of the way:* tantum abest ut, *so far (from the fact) is it, that,* &c. See Tantus.

Ab-sūmo, ĕre, psi, ptum, a., *to destroy, slay:* h.

Absumptus, a, um, part., *destroyed.*

Ab-surdus, a, um, adj., *absurd, unbecoming.*

Abundantia, æ, f., *an abundance:* fr.

Ab-undo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to abound.*

Ab-ūtor, i, abūsus sum, dep., *to abuse.*

Ac, conj., *and.*

Ac-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, n., (ad-), *to come near, approach.*

Ac-cīdo, ĕre, cĭdi, n., (ad-cado), *to happen.*

Ac-cipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, a., (ad-capio), *to receive, accept.*

Accipĭter, tris, m., *a hawk.*

Accurātē, adv., *accurately, exactly.*

Accusātor, ōris, m., *an accuser:* & Accusātus, a, um, part., *accused:* fr.

Ac-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ad-causa), *to accuse.*

Ac-quiesco, ĕre, ēvi, n., (ad-), *to rest.*

Actus, a, um, part. & adj., (ago), *done, finished:* vita antè acta, *past life.*

Aculeus, i, m., *a sting.*

Acumĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make pointed* or *sharp:* acuminātus, a, um, part. & adj., *pointed.*

Ad, prep. with acc., *to, at, according to.*—In composition the final *d* assimilates with the following letter, when coming before *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s,* and *t;* before *q* it becomes *c,* and is usually dropped before *sc, sp,* and *gn.*

Ad-dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to give up, devote, doom, condemn.*

Ad-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to add.*
Ad-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring, lead.*
Ad-eo, īre, ii, ĭtum, irr. n., *to go to, approach.*
Ad-eō, adv., *so.*
Adeptus, a, um, part., (adipiscor.)
Adfui, &c., see Adsum.
Ad-hibeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., (habeo), *to use, employ:* fidem adhibere, *to give credit to, believe.*
Ad-huc, adv., *hitherto, still.*
Ad-ipiscor, ī, adeptus sum, dep., (apiscor), *to acquire, attain to, reach.*
Adjūto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (adjŭvo), *to aid, assist.*
Ad-ministro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to manage, direct.*
Ad-mīror, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to admire.*
Ad-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., *to admit; to commit.*
Ad-moneo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., *to admonish, advise; to remind.*
Adolescens, tis, m. & f., *a youth:* h.
Adolescentia, æ, f., *youth:* &
Adolescentŭlus, i, m., dim., *a youth, stripling.*
Ad-ōro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to adore, reverence.*
Adstans, tis, part.: fr.
Ad-sto, āre, īti, n., *to stand near* or *by.*
Ad-sum, esse, fŭi, irr. n., *to be present; to be present at, take part in.*
Ad-venio, īre, ēni, entum, n., *to come:* h.
Advento, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to come, approach:* &
Adventus, ūs, m., *a coming, arrival.*
Adversŭm *or* adversùs, prep. with acc., *towards, to.* It sometimes follows its case: fr.
Adversus, a, um, adj., (advertor), *adverse:* si quid adversi, *if any misfortune.* Leges. 103, 3.
Ad-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fly to, hasten to.*
Æger, gra, grum, adj., *sick.*
Ægīna, æ, f., *Ægina,* a Grecian Island.
Ægyptius, a, um, adj., *Egyptian:* subs., *an Egyptian:* fr.
Ægyptus, i, f., *Egypt.*
Æněas, æ, m., *Æneas,* a Trojan leader.
Æquus, a, um, adj., *equal, calm:* æquo animo, *willingly, contentedly;* so, æquissĭmo animo, *very patiently, quite calmly.*
Aër, is, m., *the air.*
Æstas, ātis, f., *summer.*
Æs, æris, n., *brass, copper; money.*
Æstīmo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to estimate, value.*
Ætas, ātis, f., *age.*
Æternus, a, um, adj., *eternal.*
Af-fĕro, ferre, attŭli, allātum, irr. a., (ad-), *to bring, bring to, allege, plead.*
Af-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, a., (ad-), *to fix* or *fasten to* or *upon.*
Africa, æ, f., *Africa.*
Ager, gri, m., *a field, land.*
Agger, ĕris, m., *a mound.*
Agis, is *or* idis, m. p. n., *Agis.*
Agito, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ago), *to shake.*
Agmen, ĭnis, n., (ago), *an army.*
A-gnosco, ĕre, ōvi, ĭtum, a., (ad-), *to recognise, know.*
Agnus, i, m., *a lamb.*
Ago, ĕre, ēgi, actum, a., *to drive; to do, perform.*
Agricŏla, æ, m., (ager-colo), *a husbandman, farmer.*
Agricultūra, æ, f. (id.), *tillage, husbandry.*
Agrigentum, i, n., *Agrigentum.*
Aio, ais, def. verb, Less. 81, 2, *to say.*
Ala, æ, f., *a wing.*
Albus, a, um, adj., *white.*
Alcibiădes, is, m., *Alcibiades.*
Alexander, dri, m., *Alexander:* h.
Alexandrīa, æ, f., *Alexandria,* a city of Egypt.
Alic-ŭbi, adv., (aliquo-), *somewhere.*
Alienus, a, um, adj., (alius), *belonging to another, foreign:* a nobis alienum, *foreign from us, at variance with our character:* subst., *a stranger.*
Aliquando, adv., (aliquis), *at some time, once.*

Ali-quantus, a, um, adj., (alius-), *some, somewhat:* aliquantum viæ, *a considerable way.*
Alī-quis, -qua, -quod *or* -quid, adj. pron., (alius), *some, some one.*
Aliquot, indecl. adj. plur., *some, several, a few.*
Alius, a, ud, adj., Less. 32, 3, *other, another:* nihil *or* nequid aliud, *nothing else.*
Allobrŏges, um, m. plur., *the Allobroges,* a people of Gaul.
Al-lŏquor, lŏqui, locūtus sum, dep., (ad-), *to speak to, address.*
Alo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, a., *to nourish, keep, maintain.*
Alpes, ium, f. plur., *the Alps.*
Alter, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *one of two, the one, the other; another.*
Altus, a, um, adj., *high, lofty.*
Amabĭlis, e, adj., ior, issĭmus, (amo), *amiable, lovely.*
Amans, tis, part. & adj., ior, issĭmus, (id.), *fond of.*
Amātus, a, um, part., (amo.)
Amīcē, adv., (amicus), *in a friendly manner.*
Amicitia, æ, f., *friendship:* fr.
Amīcus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, (amo), *friendly:* subst., amīcus, i, m., *a friend.*
A-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., *to lose.*
Amnis, is, m. *or* f., *a river.*
Amo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to love:* si me amas, *if you love me,* a form of entreaty, for, *I pray you, I entreat you.*
Amœnus, a, um, adj., *pleasant.*
Amor, ōris, m., (amo), *love.*
Amplius, adv. comp. of ample, *more.*
Amplus, a, um, adj., *great.*
Amulius, ii, m. p. n., *Amulius.*
An, conj., in indirect questions, *whether:* before the second question, *or.* See Less. 130.
Ancus, i, m., *Ancus, Ancus Marcius,* a Roman king.
Ango, ĕre, anxi, a., *to strangle; to trouble.*
Angustiæ, ārum, f. plur., *straits, narrow places, defiles:* fr.
Angustus, a, um, adj., (ango), *narrow.*
Anĭma, æ, f., *the life, the soul.*
Animadverto, ĕre, ti, sum, a., (animus-adverto), *to observe.*
Animal, ālis, n., (anima), *an animal.*
Animans, tis, m. & f., *an animal.*
Animus, i, m., *the mind; a purpose, design; opinion; courage,* so also in the plural: Esse bono animo, *to be of good courage.* Less. 101, 3.
Annōna, æ, f., (annus), *provisions.*
Annŭlus, i, m., *a ring.*
An-nuo, ĕre, ui, n., (ad-), *to consent.*
Annus, i, m., *a year.*
Anser, ĕris, m., *a goose.*
Ante, prep. with acc., *before.* Also, antĕ, adv., *before, previously.*
Antĕ-quam, adv., *before.*
Antiochīa, æ, f., *Antioch.*
Antīquus, a, um, adj., (ante), *ancient.*
Antium, ii, n., *Antium,* a city of Latium in Italy.
Antonius, ii, m. p. n., *Antonius.*
Antrum, i, n., *a cave.*
Apelles, is, m., *Apelles,* a Grecian painter.
Apĕrio, īre, ui, tum, a., *to open:* h.
Apertus, a, um, part. & adj., *open, plain, manifest.*
Apis, is, f., *a bee.*
Apollo, ĭnis, m., *Apollo.*
Ap-pāreo, ēre, ui, n., (ad-), *to appear.*
Ap-pello, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ad-), *to call, name.*
Appius, ii, m., *Appius.*
Ap-pōno, ĕre, sui, sĭtum, a., (ad-), *to set before, serve up.*
Ap-prehendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., (ad-), *to seize, lay hold of.*
Aptus, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable.*
Apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, before.*
Aqua, æ, f., *water.*
Ara, æ, f., *an altar.*
Aranea, æ, f., *a spider.*
Arbor *or* Arbos, ŏris, f., *a tree.*
Arcas, ădis, m., *an Arcadian.*
Arcessītus, a, um, part.: fr.
Arcesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, a., *to send for, invite.*

Archias, æ, m., *Archias*, a Greek poet. Less. 3, 3 and 5.
Archilŏchus, i, m. p. n., *Archilochus*.
Arethūsa, æ, f., *Arethusa*, a fountain of Syracuse.
Argenteus, a, um, adj., *of silver, silver-*: fr.
Argentum, i, n., *silver*.
Argo-nauta, æ, m., *an Argonaut*, i. e., one who sailed in the ship Argo.
Arguo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., *to accuse, blame*.
Aristippus, i, m., *Aristippus*, a philosopher of Cyrene.
Armātus, a, um, part.: fr.
Armo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (arma), *to arm, equip*.
Aristīdes, is, m., *Aristides*, an Athenian general.
Arōma, ātis, n., *a spice*.
Arreptus, a, um, part., *seized*: fr.
Ar-ripio, ĕre, ui, reptum, a., (ad-rapio), *to seize, lay hold of, take*.
Ars, tis, f., *art*.
Arundo, ĭnis, f., *a reed*.
Ascendo, ĕre, di, sum, n. (ad-scando), *to ascend, mount up, climb*.
Asellus, i, m., dim., (asĭnus), *a young* or *small ass, an ass*.
Aspernor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (ab-spernor), *to reject, spurn*.
As-sentior, īri, sus sum, dep., (ad-sentio), *to assent; to approve*.
As-sĕquor, i, cūtus sum, dep., (ad-sequor), *to overtake, come up with*.
As-simŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ad-), *to make similar; to feign, counterfeit*.
At, conj., *but*.
Ater, tra, trum, adj., *black, sable*.
Athēnæ, ārum, f. plur., *Athens*: h.
Atheniensis, is, m., *an Athenian*.
Athlēta, æ, m., *a wrestler, prize-fighter*.
Atlas, antis, m., *Atlas*, a mountain.
Atque, conj., *and*.
Atqui, conj., *but, yet*.
Attentĕ, adv., (attendo), *attentively*.
Atticus, i, m., *Atticus*, (*T. Pomponius*), a friend of Cicero.
Attŭli, &c., see Affĕro.
Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, n. pass., *to dare*. This verb in the perfect, &c., resembles *fio*. Less. 79, N.
Audio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to hear*: h.
Audītor, ōris, m., *a hearer; a pupil*: and
Audītus, a, um, part.
Au-fugio, ĕre, ūgi, n., (ab-), *to fly from*.
Augustus, i, m., *Augustus*, a Roman emperor.
Aulus, i, m., *Aulus*, a prænomen.
Aura, æ, f., *a gentle breeze, a breath of air*.
Aureus, a, um, adj., (aurum), *of gold, golden, gold-*.
Auris, is, f., *an ear*.
Aurum, i, n., *gold*.
Aut, conj., *or*.
Autem, conj., *but, nevertheless*.
Autumnus, i, m., (auctus), *autumn*.
Auxilium, i, n., (augeo), *assistance*.
Avaritia, æ, f., *avarice*: fr.
Avārus, a, um, adj., *avaricious, covetous*.
A-verto, ĕre, si, sum, a., *to turn away*.
Avĭdus, a, um, adj., (aveo), *desirous, greedy, avaricious*.
Avis, is, f., *a bird*.
A-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fly away*.
Avus, i, m., *a grandfather, an ancestor*.

B.

Bacchus, i, m. p. n., *Bacchus*.
Balæna, æ, f., *a whale*.
Balo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to bleat*.
Beātē, adv., *happily*: fr.
Beātus, a, um, adj., *happy*.
Belgæ, ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians*.
Bellua, æ, f., *a beast*.
Bellum, i, n., *war*: belli domīque, *in war and in peace*.
Bene, adv., *well*.
Bene-fācio, ĕre, fēci, factum, n., *to benefit; to bless, do good to*: h.
Beneficium, i, n., *a kindness, favor*.
Benevolentia, æ, f., (benevŏlus, friendly), *good will*.
Benignē, adv., *kindly*: fr.
Benignus, a, um, adj., *kind*.

Benjamīnus, i, m. p. n., *Benjamin.*
Bestia, æ, f., *a wild beast:* h.
Bestiŏla, æ, f., *a small animal.*
Bias, antis, m., *Bias*, a Grecian philosopher.
Bibliothēca, æ, f., *a library.*
Bibo, ĕre, i, ĭtum, a., *to drink.*
Biduum, i, n., (bis-dies), *two days.*
Biennium, i, n., (bis-annus), *two years.*
Blandē, adv., (blandus), *courteously, gently.*
Blatta, æ, f., *the moth, cockroach.*
Bollānus, i, m. p. n., *Bollanus.*
Bonum, i, n., *a good, a blessing; profit, advantage:* fr.
Bonus, a, um, adj., comp. melior, sup. optĭmus, *good; kind.*
Branchiæ, ārum, f. pl., *the gills of fish.*
Brevis, e, adj., ior, issĭmus, *short:* brevi, sc. tempore, *in a short time, soon.* Less. 118, 2.
Britannia, æ, f., *Britain.*
Brutus, i, m. p. n., *Brutus.*
Byssĭnus, a, um, adj., *of fine linen.*

C.

C., an abbreviation of *Caius.*
Cado, ĕre, cecĭdi, casum, n., *to fall.*
Cæcus, a, um, adj., *blind.*
Cædo, ĕre, cecĭdi, cæsum, a., *to cut; to beat, scourge.*
Cæsar, āris, m. p. n., *Cæsar.*
Caius, i, m., *Caius*, a Roman prænomen.
Calco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (calx, the heel), *to tread.*
Caleo, ēre, ui, n., *to be warm.*
Callĭdus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *shrewd, cunning, crafty.*
Camēlus, i, m., *a camel.*
Campānus, a, um, adj., *Campanian, of Campania.*
Campus, i, m., *a plain.*
Cancer, cri, m., *a crab.*
Canis, is, m. & f., *a dog.*
Canistrum, i, n., *a basket.*
Cano, ĕre, cecĭni, cantum, a., *to sing, play:* h.
Canto, āre, āvi, ātum, a. freq., *to sing often; to sing:* and
Cantus, ûs, m., *a song; crowing.*
Capio, ĕre, cepi, captum, a., *to take, catch; to select:* consilium capere, *to form a design, adopt a plan.*
Capitālis, e, adj., (caput), *capital:* res capitalis, *a capital crime.*
Cappădox, ŏcis, m., *a Cappadocian.*
Capra, æ, f., *a she goat.*
Caprea, æ, f., *a wild goat.*
Captus, a, um, part., (capio), *caught.*
Caput, ĭtis, n., *a head; life:* capĭtis *or* capite damnare, *to condemn to death.*
Carcer, ĕris, m., *a prison.*
Careo, ēre, ui, n., *to be without, be destitute of.*
Carmen, ĭnis, n., (cano), *a verse, a song.*
Caro, nis, f., *flesh.*
Carpo, ĕre, psi, ptum, a., *to pluck, to carp at, vilify.*
Carthaginiensis, e, adj., *Carthaginian.* Carthaginiensis, is, m., *a Carthaginian:* fr.
Carthāgo, ĭnis, f., *Carthage.*
Carus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *dear, precious.*
Casa, æ, f., *a cottage, hut.*
Caseus, i, m., *cheese.*
Cassius, ii, m. p. n., *Cassius.*
Castellum, i, n., *a castle, fortress.*
Castor, ōris, m., *a beaver.*
Castra, ōrum, n. plur., *a camp.*
Casŭla, æ, f., dim., (casa), *a little cottage.*
Casus, ûs, m., (cado), *a fall; a chance:* casu, abl., *by chance.*
Catilīna, æ, m., *Catiline*, a Roman conspirator.
Cato, ōnis, m., *Cato*, a Roman.
Catŭlus, i, m., dim., (canis), *a whelp.*
Cauda, æ, f., *a tail.*
Causa, æ, f., *a cause, reason:* causā, *on account of.*
Cavea, æ, f., *a cage.*
Caveo, ēre, cavi, cautum, n. & a., *to beware, take care, be careful.*
Cedo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, n., *to yield.*
Celer, ĕris, ĕre, adj., *swift:* h.
Celerĭtas, ātis, f., *swiftness.*

Celo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to conceal.*
Censor, ōris, m., *a censor*, a Roman magistrate.
Centum, num. adj., plur. ind., *a hundred.*
Cepi, &c., see Capio.
Certè, adv., (certus), *certainly.*
Certior, see Certus.
Certò, adv., *certainly:* fr.
Certus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *certain:* facere aliquem certiōrem, *to inform him.*
Cervus, i, m., *a stag.*
Cetĕra, rum, adj., (not used in the nom. sing. masc.), *the other:* cetĕri, ōrum, m., *others, the rest.*
Cetus, i, m., *a whale.*
Ceu, adv., *as, as if.*
Chamæleon, ontis, m., *a chameleon.*
Chanaan, indecl., *Canaan.*
Charta, æ, f., *paper.*
Cibaria, ōrum, n. plur., *food, provisions:* fr.
Cibus, i, m., *food, meat, viand.*
Cicĕro, ōnis, m., *Cicero*, the Roman orator.
Ciconia, æ, f., *a stork.*
Cilicium, i, n., *sackcloth.*
Cimbri, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cimbriane:* a people of northern Germany.
Cingo, ĕre, cinxi, cinctum, a., *to gird, surround.*
Cinis, ĕris, m. & f., *ashes.*
Circum, prep. with acc., *around.*
Circum-do, āre, dĕdi, dătum, a., *to put around.*
Circum-specto, āre, a., *to look about.*
Circum-sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, a., *to stand around.*
Circum-volĭto, āre, āvi, a., *to fly* or *hover round.*
Citò, adv., (citus), *quickly, soon, hastily.*
Civis, is, m. & f., *a citizen; a fellow-citizen, countryman:* h.
Civĭtas, ātis, f., *a state, city.*
Clam, prep. with acc. or abl., and adv., *unknown to.*
Clamor, ōris, m., (clamo), *a shout, cry.*
Clarus, a, um, adj., *famous, celebrated.*
Classis, is, f., *a fleet.*
Claudius, i, m. p. n., *Claudius.*
Claudo, ĕre, si, sum, a., *to shut, close.*
Clemens, tis, adj., *mild, merciful:* h.
Clementer, adv., *kindly, mildly:* &
Clementia, æ, f., *kindness, clemency.*
Clodius, i, m. p. n., *Clodius.*
Cn., an abbreviation of the prænomen *Cnæus.*
Codrus, i, m., *Codrus*, the last king of Attica.
Cœlum, i, n., *the heavens, the sky.*
Cœna, æ, f., *supper.*
Cœpi, isse, def. verb., Lesson 81. *I begin* or *I began.*
Cogito, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (coagito), *to think, consider.*
Cognĭtus, a, um, part., (cognosco.)
Cognōmen, ĭnis, n., (con-nomen), *a surname.*
Co-gnosco, ĕre, ōvi, ĭtum, a., (nosco), *to know, recognize.*
Col-lacrўmo, āre, āvi, n., (con-), *to weep with, weep.*
Col-lĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, a., (con-lego), *to collect, acquire.*
Collis, is, m., *a hill.*
Col-lŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (con-), *to place, set.*
Col-lŏquor, i, cūtus sum, dep., (con-), *to converse.*
Collum, i, n., *the neck.*
Colo, ĕre, ui, cultum, a., *to cultivate; to honor, worship:* h.
Colonia, æ, f., *a colony.*
Color, ōris, m., *a color.*
Columba, æ, f., *a dove.*
Com, (cum). An inseparable preposition. Its final *m* is sometimes changed to *n*, *l*, or *r*, and is sometimes dropped; thus making *con, col, cor,* or *co.*
Com-ēdo, ĕre, ēdi, ēsum, a., *to eat up, devour.*
Com-es, ĭtis, m. & f., (-eo), *a companion, attendant.*
Com-ĭtia, ōrum, n. pl., (id.), *an assembly, an election.*
Com-memŏro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to call to mind; to mention.*

Com-mĭgro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to remove.*
Com-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., *to commit, intrust.*
Commŏdum, i, n., (commŏdus), *profit, interest, advantage.*
Commŏtus, a, um, part., *moved, affected:* fr.
Com-mŏveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum, a., *to move.*
Com-mūnis, e, adj., (com-munus), *common.*
Com-pāro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to pair, match; to compare.*
Com-pello, ĕre, ŭli, ulsum, a., *to force, compel, drive.*
Com-plector, i, xus sum, dep., *to encircle, embrace:* h.
Compleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to fill, fill up.*
Complexus, a, um, part.
Com-prehendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to seize, capture:* h.
Comprehensus, a, um, part., *seized, captured.*
Com-prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to confirm, make good, verify.*
Compulsus, a, um, part., (com-pello.)
Concilium, i, n., (concieo), *an assembly, council.*
Concio, ōnis, f., (id.), *an assembly; a discourse, oration.*
Conclāve, is, n., *a chamber, hall.*
Con-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, n., *to run together.*
Con-demno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (damno), *to condemn.*
Condio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (condo), *to season, embalm:* h.
Condītus, a, um, part., *embalmed.*
Condĭtus, a, um, part., *founded:* fr.
Con-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to put together; to found, build; to lay up, hoard; to bury.*
Con-dōno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to pardon, forgive.*
Confectus, a, um, part., (conficio,) *worn out, impaired, enfeebled, consumed.*
Con-fĕro, ferre, contŭli, collātum, irr. a., *to collect:* conferre se, *to betake one's self.*
Confestim, adv., *immediately.*
Con-fĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, a., (facio), *to finish; to wear out; to make, prepare.*
Con-fido, ĕre, fisus sum, n. pass. Less. 79, Note, *to trust in, rely upon.*
Con-firmo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to strengthen, confirm; to affirm, assert.*
Con-fiteor, ēri, fessus sum, dep., (fateor), *to confess, acknowledge.*
Con-gĕro, ĕre, essi, estum, a., *to collect, heap up.*
Congruenter, adv., (congruens fr. congruo), *agreeably.*
Conjector, ōris, m., *a soothsayer, diviner:* and
Conjectus, a, um, part.: fr.
Con-jicio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, a., (jacio), *to throw, cast.*
Conon, ōnis, m. p. n., *Conon*, an Athenian general.
Conor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to attempt; to endeavor.*
Con-scius, a, um, adj., *conscious.* It sometimes takes both the genitive and the dative. Less. 104, & 109.
Con-sīdo, ĕre, ēdi, essum, n., *to sit down together; to seat one's self.*
Considĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to consider, meditate upon.*
Consilium, i, n., *counsel, advice, plan, measure.*
Con-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, n., *to stop.*
Consolatio, ōnis, f., *consolation, comfort:* fr.
Con-sōlor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to console, comfort.*
Conspectus, ûs, m., (conspicio), *sight, presence:* conspectus tuus, *a sight of you.*
Con-spergo, ĕre, ersi, ersum, a., (spargo), *to sprinkle, moisten.*
Con-spicio, ĕre, exi, ectum, a., (specio), *to see, behold, perceive.*
Constantia, æ, f., (constans fr. consto), *constancy.*
Con-stituo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., (statuo), *to place, set; to appoint, fix, prescribe.*

Con-sto, ĕre, stĭti, n., *to consist of; to cost.*
Con-strŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to heap up, build, construct.*
Consul, ŭlis, m., *a consul:* h.
Consulātus, ūs, m., *a consulate, consulship.*
Consŭlo, ĕre, ui, tum, n. & a., *to consult; to consult for, provide for, take care of.*
Con-sūmo, ĕre, umpsi, umptum, a., *to consume:* h.
Consumptus, a, um, part.
Contentus, a, um, adj., *content, satisfied:* and
Contĭnens, tis, adj., *temperate, moderate:* fr.
Con-tineo, ĕre, ui, tentum, a., (teneo), *to hold; to restrain:* h.
Continuò, adv., *immediately.*
Contra, prep. with acc., *against.*
Con-valesco, ĕre, lui, n., *to recover.*
Con-venio, īre, ēni, entum, n. & a., *to meet, assemble; to visit:* pass. impers. **convenītur**, *they come, people flock:* h.
Conventio, ōnis, f., *a meeting.*
Con-verto, ĕre, ti, sum, a., *to turn, convert.*
Convicium, ii, n., *a reproach, an insult.*
Con-vinco, ĕre, īci, ictum, a., *to convict.* Less. 106, 3.
Con-vivium, i, n., (vivo), *a feast, banquet.*
Con-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to call together, assemble.*
Copia, æ, f., (con-ops), *abundance, means; forces.*
Coquus, i, m., (coquo), *a cook.*
Coram, prep. with abl., *before, in presence of.*
Corinthus, i, f., *Corinth.*
Cornelia, æ, f. p. n., *Cornelia.*
Cornu, ūs, n., pl. cornua, &c. Less. 25, *a horn.*
Corōna, æ, f., *a garland, crown.*
Corpus, ŏris, n., *the body, person.*
Correptus, a, um, part., *seized:* fr.
Cor-rĭpio, ĕre, ipui, eptum, a., (rapio), *to seize.*
Cor-rumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, a., *to spoil, corrupt.*
Corsĭca, æ, f., *Corsica*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.
Corvus, i, m., *a raven.*
Cras, adv., *to-morrow.*
Crassus, i, m., *Crassus.* a Roman.
Crastĭnus, a, um, adj., (cras), *of to-morrow:* crastinus dies, *to-morrow.*
Creātor, ōris, m., (creo), *a creator, maker.*
Credo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum, a., *to trust, believe:* h.
Credŭlus, a, um, adj., *credulous.*
Creo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make; create, appoint:* h.
Cresco, ĕre, crevi, cretum, n., *to grow, increase.*
Creta, æ, f., *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.
Crœsus, i, m., *Crœsus*, a very rich king of Lydia.
Crudēlis, e, adj., (crudus), *cruel, hard-hearted.*
Cui, see Qui and Quis.
Cujusque, see Quisque.
Cujusvis, see Quivis.
Culex, ĭcis, m., *a gnat.*
Culmus, i, m., *a stalk, stem.*
Culpa, æ, f., *a fault, blame.*
Cŭm *or* **Quum**, adv. & conj., *when; since.*
Cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
Cupīdus, a, um, adj., *desirous, fond of:* fr.
Cupio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to desire, covet, wish.*
Cur, adv., (i. e. quare), *why.*
Cura, æ, f., *care.*
Curio, ōnis, m. p. n., *Curio.*
Curo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (cura), *to take care of; to regard, care for.*
Curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum, n., *to run; to hasten:* h.
Currus, ūs, m., *a chariot.*
Custodia, æ, f., *a watch, guard:* custodiæ causā, *as a guard:* and
Custōdio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to guard, watch:* fr.
Custos, ōdis, m. & f., *a guard, protector.*
Cygnus, i, m., *a swan.*

Cyrnus, i, f., *Cyrnus;* i. e. Corsica.
Cyrus, i, m., *Cyrus,* a king of Persia.

D.

Damno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to condemn.* Damnare capĭtis, *to condemn to death.* Less. 105, 4.
Danubius, ii, m., *the Danube.*
Darĭus, i, m., *Darius,* a king of Persia.
Datūrus, a, um, part., (do), *about to give.*
Datus, a, um, part., (do), *given.*
De, prep. with abl., *of, concerning.*
Dea, æ, f., (deus), *a goddess.* Less. 8, R. 1.
De-bello, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to conquer, subdue.*
Debeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., (de-habeo), *to owe; one ought:* pass. *to be due.*
Decem, num. adj. ind., *ten.*
De-cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, a., *to decree.*
De-cerpo, ĕre, psi, ptum, a., (carpo), *to pluck* or *strip off.*
De-cipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, a., (capio), *to deceive.*
De-clāro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to declare, proclaim.*
De-cumbo, ĕre, ui, n., *to lie down.*
Decussis, is, m., (decem-as), *a piece of money equal to ten asses:* abl. sing. decussi.
De-dĕcus, ŏris, n., *a disgrace, a dishonorable action.*
Dedi, &c., see Do.
De-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring, lead, induce.*
De-fendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to defend, protect.*
De-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a. irr., *to carry, bring.*
De-glūbo, ĕre, psi, ptum, a., *to flay, skin.*
De-inde, adv., *then.*
Deiotārus, i, m., *Deiotarus,* a king of Galatia.
Delātus, a, um, part., (defero).
Delecto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to delight, please.* Impers. delectat, it *delights.*
Deleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to blot out; to destroy.*
Delphi, ōrum, m., *Delphi,* a town of Phocis in Greece.
Delphīnus, i, m., *a dolphin.*
Demarātus, i, m. p. n., *Demaratus.*
Dementia, æ, f., (demens), *folly, madness.*
De-mitto, ĕre, isi, issum, a., *to let down, cast down.*
Demōnax, ācis, m., *Demonax,* a Cretan philosopher.
De-monstro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to show, represent, declare.*
Demosthĕnes, is, m., *Demosthenes,* the great Athenian orator.
Demum, adv., *at length, at last.*
Denīque, adv., *at last.*
De-pello, ĕre, ŭli, ulsum, a., *to drive away.*
De-pōno, ĕre, osui, osĭtum, a., *to lay down; to take off.*
De-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to carry away, convey.*
De-prehendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to seize; to detect, discover:* h.
Deprehensus, a, um, part.
De-scendo, ĕre, di, sum, n., (scando), *to come* or *go down, descend.*
De-sĕro, ĕre, ui, tum, a., *to forsake, desert.*
Desidĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to desire, long for.*
De-terreo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, a., *to deter, prevent.*
De-trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to take* or *strip off.*
De-trūdo, ĕre, si, sum, a., *to thrust down; to push off.*
Deus, i, m., *God, a god.*
De-vŏro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to devour, eat up.*
Di, see Dis.
Diadēma, ătis, n., *a diadem.*
Diāna, æ, f., *Diana,* a Roman goddess.
Dico, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to speak, say; to call* or *name; to celebrate:* h.
Dictus, a, um, part.
Dies, ēi, m. & f., Less. 27, Exc., 4 *day.*

Eurypylus, i, m. p. n., *Eurypylus.*
E-vello, ĕre, evelli *or* evulsi, evulsum, a., *to tear up.*
E-venio, īre, ēni, entum, n., *to happen, occur.*
Ex, *see* E.
Ex-cēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, n., *to depart* or *retire from.*
Exceptus, a, um, part., (excipio), *excepted.*
Excidium, i, n., (excīdo), *destruction, ruin.*
Ex-cipio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, a., (-capio), *to except.*
Excitātus, a, um, part. : fr.
Ex-cito, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to excite, stimulate, arouse, raise, stir up.*
Ex-clāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to exclaim, cry out.*
Excusatio, ōnis, f., (excuso), *an excuse.*
Exemplum, i, n., (exīmo), *an example.*
Ex-eo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, n., *to go or come forth.*
Exercītus, ûs, m., (exerceo, to exercise), *an army.*
Exiguus, a, um, adj., (exigo), *small.*
Exīlis, e, adj., *thin, meagre.*
Eximius, a, um, adj., (eximo), *remarkable, extraordinary.*
Ex-istimo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (-aestimo), *to judge, think.*
Exitiālis, e, adj., *deadly, destructive :* and
Exitiōsus, a, um, adj., *destructive :* fr.
Exitium, i, n., (ex-eo), *destruction, ruin.*
Ex-orior, īri, ortus sum, dep., *to rise, arise :* h.
Exortus, a, um, part., *having sprung up* or *arisen.*
Ex-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, a., *to drive out, expel, banish.*
Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, dep., *to awake.*
Ex-perior, īri, expertus sum, dep., *to try, prove, find out.*
Experrectus, a, um, part., (expergiscor), *having awaked.*
Ex-pers, tis, adj., (pars), *destitute* or *devoid of, free from.*
Ex-plōro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to search, explore, spy out.*
Ex-pōno, ĕre, osui, ositum, a., *to set forth, show, relate, rehearse.*
Ex-primo, ĕre, essi, essum, a., (premo), *to press out.*
Ex-prōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to charge with, reproach for.* It is construed with the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person.
Ex-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to take, carry* as by storm, &c.
Expulsus, a, um, part., (expello).
Ex-quiro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, a., (quæro), *to search for, seek out.*
Ex-solvo, ĕre, olvi, olūtum, a., *to unloose ; to pay :* pœnam exsolvere, *to suffer punishment.*
Ex-specto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to await, wait for.*
Exstinctus, a, um, part., *dead :* fr.
Ex-stinguo, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to extinguish :* pass. *to die.*
Exsŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., (exsul), *to be in exile, be banished.*
Exter, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., (ex), comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus, *external.*
Ex-timesco, ĕre, mui, n. & a., *to fear greatly.*
Ex-trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to draw out, extricate.*
Extrēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of Exter, *extreme, greatest.*
Exuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., *to put off.*

F.

Facies, ēi, f., *the face, countenance.*
Facĭlĕ, adv., comp. facilĭus, sup. facillĭmē, *easily :* fr.
Facĭlis, e, adj., ius, illĭmē, *easy :* fr.
Facio, ĕre, feci, factum, a., *to make, do, act ; to appoint.* Fac, second pers. sing., imperative, *make* or *cause ;* fac cures, *take care of, care for, attend to ;* pass. fio, which see.
Factus, a, um, part., (fio.)
Facundus, a, um, adj., (fari, to (speak), *eloquent.*

Fallo, ĕre, fefelli, falsum, a., *to deceive.*
Fama, æ, f., *fame, rumor, report.*
Fames, is, f., *hunger; famine.*
Familia, æ, f., (famulus, a servant), *a family:* h.
Familiāris, e, adj., *of a family:* res familiāris, *household affairs, property, estate.*
Fanum, i, n., *a temple.*
Fateor, ēri, fassus sum, dep., *to confess, acknowledge.*
Fatīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to tire, fatigue.*
Faux, cis, f., obsolete in the sing., except the abl. fauce: *the throat:* hærēre fauce, *to stick in the throat.*
Faveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, n., *to favor.* Less. 110.
Feci, &c., see Facio.
Fecundus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *fruitful, fertile.*
Fel, fellis, n., *gall.*
Felicĭtas, ātis, f., *happiness:* fr.
Felix, īcis, adj., *happy.*
Fenestra, æ, f., *a window.*
Fera, æ, f., *a wild beast.*
Ferĕtrum, i, n., *a bier.*
Ferīnus, a, um, adj., (fera), *of wild beasts.*
Ferio, īre, a., *to hit, strike, slay:* secūri ferīre, *to behead.*
Fero, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a. irr., *to bear, carry, bring, produce; to report, say:* legem ferre, *to propose a law,* also, *to make* or *frame a law; to bear, endure.*
Ferox, ōcis, adj., *ferocious.*
Fertilis, e, adj., (fero), *fertile, fruitful.*
Fessus, a, um, adj., *weary.*
Festīnans, tis, part. and adj., *hastening; in haste:* fr.
Festīno, āre, āvi, ātum, n. & a., *to hasten, make haste.*
Ficus, i, *or* ûs, f., *a fig tree.*
Fidenter, adv., (fidens fr. fido), *boldly, without fear.*
Fides, ei, f., *faith:* in fidem recipĕre, *to receive under one's protection:* bonâ fide, *in good faith, honestly.*
Fido, ĕre, fisus sum, n. pass., L. 79, N., *to trust* or *confide in, rely upon.*
Fidus, a, um, adj., *faithful.*
Figūra, æ, f., *a figure, shape.*
Filius, ii, m., *a son.*
Finio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (finis, the end), *to terminate, finish.*
Fio, fiĕri, factus sum, irr. pass. of facio, *to be made, become, happen, be done.* L. 79.
Firmĭtas, ātis, f., (firmus), *firmness, strength.*
Firmus, a, um, adj., *firm, constant, resolute; durable.*
Fistulōsus, a, um, adj., (fistula), *fistular, tubular.*
Flagitium, ii, n., *dishonor, shameful crime, wickedness.*
Flecto, ĕre, xi, xum, a., *to bend; to move, prevail upon.*
Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, n., *to weep.*
Floreo, ēre, ui, n., *to bloom; to flourish:* fr.
Flos, flōris, m., *a flower.*
Fluctus, ûs, m., (fluo, to flow), *a wave.*
Flumen, ĭnis, n., (id.), *a river.*
Focus, i, m., *a hearth.*
Fodio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, a., *to dig; to pierce.*
Folium, ii, n., *a leaf.*
Fons, tis, m., *a fountain.*
Fore, def. verb, Less. 81, 5, *about to be.* With a subject, *would* or *should be.*
Formīca, æ, f., *an ant.*
Formīdo, ĭnis, f., *fear.*
Formositas, ātis, f., (formōsus, handsome), *beauty.*
Fors, tis, f., *chance, fortune:* forte, abl., *by chance.*
Fortis, e, adj., ior, issĭmus, *brave.*
Fortūna, æ, f., (fors), *fortune.*
Fossa, æ, f., (fodio, to dig), *a ditch, trench.*
Fovea, æ, f., *a pit.*
Foveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, a., *to cherish, brood.*
Frater, tris, m., *a brother:* plur. *brothers, brethren.*
Fretus, a, um, adj., *trusting to.*
Frigĭdus, a, um, adj., *cold:* fr.
Frigus, ŏris, n., *cold.*

Frons, dis, f., *foliage, leaves.*
Fructus, ûs, m., (fruor), *fruit.*
Frugis, &c., see Frux.
Frumentum, i, n., *corn:* fr.
Fruor, i, fruitus and fructus sum, dep., *to enjoy.*
Frustrà, adv., *in vain.*
Frux, frugis, f., *fruit, corn.*
Fuga, æ, f., *flight, retreat.*
Fugax, ācis, adj., *swift, fleeting:* fr.
Fugio, ĕre, fūgi, fugĭtum, n. & a., *to flee, shun, avoid:* h.
Fugo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to put to flight; to banish.*
Fui, Fuĕram, &c., see Sum.
Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, n., *to shine:* h.
Fulmen, ĭnis, n., *lightning.*
Fungor, i, ctus sum, dep., *to execute, perform.*
Funus, ĕris, n., *a funeral:* funus facere, *to perform funeral rites.*
Fur, furis, m. & f., *a thief.*
Furo, ĕre, n., *to be mad, to rage:* h.
Furor, ōris, m., *fury, madness.*
Furtum, i, n., (fur), *theft.*
Futūrus, a, um, part., (sum), *about to be, future.*

G.

Gades, ium, f. plur., *Cadiz,* a town of Spain.
Gallia, æ, f., *Gaul, France.*
Gallĭna, æ, f., *a hen.*
Gallus, i, m., *a cock.*
Gallus, i, m., *a Gaul.*
Gaudeo, ēre, gavīsus sum, n. pass., Less. 79, N., *to rejoice, be delighted with:* h.
Gaudium, i, n., *joy.*
Gaza, æ, f., *Gaza,* a town of Palestine.
Gemĭnus, a, um, adj., *double.*
Gemĭtus, ûs, (gemo), *a groan.*
Gemma, æ, f., *a gem, a bud.*
Generosĭtas, ātis, f., (generōsus), *generosity, magnanimity.*
Genĭtus, a, um, part., (gigno), *born.*
Gens, tis, f., (id.), *a nation.*
Genus, ĕris, n., *a race, stock.*
Germānus, i, m., *a German.*
Gero, ĕre, gessi, gestum, a., *to bear, produce:* bellum gerere, *to wage* or *carry on war:* curam gerere, *to take care of:* h.
Gesto, āre, āvi, ātum, a. freq., *to bear, carry.*
Gigno, ĕre, genui, genĭtum, a., *to beget; to produce.*
Gloria, æ, f., *glory:* h.
Gloriŏr, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to glory in, pride one's self upon.* L. 116, 5.
Gnavus, a, um, adj., *active, diligent.*
Gracchi, ōrum, m., *the Gracchi,* two grandsons of the elder Scipio Africanus.
Gradus, ûs, m., *a step; a condition, rank.*
Græcia, æ, f., *Greece:* h.
Græcus, a, um, adj., *Grecian, Greek.* Græcus, i, m., *a Greek.*
Gramen, ĭnis, n., *grass.*
Grandis, e, adj., *large, great.*
Gratia, æ, f., *grace, favor:* gratiâ, *for the purpose:* fr.
Gratus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *grateful, agreeable.*
Gravis, e, adj., *heavy; violent, severe:* gravis somnus, *a deep or sound sleep:* h.
Gravo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to burden.*
Grex, gregis, m., *a flock.*
Grus, gruis, m. & f., *a crane.*

H.

Habeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., *to have; to treat; to account, esteem:* orationem habere, *to pronounce, deliver:* se habere, *to be:* habere in animo, *to intend:* habere iter, *to pursue* or *direct one's course:* h.
Habĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, intensive v. a., *to live, dwell, reside.*
Habĭtus, a, um, part., (habeo).
Hæreo, ēre, hæsi, hæsum, n., *to adhere, stick.*
Hæsĭtans, tis, part.: fr.
Hæsĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, intensive v. n., (hæreo), *to hesitate, doubt.*
Hamilcar, āris, m., *Hamilcar.*
Hannĭbal, ălis, m., *Hannibal.*
Haud, adv., *not.*
Hebes, ĕtis, adj., *dull, stupid.*

Hebræus, a, um, adj., *Hebrew.*
Hector, ŏris, m., *Hector*, a Trojan chief.
Hei, interj., *ah! alas!*
Helvetii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Helvetians.*
Hercŭles, is, m., *Hercules*, a Grecian hero.
Herus, i, m., *a master.*
Heu, interj., *ah! alas!*
Hibernia, æ, f., *Ireland*
Hic, hæc, hoc, adj. pron., *this:* h.
Hīc, adv., *here.*
Hiems, ēmis, f., *winter.*
Hirundo, ĭnis, f., *a swallow.*
Hœdus, i, m., *a kid.*
Homicīda, æ, m. & f., (homo-cædo), *a homicide, murderer.*
Homo, ĭnis, m. & f., *a man.*
Honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
Hora, æ, f., *an hour.*
Horreo, ēre, ŭi, n. & a., *to shudder, be afraid; to fear.*
Horreum, i, n., *a granary, storehouse.*
Hortus, i, m., *a garden.*
Hospes, ĭtis, m. & f., *a stranger; a visitor:* h.
Hospitium, ii, n., *an inn, a lodging.*
Hostīlis, e, adj., (hostis), *hostile.*
Hostĭlĭus, i, m., *Hostilius.* See Tullus.
Hostis, is, m. & f., *an enemy:* hostes, *enemies, the enemy.*
Huc, adv., (hic), *hither.*
Hujus and **huic**, see Hic.
Humanĭtas, ātis, f., *humanity, human nature:* fr.
Humānus, a, um, adj., (homo), *human.*
Humīlis, e, adj., *low, humble:* fr.
Humus, i, f., *the ground:* humi *or* in humo, *on the ground.*
Hunc, adj. pron., see Hic.
Hyæna, æ, f., *the hyæna.*

I.

Ibam, Ibo, &c., see Eo.
Ibi, adv., (is), *there.*
Ico, ĕre, ĭci, ictum, a., *to strike, wound:* h.
Ictus, a, um, part., *struck, wounded.*
Idcirco, adv., (id-circa), *therefore; for this reason.*
Idem, eădem, idem, adj. pron., (is-dem), *the same.*
Ideo, adv., *therefore.*
Idoneus, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable, worthy.*
Iens, Gen. euntis, part., (eo), *going.*
Igĭtur, conj., *therefore.*
Ignavia, æ, f., (ignāvus), *sloth.*
Ignis, is, m., *fire.*
Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, n. & a., (ignārus), *not to know, be ignorant.*
Ignosco, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum, a., (in-gnosco), *to pardon, forgive.*
Ille, illa, illud, adj. pron., *that:* without a noun, *he, she, it:* h.
Illuc, adv., *thither, to that place.*
Il-lucesco, ĕre, luxui, n., (in-), *to become light, to dawn:* impers., ubi luxit, *when it was light.*
Illustris, e, adj., (in-lustro), *illustrious, distinguished.*
Im, in composition, see In.
Imbecillis, e, adj., ior, *weak, feeble.*
Im-mĕmor, ŏris, adj., *forgetful, unmindful.*
Im-mineo, ēre, ui, n., *to overhang, be near.*
Im-mobĭlis, e, adj., *immovable.*
Im-mŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to sacrifice.*
Im-mortālis, e, adj., *immortal:* h.
Immortalĭtas, ātis, f., *immortality.*
Impĕdio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (in-pes), *to hinder, prevent.*
Imperātor, ōris, m., (impero), *a commander; an emperor.*
Imperītē, adv., (in-perītus), *unskilfully.*
Imperium, ii, n., *government, empire, sovereignty:* fr.
Im-pĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (-paro), *to command, govern.*
Im-pĕtro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (-patro), *to obtain, bring about.*
Im-pius, a, um, adj., *irreligious, unprincipled.*
Im-pleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to fill.*
Implōro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to entreat, implore.*
Im-pōno, ĕre, osui, osĭtum, a., *to put upon, impose.*

Imprŏbè, adv., *dishonestly, wickedly*: fr.
Im-prŏbus, a, um, adj., *bad, wicked.*
Im-prūdens, tis, adj., *unawares.*
Im-pūdens, tis, adj., ior, issĭmus, *impudent.*
In, prep., 1st. with acc., *into, to, towards, against, according to, for*: 2d. with abl., *in, upon, among.*—In composition its *n* becomes *m* before *b, m, p*; is assimilated before *l* and *r*; and is dropped before *gn.*
Incertus, a, um, adj., *uncertain, doubtful.*
In-cīdo, ĕre, īdi, n., (cado), *to fall into*, or *upon.*
In-clāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call upon, call.*
In-cŏlo, ĕre, ui, cultum, a. & n., *to dwell in, inhabit.*
In-colūmis, e, adj., *safe.*
Inconstantia, æ, f., (inconstans, inconstant), *inconstancy.*
In-credibilis, e, adj., *incredible, wonderful.*
India, æ, f., *India.*
In-dīco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to show, disclose, discover.*
Indignĭtas, ātis, f., *unworthiness, baseness*: fr.
In-dignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy.*
In-doctus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *illiterate, ignorant.*
Induo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., *to put on, clothe.*
Indus, i, m., *the Indus.*
Industrius, a, um, adj., *industrious*: h.
Industria, æ, f., *industry.*
Indutiæ, ārum, f. plur., *a truce.*
Ineptiæ, ārum, f. plur., *folly, impertinence*: fr.
Ineptus, a, um, adj., (in-aptus), *foolish, silly, impertinent.*
Inertia, æ, f., (iners), *sloth, laziness.*
In-fēlix, īcis, adj., *unhappy, unfortunate.*
In-fĕro, ferre, intŭli, illātum, a., *to bring upon*: inferre bellum, *to make war upon.*
Infesto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to trouble, molest, infest*: fr.
Infestus, a, um, adj., *hostile, inimical.*
Infra, prep. with acc., *beneath, below.*
Ingenium, i, n., (in-geno), *genius talents; character.*
Ingens, tis, adj., *huge, very great.*
In-gravesco, ĕre, n., *to grow heavy, increase.*
In-grĕdior, i, gressus sum, dep., (gradior), *to enter*: h.
Ingressus, a, um, part.
Initium, i, n., (ineo), *a beginning.*
In-jĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, a., (jacio), *to throw* or *lay upon.*
Injuria, æ, f., (injurius), *an injury.*
In-nōcens, tis, adj., *innocent, harmless.*
In-noxius, a, um, adj., *harmless.*
Ino, f., Gen. Inus, in all other cases Ino, see Appendix, Less. C.; a Greek noun, *Ino*, a daughter of Cadmus.
Inopia, æ, f., (inops), *want, scarcity, dearth.*
Inquam, *or* inquio, is, it, &c., def. verb, *I say*, &c.
Insania, æ, f., (insānus), *madness, insanity.*
Insectum, i, n., (inseco), *an insect.*
In-sĕquor, i, secūtus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue.*
In-sĕro, ĕre, erui, ertum, a., *to insert, put into.*
In-sideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, n., (sedeo), *to sit in* or *upon*: h.
Insidiæ, ārum, f. pl., *an ambuscade.*
In-signis, e, adj., (signum), *distinguished, extraordinary.*
In-sipiens, tis, adj., (sapiens), *foolish.*
In-suāvis, e, adj., *unpleasant, disagreeable.*
Insŭla, æ, f., *an island.*
In-sŭper, adv., *moreover, over and above.*
Intellĭgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, a., (inter-lego), *to understand, perceive.*
Inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*
Inter-ea, adv., (-is), *in the meantime.*
Inter-dĭu, adv., *in the day time.*

Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
Inter-eo, īre, ii, ĭtum, n., *to die, perish.*
Intĕr-est, interfuit, impers., (-sum), *it concerns, it is of importance.*
Inter-fĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, a., (facio), *to kill, slay.*
Interfui, &c., see Intersum.
Interpres, ĕtis, m. & f., *an interpreter.*
Interpretatio, ōnis, f., *an interpretation, explanation:* fr.
Interprĕtor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (interpres), *to interpret, explain.*
Interrogātus, a, um, part., *being asked:* fr.
Inter-rōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to ask.*
Inter-sum, esse, fui, irr. n., *to be between, to be present at.*
Intro-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring in, introduce.*
Intŭli, &c., see Infĕro.
In-utĭlis, e, adj., *useless.*
In-vĕnio, īre, ēni, entum, a., *to find, to discover:* h.
Inventrix, īcis, f., *she that finds out, an inventress.*
Inventus, a, um, part., (invenio,) *found.*
In-vīdeo, ēre, īdi, īsum, n. & a., *to envy.*
In-vīsus, a, um, adj., *hated, hateful, odious.*
In-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to call upon.*
Ipse, a, um, Gen. ipsīus, adj. pron., *self* or *myself*, &c. Lessons 42 and 43.
Ira, æ, f., *anger:* h.
Irascor, i, dep., *to be angry, to be displeased with:* h.
Irātus, a, um, adj., *angry.*
Ire, ivi, &c., see Eo.
Ir-reparābilis, e, adj., (in-), *irreparable, irretrievable.*
Is, ea, id, Gen. ejus, adj. pron., *that, he, she, it:* also, when followed by *qui* and the subjunctive, *such, of such a character, one.*
Intereo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, irr. n., *to perish, die.*
Isaăcus, i, m. p. n., *Isaac.*
Isis, ĭdis, f., *Isis*, an Egyptian goddess.
Isocrātes, is, m., *Isocrates*, an Athenian orator.
Iste, ista, istud, Gen. istīus, adj. pron., *that, that of yours.*
It, ite, &c., see Eo.
Ita, adv., *so.*
Italia, æ, f., *Italy.*
Ităque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
Iter, itinĕris, n., *a journey, way.*
Itĕrum, adv., *again.*

J.

Jaceo, ēre, ui, n., *to lie.*
Jacōbus, i, m. p. n., *Jacob.*
Jactabundus, a, um, adj., *vaunting, boasting:* fr.
Jacto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to throw; to throw out, utter, speak.*
Jacŭlans, tis, part.: fr.
Jacŭlor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to throw a javelin:* fr.
Jacŭlum, i, n., *a javelin, dart.*
Jam, adv., *now, already.*
Janĭtor, ōris, m., (janua, a gate), *a porter,*
Josĕphus, i, m. p. n., *Joseph.*
Jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, a., *to order, command.*
Jucundus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *pleasant, agreeable.*
Judas, æ, m. p. n., *Judah.* L. 8, 5.
Judex, ĭcis, m. & f., *a judge.*
Judĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (jus-dico), *to judge, decide.*
Juglans, dis, f., *a walnut.*
Jugurtha, æ, m., *Jugurtha*, a king of Numidia.
Julia, æ, f., *Julia*, the daughter of Julius Cæsar.
Jungo, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to join.*
Juno, ōnis, f., *Juno*, the queen of the gods.
Jupĭter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove*, the king of the gods. Less. 21.
Jura, æ, m., *Jura*, a mountain of Gaul.
Juro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to swear:* fr.
Jus, juris, n., *right.*
Jus-jurandum, jurisjurandi, n., *an oath.* Less. 27.

Jussi, &c., see Jubeo.
Justitia, æ, f., *justice*: fr.
Justus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, (jus), *just, true.*
Juventus, ūtis, f., (juvĕnis), *youth*: also, *the youth, the young people.*

L.

Labor *or* **labos**, ōris, m., *labor, toil; distress, trouble.*
Labor, i, lapsus sum, dep., *to glide away, pass away.*
Lac, lactis, n., *milk.*
Lacedæmon, ōnis, f., *Lacedæmon* or *Sparta*: h.
Lacedæmonius, i, m., *a Lacedæmonian, Spartan.*
Lacerta, æ, f., *a lizard.*
Lacrўma, æ, f., *a tear.*
Lædo, ĕre, si, sum, a., *to hurt, injure.*
Lætor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to rejoice, rejoice in, be delighted with.*
Lapillus, i, m., dim., *a little stone, a stone*: fr.
Lapis, ĭdis, m., *a stone.*
Latīnus, i, m., *a Latin, an inhabitant of Latium.*
Lātro, ōnis, m., *a robber.*
Latus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, *wide, broad.*
Laudabĭlis, e, adj., comp. ior, *laudable*: fr.
Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to praise, laud, extol*: fr.
Laus, dis, f., *praise, glory, honor.*
Lautus, a, um, adj., *elegant, sumptuous*: fr.
Lavo, āre, lavi, lavātum, lautum *or* lotum, a., *to wash.*
Leæna, æ, f., *a lioness.*
Legātus, i, m., (lego, āre, to depute), *an ambassador, a lieutenant.*
Legio, ōnis, f., (lego, ĕre), *a legion.*
Legis, &c., see Lex.
Lego, ĕre, legi, lectum, a., *to read.*
Lenio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (lenis), *to mitigate, alleviate.*
Lenĭter, adv., (id.), *mildly, kindly.*
Leo, ōnis, m., *a lion.*
Lepus, ŏris, m., *a hare.*
Letum, i, n., *death.*
Lex, legis, f., (lego, ĕre), *a law.*
Libenter, adv., (libens), *willingly.*
Liber, bri, m., *a book.*
Liber, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *free*: h.
Liberālis, e, adj., *liberal.*
Liberātus, a, um, part., (libero.)
Libĕrè, adv., (liber), comp. ius, *freely; extravagantly*
Libĕri, ōrum, m. plur., (liber), *children.*
Libĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (id.), *to free, deliver.*
Libertas, ātis, f., (id.), *liberty, freedom.*
Libya, æ, f., *Libya.*
Licet, uit, impers. verb, *it is lawful, it is permitted*: h.
Licèt, conj., *though, although.*
Ligo, ōnis, m., *a mattock, hoe.*
Ligo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to bind.*
Lilium, i, n., *a lily.*
Lingua, æ, f., *the tongue; language.*
Liquesco, ĕre, licui, n., (liqueo), *to melt.*
Littĕra, æ, f., *a letter* of the alphabet: plur., *a letter* or *epistle*; also, *literature, letters.*
Littus, ŏris, n., *the shore.*
Locus, i, m., plur. loci, m., *or* loca, n., *a place; condition.*
Locūtus, a, um, part., (loquor), *having spoken* or *said.*
Longè, adv., (longus), *far, very.*
Longitūdo, ĭnis, f., *length*: fr.
Longus, a, um, adj., *long, of long continuance.*
Loquor, i, cūtus sum, dep., *to speak, converse, say.*
Lotus, a, um, part., (lavo), *washed.*
Lucis, &c., see Lux.
Lucus, i, m., *a grove.*
Ludus, i, m., *play*: plur., *games, shows.*
Lugeo, ēre, xi, n. & a., *to mourn, lament, mourn for.*
Luna, æ, f., *the moon.*
Luo, ĕre, lui, lutum, a., *to pay; to suffer.*
Lupus, i, m., *a wolf.*
Luscinia, æ, f., *a nightingale.*
Lutum, i, n., *mud; clay.*
Lux, lucis, f., *the light.*
Luxi, &c., see Lugeo.

Lysander, dri, m., *Lysander*, a Spartan general.

M.

M., an abbreviation of *Marcus*.
Macedonia, æ, f., *Macedonia*.
Machīna, æ, f., *a machine*.
Macilentus, a, um, adj., *lean*.
Magis, adv., comp., *more*.
Magistrātus, ûs, m., *a magistracy: a magistrate*.
Magnificus, a, um, adj., (magnus-facio), *splendid, magnificent*.
Magnitūdo, ĭnis, f., *greatness*: fr.
Magnus, a, um, adj., comp. major, sup. maxĭmus, *great*: magnum iter, *a long journey*. Est magni, *it is of great value*: magni interest, *it greatly concerns*: magna vox, *a loud voice*.
Magnus, i, m., *Magnus* or *the Great*, a surname of Pompey.
Major, ōris, adj., comp. of magnus, Less. 10, 3, *greater*: h.
Majōres, um, m. plur., *ancestors*.
Malè, adv., (malus), *ill*.
Maledīco, ĕre, xi, tum, n., (male-dico), *to speak ill of, to slander*. Less. 112.
Male-dīcus, a, um, adj., (id.), *slanderous, backbiting*.
Malum, i, n., *evil, misfortune*: Aliquid in malo ducere, *to consider anything as evil*, or *as an evil*: fr.
Malus, a, um, adj., comp. pejor, sup. pessĭmus, *bad, wicked*.
Mandātum i, n., (mando), *an order, command*.
Manè, adv., *in the morning*.
Maneo, ēre, si, sum, n., *to stay, remain*.
Manifestus, a, um, adj., *plain, evident, manifest*.
Manipŭlus, i, m., *a bundle, sheaf*.
Manus, ûs, f., *a hand*.
Marcius, i, m. p. n., *Marcius*.
Marcus, i, m., *Marcus*, a Roman prænomen.
Mare, is, n., *the sea*.
Marius, i, m., *Marius*, a Roman general.
Marīnus, a, um, adj., (mare), *of the sea*: aqua marīna, *sea-water*.
Marsyas, æ, m., *Marsyas*. L. 8, 5.
Mater, tris, f., *a mother*: h.
Matrōna, æ, f., *a matron, lady*.
Maturesco, ĕre, urui, n., (matūrus, ripe), *to ripen*.
Matūro, āre, āvi, ātum, a. & n., (id.), *to hasten*.
Maxĭmè, adv., sup. of magis, *most, especially, particularly*.
Maxĭmus, a, um, adj., sup. of magnus, Less. 40, 3, *greatest* or *very great*. Maxĭmi, with verbs of valuing, &c., *very greatly, very highly*: maximus natu, *oldest*.
Me, &c., see Ego.
Medeor, ēri, dep., *to cure*. L. 110.
Medicīna, æ, f., *medicine*: fr.
Medĭcus, i, m., (medeor), *a physician*.
Medĭtor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to meditate, intend*.
Medius, a, um, adj., *middle, mid, midst*. Less. 92, 8.
Megăra, æ, f., *Megara*, a city of Greece.
Mel, mellis, n., *honey*.
Melior, ōris, adj., comp. of bonus, Less. 40, 3, *better*.
Meliùs, adv., comp. of bene, *better*.
Membrum, i, n., *a member, limb*.
Memĭni, meminisse, def. verb, *I remember*: memento, imperative.
Memoria, æ, f., *memory*.
Mens, tis, f., *the mind; opinion*.
Mentio, ōnis, f., (memini), *mention*.
Mercātor, ōris, m., (mercor,) *a merchant, trader*.
Merces, ēdis, f., *a reward*.
Mercor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to trade*.
Mercurius, i, m., *Mercury*.
Mereo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a. & n., *to deserve, merit*.
Meritò, adv., *deservedly*: fr.
Meritum, i, n., (mereor), *merit; a benefit, favor*.
Merŭla, æ, f., *a blackbird*.
Metallum, i, n., *metal; a mine*: condemnare ad metalla, *to condemn to the mines*, i. e. to labor in the mines.

Metellus, i, m., *Metellus*, a Roman general.
Meto, ĕre, messui, messum, a., *to reap*.
Metuo, ĕre, ui, n. & a., *to fear*: fr.
Metus, ûs, m., *fear*.
Meus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., (me), *my*.
Migro, āre, āvi, ātum, n. & a., *to remove, migrate*.
Mihi., see Ego: mihi ipsi, *myself*.
Miles, ĭtis, m. & f., *a soldier*: h.
Militāris, e, adj., *military*: res militaris, *the art of war, military science*: and
Militia, æ, f., *military service*; domi et militiæ, *in peace and in war*.
Mille, num. adj. ind.—also subs. ind. in sing., pl. millia, ium, &c., *a thousand*. Less. 38, 8.
Milo, ōnis, m., *Milo*.
Minimè, adv., sup. of parum, *least, by no means*.
Minimus, a, um, adj., sup. of parvus, Less. 40, 3., *smallest, very small*: minimi facere *or* æstimare, *to value very little*: est minimi, *it is of very little value*: minimus natu, *youngest*.
Minister, tri, m., *a servant*.
Minor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to threaten*.
Minor, us, Gen. ōris, adj., comp. of parvus, Less. 40, 3, *smaller, less*.
Minuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., *to lessen, diminish*.
Minus, adj., n., comp. of parvus; also, adv., comp. of parum, *less*.
Mirabĭlis, e, adj., *wonderful*: and
Mirans, tis, part.: fr.
Miror, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to wonder, admire*.
Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, a., *to mix, mingle, unite*.
Miser, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *wretched, unhappy*: h.
Misereor, ĕri, miserĭtus *or* misertus sum, dep., *to pity*: h.
Miseresco, ĕre, n., *to pity, compassionate*.
Misĕret, ŭit, impers., (misereo), me miseret, *I pity*.
Miseria, æ, f., (miser), *misery, misfortune*.
Misi, &c., see Mitto.
Missūrus, a, um, part., (mitto.)
Missus, a, um, part., (id.), *sent*.
Mitis, e, adj., *mild, humane, kind; soft, ripe*.
Mitto, ĕre, misi, missum, a., *to send*.
Mobĭlis, e, adj., (moveo), *movable, fickle*: h.
Mobilĭtas, ātis, f., *pliancy, flexibility*.
Modius, i, m., *a peck*.
Modò, adv., *only*: fr.
Modus, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner*. In omnibus modis, *in all respects*, i. e. *completely*.
Mœreo, ēre, ui, n. & a., *to mourn*: h.
Mœror, ōris, m., *grief, sorrow*.
Mœstitia, æ, f., (mœstus, sad), *grief, sadness*.
Moles, is, f., *a mass, burden, weight*.
Mollis, e, adj., ior, issimus, *soft*.
Moneo, ēre, ui, itum, a., *to advise; to remind, admonish*: h.
Monĭtus, a, um, part.
Mons, tis, m., *a mountain*.
Mora, æ, f., *delay*.
Morbus, i, m., *a disease*.
Moribundus, a, um, adj., *dying, at the point of death*: and
Moriens, tis, part., *dying*: fr.
Morior, mori *or* morīri, mortuus sum, dep., *to die*: h.
Moritūrus, a, um, part.: and
Mors, tis, f., *death*: h.
Mortālis, e, adj., *mortal*.
Mortuus, a, um, part. & adj., (morior), *dead*. Mortuum mare, *the Dead sea*.
Mos, moris, m., *a custom, way, manner*; plur., *manners, morals*.
Motus, ûs, m., *a motion*: motus terræ, *an earthquake*: fr.
Moveo, ēre, movi, motum, a., *to move, shake, agitate*.
Mox, adv., *soon*.
Mulcto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to punish*.
Mulier, ĕris, f., *a woman*.
Multitūdo, ĭnis, f., *a multitude, number*: and
Multùm, adv., *much, greatly*: fr.

Multus, a, um, adj., *much, many:* multo, abl. with comparatives, *much;* as, multo major, *much greater.*
Mundus, i, m., *the world.*
Munio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to fortify, protect:* h.
Munītus, a, um, part.
Munus, ĕris, n., *an office; a present, gift.*
Murus, i, m., *a wall* of a town, &c.
Musca, æ, f., *a fly.*
Musīca, æ, f., *music.*
Muto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to change, exchange.*
Myrtus, i, f., *a myrtle.*

N.

Nam, conj., *for.*
Narbo, ōnis, m., *Narbo*, a town of Gaul.
Narcissus, i, m. p. n., *Narcissus.*
Narro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to relate, tell.*
Nascens, tis, part.: fr.
Nascor, i, natus sum, dep., *to be* born; to rise, spring up.
Natālis, e, adj., (natus), *natal:* dies natālis, *a birthday.*
Natio, ōnis, f., (id.), *a nation.*
Natu, m., (id.), found only in abl. sing., *by birth, in age.*
Natūra, æ, f., (id.), *nature.*
Natus, a, um, part., (nascor,) *born:* triginta annos natus, *thirty years old.* Less. 98.
Nauta, æ, m., *a sailor.*
Navālis, e, adj., (navis), *naval.*
Navigium, i, n., *a vessel:* fr.
Navigo, āre, āvi, ātum, a. & n., (navis-ago), *to navigate, sail.*
Navis, is, f., *a ship, vessel:* h.
Navīta, æ, m., *a sailor.*
Ne, adv., *not.*—Also conj., *that not, lest.*
Ne, enclitic conj. In direct questions it is not translated: in indirect questions, *whether.*
Nec, or ne-que, conj., *and not, nor.*
Necdum, adv., *not yet, and not yet.*
Necesse, adj. ind., *necessary, unavoidable:* h.
Necessĭtas, ātis, f., *necessity.*
Neco, āre, necāvi *or* necui, necātum, a., *to kill.*
Negligentia, æ, f., *negligence.*
Nego, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to deny.*
Negotium, i, n., (nec-otium), *business:* negotium dare, ut, &c., *to commission* or *charge, that,* &c.
Nemo, ĭnis, m. & f., (ne-homo), *no one, nobody:* nemo mortalium, *no mortal.*
Nepos, ōtis, m., *a grandson.*
Nequāquam, adv., *by no means.*
Nequis *or* Ne quis, ne qua, ne quod *or* ne quid, adj. pron., *lest any one, that no one:* ne quid, *lest any thing, that nothing, lest something:* ne quid aliud curare, *to care for nothing else.*
Nero, ōnis, m., *Nero*, a Roman emperor.
Nescio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (ne-scio), *not to know.*
Neve *or* neu, conj., *nor, neither.*
Nidus, i, m., *a nest.*
Niger, gra, grum, adj., *black.*
Nihil, n. ind., *nothing:* nihil mali, *no evil.*
Nilus, i, m., *the Nile.*
Nimbus, i, m., *a storm.*
Nimīrum, adv., *certainly, truly, forsooth.*
Nimĭum, adv., *too, too much:* fr.
Nimius, a, um, adj., *excessive, too much.*
Nisi, conj., (ni-si), *if not, unless, except.*
Nitor, ōris, m., (niteo, to shine), *splendor, elegance.*
Nitor, i, nisus & nixus sum, dep., *to strive; to rely upon.*
Nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
Nobĭlis, e, adj., *noble.*
Noceo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *to hurt, injure.*
Noctu, f., (nox), found only in the abl. sing., *by night, at night:* h.
Nocturnus, a, um, adj., *nocturnal, of night.*
Nolo, nolle, nolui, irr. n., (non volo), Less. 77, *to be unwilling: I will not.* The imperative of *nolo* with an infinitive is translated *not*, and

the infinitive like an imperative; as, noli id facere, *do not do it.*

Nomen, ĭnis, n., (nosco), *a name:* nomine, *in the name, for the sake.*

Non, adv., *not.*

Non-dum, adv., *not yet.*

Nos, see Ego.

Nosco, ĕre, novi, notum, a., *to know; nosse* contracted for *novisse.*

Noster, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., (nos), *our.*

Notus, a, um, part., (nosco), *known, noted.*

Novus, a, um, adj., *new.*

Nox, noctis, f., *night.*

Nubo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, n., Less. 110, *to marry.*

Nudo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make bare, strip.*

Nullus, a, um, adj., Gen. nullīus, Less. 32, 1, (ne-ullus), *no one, none, no.*

Num, adv. In direct questions it is not translated: in indirect questions, *whether.* Less. 125, & 130.

Numa, æ, m., *Numa*, the second king of Rome.

Numen, ĭnis, n., (nuo), *a deity, god.*

Numĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (numĕrus, a number), *to count.*

Numĭda, æ, m., *a Numidian.*

Numitor, ōris, m., *Numitor.*

Nummus, i, m., *a piece of money, money.*

Nunc, adv., *now.*

Nunquam, adv., (ne-unquam), *never.*

Nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to announce, tell, report, make known:* fr.

Nuntius, i, m., *news; a messenger.*

Nuper, adv., *lately.*

Nuptus, a, um, part., (nubo,) *having married.*

Nutus, ûs, m., (nuo, to nod), *a nod; will, pleasure.*

Nux, nucis, f., *a nut.* Nux juglans, *a walnut.*

O.

O, interj., *O!*

Ob, prep. with acc., *for, on account of.* In composition its *b* is assimilated before *c, f, g,* and *p.*

Ob-eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, n. irr., *to die.*

Oblītus, a, um, part., *having forgotten; forgetful:* fr.

Oblīviscor, i, oblītus sum, dep., (oblīvio, forgetfulness), *to forget.*

Ob-sĕcro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (-sacro), *to entreat, beseech.*

Ob-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to mind, notice, observe.*

Obses, ĭdis, m. & f., *a hostage.*

Ob-sideo, ēre, ēdi, essum, n. & a., (sedeo), *to besiege:* h.

Obsidio, ōnis, f., *a siege.*

Ob-sto, āre, stĭti, n., *to oppose, hinder.*

Ob-stupesco, ĕre, ui, n., *to be amazed* or *astonished.*

Ob-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., *to hinder, hurt.*

Ob-testor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to beseech, adjure.*

Ob-vĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, n., *to happen, occur.*

Ob-viàm, adv., *in the way:* procedere obviàm, *to go out to meet.*

Oc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, a., (obcædo), *to kill, slay, put to death.*

Occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ob-capio), *to occupy, take possession.*

Oceănus, i, m., *the ocean.*

Octingenti, æ, a, num. adj., (octocentum), *eight hundred.*

Octo, num. adj. ind., *eight.*

Ocŭlus, i, m., *an eye.*

Odi, oděram, &c., def. verb, Less. 81, *I hate:* h.

Odium, i, n., *hatred.*

Odor, ōris, m., *a smell, odor.*

Of-fĕro, ferre, obtŭli, oblātum, a. irr., (ob-fero), *to offer.*

Olea, æ, f., *an olive tree.*

Olim, adv., *once, formerly.*

O-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., (ob-mitto), *to omit.*

Omnis, e, adj., *all, every:* omnes, *all men:* omnia, *all things.* Less. 91, 5.

Onĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (onus, a load), *to load.*
Onustus, a, um, adj., (id.), *laden.*
Opĕra, æ, f., *work:* dare operam, *to be at pains, take care.*
Operimentum, i, n., (operio, to cover), *a covering.*
Opinio, ōnis, f., *opinion.*
Oppĭdum, i, n., *a town.*
Opportūnus, a, um, adj., *fit, convenient.*
Oppressus, a, um, part.: fr.
Op-primo, ĕre, essi, essum, a., (ob-premo), *to oppress, overwhelm; to put down, suppress.*
Ops, opis, f., *power, riches, aid, assistance.* The nom. sing. is not used.
Optabĭlis, e, adj., comp. ior, (opto, to desire), *desirable.*
Optĭmē, adv., sup. of bene, *best.*
Optĭmus, a, um, adj., sup. of bonus, Less. 40, 3, *best.*
Opus, ĕris, n., *work, employment, business.*
Opus, ind. subst. & adj., *need; necessary.*
Ora, æ, *a border.*
Oraculum, i, n., (oro), *an oracle,*
Oratio, ōnis, f., (id.), *speech, a speech, an oration.*
Orātor, ōris, m., (id.), *a speaker, orator.*
Orbis, is, m., *a circle:* orbis *or* orbis terrārum, *the world.*
Orbus, a, um, adj., *bereft:* orbum facere, *to bereave, deprive.*
Ordo, ĭnis, m., *order; a train.*
Oriens, tis, part., (orior), *rising:* h.
Orientālis, e, adj., *eastern.*
Orior, īri, ortus sum, dep., *to rise, arise.*
Ornamentum, i, n.,(orno, to adorn), *an ornament.*
Oro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to speak; to beg, crave, ask for.*
Ortus, a, um, part., (orior), *sprung from, son of.*
Os, oris, n., *the mouth.*
Os, ossis, n., *a bone.*
Oscŭlor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to kiss.*
Os-tendo, ĕre, di, sum *or* tum, a., (ob-), *to show.*
Otium, i, n., *leisure, inactivity.*
Ovidius, i, m., *Ovid,* a Roman poet.
Ovis, is, f., *a sheep.*

P.

Pacis, &c., see Pax.
Pæne, *or* pene, adv., *almost.*
Pallas, ădis, f., *Pallas, Minerva.*
Pallium, i, n., *a mantle.*
Palmes, ĭtis, m., *a branch of a vine.*
Palpĕbræ, ārum, f. plur., *the eyelashes.*
Palus, i, m., *a stake.*
Palus, ūdis, f., *a marsh.*
Pamphĭlus, i, m., *Pamphilus,* a Grecian painter.
Par, pāris, adj., *equal*—subst., *an equal.*
Parco, ĕre, peperci *or* parsi, *to spare:* fr.
Parcus, a, um, adj., *frugal.*
Pareo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, n., *to obey.*
Parens, tis, m. & f., *a parent:* fr.
Pario, ĕre, pepĕri, partum, a., *to bear, produce.*
Paro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to prepare; to procure, obtain.*
Pars, tis, f., *a part.*
Parsimonia, æ, f.,(parco), *frugality.*
Partĭceps, cĭpis, adj., (pars-capio), *participant of.* Subst., *a sharer, partaker.*
Parum, adv., and ind. noun or adj., *little:* comp. minùs, sup. minĭmè.
Parumper, adv., *for a little while.*
Parvŭlus, a, um, dim., adj., *small, little:* subst., *a little child, a little one:* fr.
Parvus, a, um, adj., comp. minor, sup. minĭmus, Less. 40, 3, *little, small:* parvi æstimāre *or* facĕre, *to value little.*
Pasco, ĕre, pavi, pastum, a., *to feed, feed upon,* & Pascor, i, pastus sum, pass., in the sense of, *to feed one's self, to feed* or *pasture upon, eat:* h.
Pastor, ōris, m., *a shepherd.*
Pateo, ēre, ui, n., *to be open.*
Pater, tris, m., *a father.*

Patiens, tis, part. & adj., ior, issĭmus, *patient*: fr.
Patior, i, passus sum, dep., *to suffer, endure.*
Patria, æ, f., (pater), *a native country, one's country.*
Pauci, æ, a, adj. plur., ior, issĭmus, *few*: pauci, m., *few men, few persons*: pauca, n., *few things.*
Pauclor, us, Gen. ōris, adj., comp. of pauci, *fewer.*
Paulātim, adv., *by degrees, gradually*: fr.
Paulus, a, um, adj., *little, small*: paulo, abl., with a comparative, *by a little, a little*: so paulo post, *a little after.*
Pauper, ĕris, adj., *poor*: h.
Paupertas, ātis, f., *poverty.*
Pavo, ōnis, m., *a peacock.*
Pax, pacis, f., *peace.*
Peccātum, i, n., *a fault*: fr.
Pecco, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to do wrong, sin.*
Pectus, ŏris, n., *the breast; the heart, mind.*
Pecunia, æ, f., *money*: fr.
Pecus, ŏris, n., *sheep, cattle.*
Pecus, ŭdis, f., *a sheep.*
Pedis, &c., see Pes.
Pejor, us, Gen, ōris, adj., comp. of malus, *worse.*
Pellicio, ĕre, lexi, lectum, a., *to entice.*
Pello, ĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, a., *to drive away, expel, dispossess; to rout.*
Pendeo, ēre, pependi, n., *to hang, be suspended.*
Penes, prep. with acc., *with, in the power of.*
Peninsŭla, æ, f., (pene, almost, & insula), *a peninsula.*
Penna, æ, f., *a feather, a wing.*
Peperci, &c., see Parco.
Pepulisti, &c., see Pello.
Per, prep. with acc., *through, by, by means of; during, for.*
Peractus, a, um, part.: fr.
Per-ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, a., *to finish.*
Per-cīpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, a., (capio), *to obtain, receive.*
Per-cŏlo, ĕre, ui, cultum, a., *to perfect, to cultivate thoroughly.*
Percontor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to ask, inquire.*
Percultus, a, um, part., (percolo), *thoroughly cultivated, well dressed.*
Percussus, a, um, part.: fr.
Per-cūtio, ĕre, cussi, cussum, a., (quatio), *to strike, kill*: securi percutere, *to behead.*
Per-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to destroy; to lose.*
Per-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to conduct; to extend.*
Peregrinans, tis, part., *going abroad*: avis., *a bird of passage*: fr.
Peregrinor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to go abroad.*
Perferendus, a, um, part., *to be carried*: fr.
Perfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a. irr., *to bear, carry.*
Perficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum. a., (-facio), *to perform, execute.*
Pergămum, i, n., or -us, i, m., *Pergamus*, a city of Asia Minor.
Periculōsus, a, um, adj., *dangerous*: fr.
Periculum, i, n., *danger.*
Per-īmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, a., (-emo), *to destroy, slay, kill.*
Perītus, a, um, adj., *versed* or *skilled in.*
Per-lustro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to travel through, traverse.*
Per-pendo, ĕre, pendi, pensum, a., *to weigh, consider.*
Per-petro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (patro), *to accomplish, perform.*
Perpetuō, adv., (perpetuus), *always, ever, forever.*
Perpetuus, a, um, adj., (per-peto), *continuing, constant, perpetual.*
Persa, æ, m., *a Persian.*
Per-sĕquor, i, cūtus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue.*
Persevĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to persevere, persist.*
Persia, æ, f., *Persia.*
Per-suadeo, ĕre, āsi, āsum, a., *to persuade.*
Per-timesco, ĕre, mui, a., *to fear greatly.*

Perturbātus, a, um, part.: fr.
Per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to disturb, trouble.*
Per-vĕnio, īre, ēni, entum, n., *to come to, arrive at, come.*
Pes, pedis, m., *a foot.*
Pessĭmus, a, um, adj., sup. of malus, Less. 40, 3, *worst, very bad, very mischievous.*
Peto, ĕre, īvi, ītum, a., *to ask, seek, solicit; to go to, travel to.*
Pharao, ōnis, m., *Pharaoh.*
Philippus, i, m., *Philip.*
Philosophia, æ, f., *philosophy:* fr.
Philosŏphus, i, m., *a philosopher.*
Phœbus, i, m., *Phœbus.*
Phrygius, a, um, adj., *of Phrygia, Phrygian.* Phrygi, ōrum, m. plur., *the Phrygians.*
Pica, æ, f., *a magpie.*
Picis, &c., see Pix.
Pictūra, æ, f., (pingo, to paint), *painting, the art of painting.*
Piĕtas, ātis, f., (pius), *piety, affection.*
Piget, uit, impers., *it grieves, pains, disgusts:* me piget, *I grieve, I am sorry.*
Pilus, i, m., *a hair.*
Pincerna, æ, m., *a cup-bearer, butler.*
Pindărus, i, m., *Pindar,* a Greek poet.
Pinguis, e, adj., *fat.*
Pinna, æ, f., *a fin.*
Pinus, i, & ûs, f., *the pine.*
Pirāta, æ, m., *a pirate.*
Piscis, is, m., *a fish.*
Pisistrātus, i, m., *Pisistratus,* an Athenian ruler.
Pistor, ōris, m., *a baker.*
Pius, a, um, adj., *pious, dutiful.*
Pix, picis, f., *pitch.*
Placeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, n., *to please, be pleasing.*
Placĭdē, adv., (placidus, calm), *calmly, quietly.*
Planctus, ûs, m., (plango), *wailing, lamentation.*
Planta, æ, f., *a plant.*
Platănus, i, f., *the plane-tree.*
Plato, ōnis, m., *Plato,* a Grecian philosopher.
Plaustrum, i, n., *a wagon.*
Plebs, is, f., *the common people, the commons, the people.*
Plenus, a, um, adj., *full.*
Plerùmque, adv., *for the most part.*
Plurĭmùm, adv., sup. of multùm, *very much:* plurĭmùm posse, *to be very powerful.*
Plurīmus, a, um, adj., sup. of multus, Less. 40, 3, *most, very many.*
Plus, pluris, adj., comp. of multus, Less. 40, 3, & 36, 3: also, adv., comp. of multùm, *more.*
Pocŭlum, i, n., *a cup.*
Pœna, æ, f., *punishment.*
Pœnĭteo, ēre, ui, n. & a., *to repent.*
Pœnĭtet, uit, impers., *it repents.* Less. 107.
Pœnus, i, m., *a Carthaginian.*
Poëta, æ, m., *a poet.*
Pompeius, i, m., (Cn.), *Cn. Pompey,* a Roman general.
Pomponius, i, m. p. n., *Pomponius.*
Pomum, i, n., *an apple.*
Pono, ĕre, posui, posĭtum, a., *to place, put.*
Pontus, i, m., *the sea.*
Poposci, &c., see Posco.
Popŭlus, i, m., *a people; the people,* in distinction from the magistrates.
Por-rĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, a., (prorego), *to reach, extend; to offer, present.*
Porro, adv., *moreover, then.*
Porta, æ, f., *a gate.*
Portendo, ĕre, di, tum, a., *to portend, betoken, foreshow.*
Portia, æ, f. p. n., *Portia.*
Porto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to carry, bear, convey.*
Portus, ûs, m., *a harbor.*
Posco, ĕre, poposci, a., *to demand.*
Posĭtus, a, um, part., (pono.)
Possessio, ōnis, f., (possideo, to possess), *a possession, property.*
Possum, posse, potui, n. irr., (potissum), Less. 77, *I can, am able.*
Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
Pŏst, adv., *after.*
Post-ea, adv., (-is), *afterward.*
Posterus, a, um, adj., (post), comp.

posterior, sup. postrēmus, *hind, coming after.*
Posthŭmus, i, m., *Posthumus.*
Post-quam, adv., *after.* With *postquam* the perfect is often to be translated by the pluperfect.
Postrēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of postĕrus, *hindmost, last.*
Postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (posco), *to ask, demand.*
Potens, tis, adj., (possum), *able, powerful.*
Potĕram, &c., see Possum.
Potestas, ātis, f., (possum), *power.*
Potio, ōnis, f., (poto, to drink), *drink.*
Potior, īri, ītus sum, dep., (potis, able), *to gain, acquire, possess.*
Potissĭmum, adv., sup. of potiŭs, *especially.*
Potītus, a, um, part., (potior.)
Potiŭs, adv., *rather.*
Præ, prep. with abl., *before, on account of, more than.*
Præbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., (præhabeo), *to give, supply, furnish:* h.
Præbĭtus, a, um, part.
Præceps, cipĭtis, adj., (præ-caput), *headlong, swift, rapid.*
Præceptum, i, n., *a precept:* fr.
Præ-cipio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, a., (capio), *to command:* h.
Præcipuus, a, um, adj., *peculiar, remarkable.*
Præ-clārus, a, um, adj., *excellent, noble.*
Præ-dĭtus, a, um, adj., (do), *endued with, furnished with, possessed of.*
Præfectus, i, m., *an overseer, governor, chief:* fr.
Præ-fĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, a., (præfacio), *to set over, appoint to the command of.*
Præ-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., *to send forward.*
Præmium, i, n., *a reward.*
Præ-nosco, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum, a., *to foreknow.*
Præ-pōno, ĕre, osui, osĭtum, a., *to place before, prefer, value more.*
Præ-scio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to foreknow, foresee.*
Præsertim, adv., (præ-sero), *especially.*
Præsidium, i, n., (præses, a defender), *a defence, protection.*
Præstabilis, e, adj., ior, *excellent:* fr.
Præ-sto, āre, iti, a., *to do, perform; to bestow.* Præstat, impers., *it is better.*
Præ-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., *to preside* or *rule over.*
Præter, prep. with acc., *except.*
Præter-eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, n. irr., *to pass by:* h.
Præterĭtus, a, um, part., *past.*
Prætor, ōris, m., (præ-eo), *a prætor, a judge.*
Pratum, i, n., *a meadow.*
Precis, &c., see Prex.
Precor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to pray, entreat:* bene precari, *to invoke blessings upon, to bless.*
Prehendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to seize, catch, lay hold of:* h.
Prehensus, a, um, part., *seized, caught.*
Premo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, a., *to press, straiten, distress.*
Pretiōsus, a, um, adj., *precious:* h.
Pretium, i, n., *price.*
Prex, precis, f., not used in nom. and gen. sing., *a prayer, entreaty.*
Primō, adv., *at first:* and
Primŭm, adv., *first:* fr.
Primus, a, um, adj., sup. of prior, *first.*
Princeps, ĭpis, m. & f., (primus-capio), *a prince, ruler, governor.*
Prior, us, Gen. ōris, adj. comp., *former, first.*
Priscus, a, um, adj., *ancient, old.*
Pristĭnus, a, um, adj., *ancient, old, former.*
Priŭs, adv., *before, previously:* priŭs quàm *or* priusquam, *before.*
Pro, prep. with abl., *for, instead of.*
Pro, *or* Proh, interj., *O!*
Probe, adv., (probus), *well.*
Probo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (id.), *to approve.*
Proboscis, ĭdis, f., *the trunk, proboscis.*
Procas, æ, m., *Procas.*

Pro-cēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, n., *to proceed, advance, go forth.*
Procella, æ, f., *a storm, tempest.*
Procul, adv., *at a distance, far.*
Proditio, ōnis, f., (prodo), *treachery.*
Prœlium, i, n., *a battle, engagement.*
Profectus, a, um, part., (proficiscor), *having set out.*
Pro-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a., *to bring* or *put forth.*
Proficiscor, i, profectus sum, dep., *to set out, go, depart, come.*
Pro-gredior, i, gressus sum, dep. n., *to advance, proceed.*
Pro-jĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, a., (-jacio), *to throw, cast.*
Pro-mitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, a., *to promise:* h.
Promissum, i, n., *a promise.*
Pronus, a, um, adj., *bowing down, prone.*
Prope, prep. with acc., *near to, hard by;* also adv., *near, nearly:* comp. propiŭs, sup. proxĭmè.
Propĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a. & n., *to hasten, make haste.*
Propitius, a, um, adj., *favorable, propitious.*
Propiŭs, adv., comp. of prope, *nearer.*
Propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*
Prorsus, adv., *entirely:* prorsus non, *not at all.*
Prospĕre, adv., *prosperously, well.*
Pro-sum, prodesse, profui, n. irr., Less. 75, 4, *to profit.*
Pro-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to cover, protect.*
Protĭnus, adv., *directly, immediately.*
Protŭli, &c., see Profĕro.
Providentia, æ, f., *foresight, providence:* fr.
Pro-vĭdeo, ēre, īdi, īsum, a. & n., *to provide for:* h.
Providus, a, um, adj., *cautious, circumspect.*
Pro-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to challenge.*
Proxĭmè, adv., sup. of prope, *very near.* It is followed by the accusative like *prope.*
Proxĭmus, a, um, adj., sup. of propior, nearer, *nearest* or *next, very near.*
Prudens, tis, adj., for, issĭmus, (contracted from provĭdens), *skilful, expert, prudent, wise:* h.
Prudentia, æ, f., *prudence, sagacity.*
Publĭcus, a, um, adj., (popŭlus), *public.*
Publius, i, m., *Publius.*
Pudet, uit, impers., *it shames.* Less. 107.
Puella, æ, f., *a girl.*
Puer, i, m., *a boy.*
Pugna, æ, f., *a battle, contest:* fr.
Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fight.*
Pulcher, chra, chrum, adj. for, errĭmus, *beautiful.*
Pullus, i, m., *a chicken.*
Pulmo, ōnis, m., *the lungs.*
Pulsus, a, um, part., (pello.)
Pulvis, ĕris, m. & f., *dust.*
Pumilio, ōnis, m., *a dwarf.*
Punĭca, æ, f., *the pomegranate.*
Punio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to punish:* h.
Punītus, a, um, part.
Purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make clean, excuse, justify.*
Purus, a, um, adj., *pure.*
Puteus, i, m., *a well, pit.*
Putĭphar, ăris, m., *Potiphar.*
Puto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to think, suppose.*
Putresco, ĕre, trui, n., *to putrify.*
Pyrămis, ĭdis, f., *a pyramid.*
Pyrrhus, i, m., *Pyrrhus,* a king of Epirus.

Q.

Quadrĭga, æ, f., *a four-horse-chariot.*
Quæro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, a., *to seek, ask:* pass. impers. quærĭtur a me, *it is asked of me,* i. e., *I am asked.*
Quæso, def. verb, *I pray, I beg.*
Quæstor, ōris, m., (quæro), *a quæstor.*
Qualis, e, adj., *of what kind* or *nature, what:* talis-qualis, *such-as.*
Quàm, conj., *than, as:* adv., *how.*

Quam-ŏb-rem, adv., *wherefore, for which cause.*
Quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much, as great.* Quanti, with verbs of valuing, &c., *how high* or *as high.*
Quare, adv., (quæ-res), *wherefore, why.*
Quasi, conj., *as if.*
Quatio, ĕre,—quassum, a., *to shake, toss violently.*
Quatuor, num. adj. ind., *four.*
Que, enclitic conj., *and.* Lesson 82, 8, (4).
Quercus, ûs, f., *an oak.*
Queror, i, questus sum, dep., *to complain, lament:* h.
Questus, a, um, part.
Qui, quæ, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what:* quo—eo, with comparatives, *by how much—by so much;* or *the—the.* Is—qui, with subj., *such—as, one—who.*
Quia, conj., *because.*
Quid, see Quis.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam *and* quiddam, Gen. cujusdam, &c., adj. pron., *a certain, a certain one, one.*
Quidem, conj., *indeed.*
Quidquid, see Quisquis.
Quies, ētis, f., *rest, sleep:* h.
Quiesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum, n., *to rest.*
Quin, conj., *that not, but that, that.* It may sometimes be translated *as not*, and the subjunctive following it by the infinitive.
Quinam *or* quisnam, quænam, quodnam, *or* quidnam, Gen. cujusnam, &c., interrogative pron., *who? which? what?*
Quindĕcim, num. adj. ind., (quinque-decem), *fifteen.*
Quinque, num. adj. ind., *five.*
Quintus, i, m. p. n., *Quintus.*
Quis *or* qui, quæ, quod *or* quid, G. cujus, &c., interrogative pron., *who? which? what?—Quis* is also sometimes used for *aliquis, any one.*
Quis-quam, quæquam, quidquam *or* quicquam, Gen. cujusquam, adj. pron., *any, any one*
Quis-que, quæque, quodque *or* quidque, Gen. cujusque, adj. pron., *every, every one; each, each one.*
Quis-quis, —quidquid, def. adj. pron., *whoever, whatever.*
Qui-vis, quævis, quodvis *or* quidvis, Gen. cujusvis, adj. pron., *any, every.*
Quò, adv., *whither:* conj., *that.*
Quo-ad, adv., *until.*
Quod, rel. pron., *which*, see Qui.
Quòd, conj., *that, because.*
Quo-mĭnus, conj., *that not, but that*, after verbs of hindering. L. 133.
Quo-mŏdo, adv. & conj., *how.*
Quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*
Quoniam, conj., (quum-jam), *since.*
Quoque, see Quisque.
Quòque, conj., *also.*
Quorsum, adv., (quo-versum), *whither? to what?*
Quot, adj. plur. ind., *how many;* tot—quot, *as many—as: tot* is often omitted before *quot.*
Quousque, adv., *how long, how far.*
Quum *or* Cùm, adv. & conj., *when, since.*

R.

Radicĭtus, adv., (radix, a root), *by the roots.*
Rapidus, a, um, adj., *rapid, swift:* fr.
Rapio, ĕre, ui, tum, a., *to rob; to hurry, hurry away.*
Rarus, a, um, adj., *rare, scarce.*
Ratio, ōnis, f., *reason.*
Re *or* red, an inseparable particle, signifying, *again, back,* &c.
Re-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, n., *to retire, withdraw.*
Re-cīdo, ĕre, ĭdi, n., (-cado), *to fall.*
Re-cīpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, a., (capio), *to receive:* animum recipere, *to come to one's self, to recover from one's amazement.*
Re-condo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to lay up; to conceal.*
Recordor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to call to mind, recollect.*
Rectà, adv., (rectus), *straight, straight forward.*

Rectē, adv., (id.), *rightly, correctly, well.*
Rectum, i, n., *right, rectitude:* fr.
Rectus, a, um, adj., *right, straight, erect.*
Red-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to restore.*
Red-eo, īre, ii, ĭtum, n. irr., *to return.*
Redūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring back, restore.*
Red-undo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to overflow, abound in.*
Re-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a. irr., *to carry* or *bring back: to answer, reply:* h.
Refert, retŭlit, &c., impers., *it concerns, is of importance:* nihil refert, *it is of no importance.*
Re-fŭgio, ĕre, ūgi, ugĭtum, n., *to flee back, retreat.*
Regis, &c., see Rex.
Regio, ōnis, f., *a region, district, country:* fr.
Rego, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to rule, govern.*
Regno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to reign:* fr.
Regnum, i, n., *a kingdom.*
Re-grĕdior, i, gressus sum, dep., (gradior), *to return:* h.
Regressus, a, um, part., *having returned.*
Re-linquo, ĕre, līqui, lictum, a., *to leave:* h.
Relĭquus, a, um, adj., *remaining, the rest, the other:* nihil reliqui est, *there is nothing left.*
Re-māneo, ēre, si, sum, n., *to stay, remain.*
Reminiscor, i, dep., *to remember, recollect.*
Re-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, mīssum, a., *to send again, send back.*
Remus, i, m., *an oar.*
Remus, i, m., *Remus*, the twin brother of Romulus.
Re-pendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to return, repay.*
Repentē, adv., (repens), *suddenly.*
Re-pĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, a., (pario), *to find:* h.
Repertus, a, um, part., *found.*
Re-pōno, ĕre, osui, ŏsĭtum, a., *to replace, restore.*
Re-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to bring back.*
Re-prehendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., *to blame, censure:* h.
Reprehensiō, ōnis, f., *censure, reproof.*
Re-quiesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum, n., *to rest.*
Res, rei, f., *a thing, an affair, a matter, an event, property:* re ipsâ, *in fact.*
Re-sīdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, n., (sedeo), *to remain, rest.*
Re-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, n., *to oppose, resist.*
Re-spondeō, ēre, di, sum, a., *to answer, reply.*
Res-publĭca, reĭpublicæ, f., *the state, republic.* The word is compounded of *res* and *publica*, the fem. gender of *publicus*, see compound nouns, Less. 27, I.
Re-stĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, a., (statuo), *to restore.*
Re-sto, āre, stĭti, n., *to remain.*
Retentus, a, um, part.: fr.
Re-tĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, a., (teneo), *to retain, keep.*
Retrorsum, adv., (contracted from retro-versum), *backward, back.*
Rettŭli, etc., see Refĕro.
Reversus, a, um, part.: fr.
Re-vertor, i, sus sum, dep., *to return.*
Re-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to recall.*
Rex, regis, m., *a king.*
Rhea, æ, f., *Rhea.* Rhea Silvia, *the mother of Romulus.*
Rhenus, i, m., *the Rhine.*
Rideo, ēre, īsi, īsum, n., *to laugh.*
Robur, ŏris, n., *strength.*
Roguns, ūis, part., (rogo), *asking, requesting.*
Rogātus, a, um, part., (rogo), *being asked.*
Rogĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, a. freq. v., (rogo), *to ask often, to ask.*
Rogo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to ask, ask for, request.*
Roma, æ, f., *Rome:* h.

Rōmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman.*
Romanus, i, m., *a Roman.*
Romŭlus, i, m., *Romŭlus*, the founder of Rome.
Rosa, æ, f., *the rose.*
Rostrum, i, n., *a beak, bill.*
Ruben, ēnis, m. p. n., *Reuben.*
Rugio, īre, n., *to roar.*
Ruo, ĕre, ui, ŭtum, n., *to fall, rush.*
Rupes, is, f., *a rock.*
Rursum *or* rursus, adv., *again.*
Rus, ruris, n., *the country:* h.
Rustĭcus, a, um, adj., *rustic.* Rustĭcus, i, m., *a countryman.*

S.

Saccus, i, m., *a sack, bag.*
Sacer, cra, crum, adj., *sacred:* h.
Sacerdos, ōtis, m. & f., *a priest.*
Sæpe, adv., *often.*
Sagitta, æ, f., *an arrow.*
Saguntīni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Saguntines.*
Salsus, a, um, adj., (sal), *salt.*
Salus, ūtis, f., (salvus), *safety:* h.
Salūto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to salute, greet, pay one's respects to.*
Salvus, a, um, adj., *safe, well.*
Samii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Samians.*
Sanguis, ĭnis, m., *blood.*
Sapiens, tis, adj., (sapio), ior, issĭmus, *wise:* subst., *a wise man:* h.
Sapienter, adv., *wisely:* &
Sapientia, æ, f., *wisdom.*
Sapio, ĕre, īvi, n., *to be wise.*
Satiātus, a, um, part., *satiated:* fr.
Satio, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to satiate, satisfy:* fr.
Satis, indecl. adj. & adv., *enough; sufficiently.*
Satis-făcio, ĕre, ēci, actum, a., *to satisfy.*
Saturnus, i, m., *Saturn.* Orte Saturno, *O son of Saturn*, i. e., *Jupiter.*
Satŭro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (satur, full), *to satiate, cloy, weary.*
Satus, a, um, part., (sero), *produced, born.*
Scateo, ēre, n., *to abound in, swarm with.*
Scelus, ĕris, n., *a crime.*
Schola, æ, f., *a school.*
Scientia, æ, f., (sciens fr. scĭo), *knowledge, science.*
Scilĭcet, adv., (scio-licet), *namely, to wit.*
Scindo, ĕre, scidi, scissum, a., *to tear, rend.*
Scio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to know.*
Scipio, ōnis, m., *Scipio.*
Sciscĭtor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (sciscо), *to ask, inquire:* fr.
Scitor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (scio), *to ask, inquire, consult.*
Scopŭlus, i, m., *a rock.*
Scopus, i, m., *a mark.*
Scorpio, ōnis, m., *a scorpion.*
Scribo, ĕre, psi, ptum, a., *to write:* hence
Scriptūrus, a, um, part., *about to write.*
Scrutor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to search.*
Scyphus, i, m., *a cup, goblet.*
Se, see Sui.
Secundò, adv., *the second time:* fr.
Secundus, a, um, adj., *the second.*
Secūris, is, f., *an axe.*
Secutūrus, a, um, part., (sequor), *about to follow.*
Secūtus, a, um, part., (sequor), *followed.*
Sed, conj., *but.*
Sedeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, n., *to sit:* h.
Sedes, is, f., *a seat.*
Seditio, ōnis, f., *discord, sedition.*
Semel, adv., *once.*
Semper, adv., *always:* h.
Sempiternus, a, um, adj., *eternal, everlasting.*
Sempronia, æ, f., *Sempronia.*
Senātus, ûs, m., (senex), *a senate.*
Senectus, ūtis, f., *old age:* fr.
Senex, senis, adj., *old:* subst., *an old man.*
Seni, æ, a, distr. num. adj., (sex), *six, six each.*
Senium, i, n., (senex), *old age.*
Sensi, &c., see Sentio.
Sensus, ûs, m., (sentio), *sense; a sense, perception.*
Sententia, æ, f., *an opinion:* fr.
Sentio, īre, si, sum, a., *to perceive.*
Sepĕlio, īre, īvi, pultum, a., *to bury.*

Septem, num. adj. ind., *seven.*
Septimius, i, m. p. n., *Septimius.*
Sepulcrum, i, n., (sepelio), *a grave, sepulchre.*
Sequāni, ōrum, m. pl., *the Sequani,* a Gallic people.
Sequor, i, cūtus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue.*
Serēnus, a, um, adj., *clear, bright, calm, serene.*
Sermo, ōnis, m., *a speech; speech, language, discourse, conversation.*
Sero, ĕre, sēvi, sātum, a., *to sow, plant.*
Serò, adv., (serus), *too late.*
Serpens, tis, m. & f., *a serpent.*
Servītus, ūtis, f., (servus), *slavery, bondage.*
Servo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to keep, maintain, preserve; keep in safety.*
Servus, i, m., *a slave, servant.*
Seu, conj., *or.*
Severĭtas, ātis, f., (sevērus, severe), *severity.*
Si, conj., *if.*
Sic, adv., *so, thus.*
Sicilia, æ, f., *Sicily.*
Sicyonius, a, um, adj., *Sicyonian, of Sicyon.*
Signifĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (signum-facio), *to give notice, signify.*
Sileo, ēre, ui, n., *to be silent.*
Silvia, æ, f., *Silvia.* Rhea Silvia, *the mother of Romulus.*
Silvius, ii, m., *Silvius.*
Sim, &c., see Sum.
Simeon, ōnis, m., *Simeon.*
Similis, e, adj., *like:* h.
Similitūdo, ĭnis, f., *resemblance:* similitudo cum Deo, *a likeness to God.*
Simul, adv., *together, at the same time.*
Sincērus, a, um, adj., *sincere.*
Sine, prep. with abl., *without.*
Singulāris, e, adj., (singŭli), *singular, peculiar.*
Sino, ĕre, sivi, a., *to permit, suffer.*
Siquis *or* Si quis, si qua, si quod *or* si quid, Gen. si cujus, adj. pron., *if any.*
Sitis, is, f., *thirst.*
Sive, conj., *or.*
Socius, i, m., *a companion, associate, ally.*
Socrātes, is, m., *Socrates,* a Grecian philosopher.
Sol, solis, m., *the sun.*
Soleo, ēre, solĭtus sum, n. pass., *to be accustomed* or *wont.* Less. 79, N.: h.
Solĭtus, a, um, part. & adj., *usual.* Solĭtum, i, n., *habit, ordinary custom:*—solito, abl. after a comparative, *than usual.* Less. 119, 1.
Sollicitūdo, ĭnis, f., (sollicĭtus, anxious), *anxiety, solicitude.*
Solon, ōnis, m., *Solon,* the Athenian lawgiver.
Solum, i, n., *the ground, soil, earth.*
Solùm, adv., *only, alone:* fr.
Solus, a, um, G. solīus, Less. 32, 1, adj., *alone, only.*
Somniātor, ōris, m., (somnio), *a dreamer.*
Somnium, i, n., (somnus), *a dream:* hence
Somnio, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to dream.*
Somnus, i, m., *sleep:* in somnis, *in sleep.*
Sonus, i, m., *a sound.*
Sorbeo, ēre, ui, a., *to suck, suck in, absorb.*
Soror, ōris, f., *a sister.*
Specto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to see; to look to* or *towards, point towards, face; to tend, point, refer.*
Spelunca, æ, f., *a cave.*
Spero, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to hope:* h.
Spes, ei, f., *hope.*
Spica, æ, f., *an ear of corn.*
Splendĭdus, a, um, adj., ior, issĭmus, (splendeo), *bright, splendid, magnificent.*
Spolio, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (spolium), *to plunder; to deprive.*
Spondeo, ēre, spopondi, sponsum, a., *to promise, pledge one's self.*
Spopondi, &c., see Spondeo.
Stadium, i, n., *a furlong; a race-course.*
Stans, tis, part., (sto), *standing.*
Statim, adv., (sto), *immediately.*
Stella, æ, f., *a star.*
Sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, n., *to stand.*

Struthiocamēlus, i, m., *an ostrich.*
Studium, i, n., (studeo), *desire.*
Stultus, a, um, adj., *foolish.*
Suadeo, ēre, si, sum, n. & a., *to advise.*
Sub, prep. with acc. or abl., *under.* In composition its *b* is sometimes assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, & *r*; before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it is sometimes changed to *s*, and before *s* impure it is dropped.
Sub-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, a., (-ago), *to subdue.*
Sub-jĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, a., (-jacio), *to subject, make subject.*
Sub-rĭpio, ĕre, ui, reptum, a., (-rapio), *to steal.*
Subsĭdium, i, n., (subsideo), *help, relief.*
Sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, a. & n., *to stop.*
Suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, n., (sub), *to succeed, come after: to prosper, succeed.*
Suc-cresco, ĕre, ēvi, n., (sub), *to grow beneath, grow up after.*
Suf-fĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum ,n., (subfacio), *to be sufficient, suffice.*
Suffragium, i, n., *a vote, suffrage.*
Sui, subst. pron., *of himself*, &c. Less. 41, 4.
Sulmo, ōnis, m., *Sulmo*, a town of Italy.
Sum, esse, fui, futūrus, n. irr., Less. 62, &c., *to be. Sunt qui* may be translated *some:* non est quod, *there is no reason why.*
Summus, a, um, adj. sup. of supĕrus, Less 40, 3, *highest, greatest, supreme.*
Sumo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum, a., *to take.*
Supellex, lectĭlis, f., *furniture.*
Super, prep. with acc. or abl., *over, on, at, during.*
Superbus, a, um, adj., *proud.*
Superbus, i, m., *Superbus* or *the Proud*, a surname of Tarquin.
Superstes, ĭtis, adj., (super-sto), *surviving, outliving:* it takes the dative of the person outlived.
Super-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., *to remain, survive.*
Supĕrus, a, um, adj., *high, upper.* Less. 40, 3.
Super-vacuus, a, um, adj., *superfluous, needless.*
Super-vĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, n., *to come upon.*
Suppedito, āre, āvi, ātum, a. & n., *to furnish, supply:* fr.
Sup-pĕto, ĕre, īvi, ītum, n., *to be at hand; to be sufficient.*
Supplex, ĭcis, adj., (sub-plico), *suppliant.*
Supplicatio, ōnis, f., (supplico), *a thanksgiving.*
Supplicium, i, n., (supplex), *punishment.*
Supra, prep. with acc., *above, more than.*
Suprēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of supĕrus, Less. 40, 3, *highest.*
Surgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, n., *to rise.*
Sus-pendo, ĕre, di, sum, a., (sub), *to hang, hang up:* h.
Suspensus, a, um, part., *suspended, hanging.*
Sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (sustineo), *to uphold, support, sustain.*
Suus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., (sui), *his, hers, its, their.*
Syracūsæ, ārum, f. plur., *Syracuse.*

T.

Taceo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, n., *to be silent:* h.
Tacĭtus, a, um, adj., *silent;* also for tacitē, *in silence.*
Tædet, uit, impers., *it tires;* me tædet, *I am weary of.*
Talentum, i, n., *a talent.*
Talis, e, adj., *such:* talis—qualis, *such—as.*
Tam, adv., *so.*
Tamen, conj., *yet, notwithstanding.*
Tandem, adv., *at length.*
Tanquam *or* tamquam, conj., *as if.*
Tantopĕre, adv., (tantus-opus), *so much.*
Tantus, a, um, adj., (tam), *so great, so much, such:* tantum abest, ut furāti simus, *so far are we from having stolen.*

Tarquinius, i, m., *Tarquin*, a king of Rome.
Tarquinii, ōrum, m., *Tarquinii*, a town of Italy.
Tarrăco, ōnis, f., *Tarragona*, a town of Spain.
Tauri, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tauri*, a people of Thrace.
Taurus, i, m., *a bull*.
Tego, ĕre, texi, tectum, a., *to cover, conceal*.
Telum, i, n., *a dart, javelin; the proboscis of an insect*.
Temĕre, adv., *rashly*: h.
Temerĭtas, ātis, f., *audacity*.
Tempestas, ātis, f., (tempus), *time, a season; a storm*.
Templum, i, n., *a temple*.
Tempus, ŏris, n., *time*.
Teneo, ēre, ui, tum, a., *to hold, keep*.
Tener, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *tender, delicate*.
Tento, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (tendo), *to try, attempt*.
Tenus, prep. with abl., *up to, as far as*.
Terra, æ, f., *the earth; a country*.
Terreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, a., *to terrify, frighten*: h.
Territus, a, um, part.: and
Terror, ōris, m., *terror*.
Tertius, a, um, num. adj., (ter, thrice), *third*.
Testor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to testify; to attest*.
Teutŏni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Teutoni*, a German people.
Thales, is, m., *Thales*, a Grecian philosopher.
Thebæ, ārum, f., *Thebes*, a Grecian city.
Themistŏcles, is, m., *Themistocles*, an Athenian general.
Theocrĭtus, i, m., *Theocritus*, a Sicilian poet.
Thermopўlæ, ārum, f. plur., *Thermopylæ*.
Thesaurus, i, m., *a treasure; a treasury*.
Thessalonica, æ, f., *Thessalonica*.
Tiberias, ădis, f., *Tiberias*, a town of Galilee.
Tiberius, i, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.
Tibi, see Tu.
Timeo, ēre, ui, a. & n., *to fear*: h.
Timĭdus, a, um, adj., *timid, timorous*.
Timoleon, tis, m., *Timoleon*, a Corinthian general.
Timor, ōris, m., (timeo), *fear*.
Tingo, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to stain*.
Titus, i, m. p. n., *Titus*.
Toga, æ, f., *a gown, robe*.
Tollo, ĕre, tŏlli, a., *to raise, lift up*.
Tondeo, ēre, totondi, tonsum, a., *to shear*.
Torques, is, m. & f., *a chain*.
Torrĭdus, a, um, adj., (torreo, to roast), *hot, sultry*.
Tot, adj. plur. ind., *so many*: h.
Totidem, adj. plur. ind., *as many*.
Totus, a, um, Gen. totĭus, adj., *all, the whole, whole*.
Trado, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., (transdo), *to deliver, commit, consign*.
Traho, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to draw, drag; to detain*.
Tranquillē, adv., *quietly, tranquilly*: fr.
Tranquillus, a, um, adj., *tranquil, quiet*.
Trans, prep. with acc., *over, beyond*.
Trans-curro, ĕre, i, n. & a., *to pass over*.
Trans-eo, īre, ii, ĭtum, n. & a. irr., *to pass over*.
Trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, a., *to transfer, transport, remove, carry*.
Trecenti, æ, a, num. adj., (tres-centum), *three hundred*.
Tredĕcim, num. adj. ind., (tres-decem), *thirteen*.
Tremo, ĕre, ui, n., *to shake, tremble*.
Tres, tria, num. adj., *three*.
Tribūnus, i, m., *a tribune*.
Triennium, i, n., (tres-annum), *three years*.
Triginta, num. adj. ind., *thirty*.
Tritĭcum, i, n., *wheat*.
Tristis, e, adj., ior, issĭmus, *sad, melancholy*.
Triumphus, i, m., *a triumph*.

Troja, æ, f., *Troy*, a city of Asia Minor.
Tu, tui, pron., *thou*. Less. 41, 4.
Tuli, &c., see Fero.
Tullius, i, m., *Tullius*, the name of a Roman *gens*.
Tullus, i, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third Roman king.
Tum, adv., *then*; tum temporis, *at that time*.
Tunc, adv., *then*.
Turba, æ, f., *a crowd, multitude*.
Turnus, i, m., *Turnus*, an Italian.
Turpitūdo, ĭnis, f., *baseness, turpitude*: fr.
Turpis, e, adj., *ugly; base, disgraceful*.
Turris, is, f., *a tower*.
Tute, pron., an intensive form of tu; for tu ipse, *thou thyself*.
Tutus, a, um, adj., *safe*.
Tuus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., (tu), *thy, your*.
Tyrius, a, um, adj., *Tyrian*. Tyrii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tyrians*: fr.
Tyrus, i, f., *Tyre*, a city of Asia.

U.

Uber, uběris, adj., ior, uberrĭmus, *abundant*: h.
Ubertas, ātis, f., *fruitfulness, plenty*.
Ubi, adv., *where; when*.
Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, dep., *to avenge*.
Ullus, a, um, Gen. īus, adj., *any, any one*. Less. 32, 1.
Umbra, æ, f., *a shadow, shade*.
Unà, adv., (unus), *together*.
Uncus, a, um, adj., *crooked, hooked*.
Unde, adv., *whence*.
Undĕcim, num. adj. ind., (unus-decem), *eleven*.
Unguis, is, m., *a nail, claw, talon*.
Unĭcĕ, adv., (unĭcus, a, um), *singularly, particularly*.
Unicuique, see Unusquisque.
Universus, a, um, adj., (unus-verto), *all, the whole*.
Unquam, *or* umquam, adv., *ever*.
Unus, a, um, adj., Gen. unīus, Less. 32, 2, *one*.
Unus-quisque, unaquæque, unumquodque, Gen. uniuscujusque, D. unicuīque, &c., adj., *each*.
Urbs, urbis, f., *a city*; esp., *Rome*.
Ursus, i, m., *a bear*.
Usus, ûs, m., (utor), *use, need*.
Ut *or* Utĭ, conj., *that*: after verbs of fearing, *that not*.
Ut, adv., *as, when, as soon as*.
Uter, utra, utrum, adj., Less. 32, *which of the two?*
Uter-que, utrăque, utrumque, Gen. utriusque, &c., Less. 32, adj., *both, each*.
Utĭlis, e, adj., ior, issĭmus, (utor), *useful*.
Utĭ-nam, conj., *O that*.
Utor, i, usus sum, dep., *to use, make use of*.
Utrùm, adv. In direct questions it is not translated: in indirect questions, *whether*.
Uva, æ, f., *a cluster of grapes*.
Uxor, ōris, f., *a wife*.

V.

Vacca, æ, f., *a cow*.
Væ, interj., *woe!*
Vagus, a, um, adj., *roving; inconstant*.
Valde, adv., (valĭdus fr. valeo), *very, very much*.
Valeo, ēre, ui, n., *to be well*: h.
Valetūdo, ĭnis, f., *health*.
Varius, a, um, adj., *various*.
Vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (vastus, waste), *to lay waste, pillage*.
Ve, enclitic conj., *or*.
Vectīgal, ālis, n., *revenue, income*.
Veho, ĕre, xi, ctum, a., *to carry, convey*.
Vel, conj., *or*.
Velox, ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet*.
Vel-ŭti, adv., *as*.
Vendo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, a., *to sell*.
Venĕror, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to reverence, venerate, make obeisance to*.
Venia, æ, f., *pardon, forgiveness, indulgence, leave*: bonâ cum veniâ, *with kind indulgence*, i. e., *indulgently, without offence*.
Veniens, tis, part., *coming*: fr.

Vĕnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, n., *to come. Venio* sometimes takes both the dative and the accusative with *in*: venit mihi in mentem, *it came into my mind.* Less. 112, 3, N.
Ventūrus, a, um, part., *about to come.*
Ventus, i, m., *the wind.*
Ver, veris, n., *the spring.*
Verbum, i, n., *a word:* in verba alicujus jurare, *to swear according to the words of any one, to take the oath prescribed by him.*
Verè, adv., (verus), *truly.*
Vereor, ērī, verītus sum, dep., *to fear, be afraid.*
Verĭtas, ātis, f., (verus), *truth.*
Verò, conj., (verus), *but.*
Versicŏlor, ōris, adj., (verso-color), *of divers colors.*
Versificātor, ōris, m.,(versus-facio), *a versifier.*
Versus, ûs, m., *a verse.*
Verùm, conj., *but:* fr.
Verus, a, um, adj., *true, real:* verum, i, n., *truth.*
Vescor, i, dep., *to eat, subsist upon.*
Vesper, ĕris, m., *the evening:* abl. vespĕre *or* vesperi, *at evening.*
Vespĕra, æ, f., *evening.*
Vespertĭlio, ōnis, m., (vesper), *a bat.*
Vestālis, e, adj., (Vesta), *vestal, pertaining to the goddess Vesta.*
Vester, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., (vos), *your.*
Vestigium, i, n., *a footstep, track.*
Vestio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to clothe, array:* fr.
Vestis, is, f., *a garment, robe, clothes.*
Vetus, ĕris, adj., *old.*
Via, æ, f., *a way, road.*
Vĭator, ōris, m., (vio, to go, fr. via), *a traveler.*
Vici, &c., see Vinco.
Vicīnus, a, um, adj., *near.*
Victoria, æ, f., (vinco), *victory.*
Victūrus, a, um, part., (vivo).
Victus, ûs, m., (id.), *food, sustenance.*
Victus, a, um, part., (vinco), *conquered, overcome:* victi, sc. homĭnes, *the conquered.*
Video, ēre, vidi, visum, a., *to see.*
Videor, ēri, visus sum, pass., *to be seen; to seem, appear.*
Viginti, num. adj. ind., *twenty.*
Vilis, e, comp. ior, adj., *cheap, of low price.*
Villa, æ, f., *a farm-house.*
Vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, a., *to conquer, overcome.*
Vinea, æ, f., *a vineyard:* fr.
Vinum, i, n., *wine.*
Vir, viri, m., *a man, a husband.*
Vires, see Vis.
Virga, æ, f., *a twig.*
Virgo, ĭnis, f., *a virgin, maid.*
Virĭdis, e, adj., *green, verdant.*
Virtus, ūtis, f., (vir), *virtue, valor, bravery.*
Virus, i, n., *poison, venom.* N. & Ac., *virus,* Gen. *viri,* D. & Ab., *viro.*
Vis, vis, f., Less. 21, *force, power, strength, quantity.* So in plur., *strength, power, force, vigor.*
Vis, see Volo, velle.
Viso, ĕre, si, sum, a., (video), *to see; visit.*
Visus, a, um, part., (video).
Vita, æ, f., (vivo), *life.*
Vitis, is, f., *a vine.*
Vĭtium, i, n., *a fault, vice.*
Vitreus, a, um, adj., *of glass.*
Vivo, ĕre, vixi, victum, n., *to live; to live* or *feed upon.*
Vivus, a, um, adj., *alive, living.*
Vix, adv., *scarcely.*
Vixi, &c., see Vivo.
Vocātus, a, um, part.: fr.
Voco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (vox), *to call, name; invite.*
Volātus, ûs, m., *a flight:* fr.
Volo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fly.*
Volo, velle, volui, a. irr., *to wish, be willing:* h.
Volubĭlis, e, adj., (volvo, to roll), *rolling; changeable, fickle.*
Voluntas, ātis, f., *will, wish.*
Voluptas, ātis, f., *pleasure.*
Vos, see Tu.
Vox, vocis, f., *a voice.*
Vulcānus, i, m., *Vulcan.*

Vulgāris, e, adj., *common*: fr.
Vulgus, i, n. & m., *the common people*.
Vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (vulnus, a wound), *to wound, hurt*.
Vulpecŭla, æ, f., dim., *a little fox, a fox*: fr.
Vulpes, is, f., *a fox*.
Vult, &c., see Volo.

X.

Xerxes, is, m., *Xerxes*, a king of Persia.

Z.

Zeno, ōnis, m., *Zeno*, a Grecian philosopher.